Simplify

# SANsurfer Applications User's Guide

## Management Applications for SANblade Host Bus Adapters

| Document Revision History | |
|---|---|
| Rev. A release 12/14/01<br>Rev. B update, 4/16/02<br>Rev. C update, 6/24/02<br>Rev. D update, 9/18/02<br>Rev. E update, 2/14/03<br>Rev. F update, 8/22/03 | |
| Change | Document Sections Affected |
| SANblade Manager Changes | |
| SANblade Manager is now supported on the following additional operating systems:<br>Windows® Server 2003<br>Windows 2000 Server, Advanced Server, or Professional with *SP4*<br>Red Hat Linux 8.0<br>Red Hat Linux 9.0<br>Red Hat Linux IA64 (previously was only IA32)<br>SuSE Linux Enterprise Server 8 (SLES)<br>NetWare 6.5 (QLA23*xx* HBAs) | Part I |
| SANblade Manager is no longer supported on the following operating systems:<br>Windows NT<br>Red Hat Linux 7.2<br>Red Hat Linux 7.3 | Part I |
| Tape devices are now supported by SANblade Manager (for LUN masking and diagnostics (read/write buffer test)). | 2.3.1.1, 4.1, 6.2, 7.3.3, 7.3.3.1, 7.4, 7.4.2, 9.3, 9.3.1, 9.3.2, 10.1.3 |
| Added STORport driver to list of required software. | 2.3.1.2 |

| | |
|---|---|
| QLDirect is required for load balancing. | 2.3.1.2 |
| Updated standard driver versions. | 2.3.3 |
| IPX/SPX must be installed on a NetWare 6.5 system to install SANblade Manager. | 2.3.5 |
| Removed Windows Miniport Driver Parameters and associated sections. | was 2.4.1, 2.4.1.1–2.4.1.4 |
| Removed Windows QLDirect Driver Parameters section. | was 2.4.2 |
| Removed ConfigRequired Parameter section. | was 2.5.2.2 |
| Added reference to QLogic *Interoperability Guide* for a list of FC devices that support failover. | 4.1 |
| Installation:<br>The text on the **Introduction** dialog box changed.<br>The **Important Information** dialog now displays before the **Choose Product Features** dialog box. The information in the **Important Information** dialog is also available in the file: Program Files/QLogic Management Suite/readme.wri (Windows)<br>Added **Pre-Installation Summary** dialog box.<br>SANblade Manager detects old versions of the software and prompts the user to uninstall the old version.<br>The **Install Complete** dialog has been updated to show the directory where SANblade Manager was installed. | 5.1.2 |
| HBA tree:<br>Adapters in the HBA tree are listed with the adapter model number (previously listed by the ASIC on the HBA).<br>Disk devices are displayed as *Disk* instead of *Device.* | 6.2, 8.2 |
| SANblade Manager can be closed by pressing SHIFT+X (previously CTRL+X). | 6.3 |
| Enabling/Disabling failover configurations is now available on Red Hat/ SuSE Linux and Solaris SPARC. | 7.2.2.1 |
| Added ability to create a symbolic name (alias) for an HBA. | 7.4.1, 9.2.1 |
| Added OS instance number (Solaris SPARC) to **HBA Information** tabbed page and **Adapter Information** dialog box. | 7.4.1, 9.2.1 |
| Persistent binding information is now also stored in the /etc/qla2*x*00.conf file in Red Hat/SuSE Linux. | 7.6 |
| The text in the Warning on Device Replacement dialog box has changed. | 7.8 |
| Devices in the HBA tree are listed as *offline* when viewing the host configuration from a file. | 7.9.2 |
| **Device List** tabbed page: The Loop ID column has been renamed Device ID. | 9.2.3 |
| **Link Status** tabbed page: Disk devices are displayed as *Disk* instead of *Device*. | 9.2.4 |
| The layout of the LUN **Information** tabbed page changed. | 9.4 |
| Added flash adapter beacon feature. | 10.1.1 |

| | |
|---|---|
| Preparing for a loopback test:<br>Added a list of driver versions that do not a require a loopback connector.<br>Added instructions for diagnostics if the adapter is connected to the fabric through a point-to-point connection (F-port) and is connected to a switch. | 10.1.2 |
| Diagnostic enable/disable option on adapter and device shortcut menu was changed. | 10.1.3 |
| An echo test is run instead of a loopback test if the adapter is a QLA23*xx* attached to the fabric through an F-port and has one of the driver versions specified in table 10-1. | 10.3, 14.7.3, 16.18.2.6 |
| **Diagnostics** tabbed page: removed the following result values that may display in the Data Miscompare column:<br>Reserve unit failed<br>Release unit failed | 10.4.2 |
| **Settings** tabbed page (Adapter Settings):<br>Multiple adapters of the same series can be selected.<br>Loop Reset Delay option indicates *seconds*.<br>Added Enable Host Adapter BIOS option.<br>Added Fast Error Reporting option (Solaris SPARC).<br>Added Link Down Error option (Solaris SPARC).<br>Removed sentence, "If you modify only the advanced adapter **Execution Throttle** setting, the change takes effect immediately." | 11.1, 11.1.1, 11.1.2 |
| **Settings** tabbed page (Advanced Adapter Settings):<br>Multiple adapters of the same series can be selected.<br>Enable Extended Error Logging option: added information about where the events are logged for Solaris SPARC and Red Hat/SuSE Linux.<br>Added Fast Error Reporting option (Solaris SPARC).<br>Added Link Down Error option (Solaris SPARC). | 11.1.2, 11.1 |
| **Settings** tabbed page (Boot Device Selection): added this new feature. | 11.1.3 |
| **Utilities** tabbed page:<br>The NVRAM, flash BIOS, and FCode configurations can be saved to a file.<br>Multiple adapters of the same series can be selected (update flash BIOS, NVRAM, and FCode). | 11.2, 11.3, 11.4, 11.5 |
| Corrected Red Hat/SuSE Linux instructions/solutions for the following troubleshooting issues:<br>SANblade Manager GUI cannot disconnect from the local host<br>SANblade Manager GUI connect disconnect from a remote host<br>SANblade Manager GUI closes the connection to a host<br>SANblade Manager GUI loses the connection to an adapter or a device<br>Unable to get host information<br>Unable to display Adapter Information, Adapter Statistics, Device List, or Link Status | 12 |

| SANblade Control FX Changes (new section, previously part of SANblade 22*xx* and 23*xx* series' user's guides) | |
|---|---|
| SANblade Control FX GUI is no longer supported on the Windows NT operating system. | 14, 15 |
| SANblade Control FX GUI is now supported on Windows Server 2003 (32- and 64-bit) operating systems. | 14, 15 |
| HBA tree/device type text: tape devices are now displayed as *Tape.* | 14, 15 |
| Added STORport detection. | 14.1 |
| Only one instance of SANblade Control FX can run on a given host at any time. | 14.4.1.1, 14.4.1.2 |
| Added a new program folder, SANblade Control FX (Windows 2000/ Server 2003) | 14.4.1.1 |
| Added note: failover version is informational; SANblade Control FX does not support failover. | 14.4.2.1.1, 14.6.2 |
| **HBA Options** tabbed page (Adapter Settings):<br>Multiple adapters of the same series can be selected.<br>Added **Enable Host Adapter BIOS** feature. | 14.4.2.1.2, 14.8.1, 14.8.1.1 |
| **HBA Options** tabbed page (Advanced Adapter Settings):<br>Multiple adapters of the same series can be selected. | 14.4.2.1.2, 14.8.1, 14.8.1.2 |
| **HBA Options** tabbed page (Boot Device Selection). Added this new menu. | 14.4.2.1.2, 14.8.1.3 |
| **Utilities** tabbed page:<br>The NVRAM, BIOS (previously termed *flash*), and FCode configurations can be saved to a file.<br>Multiple adapters of the same series can be selected (update flash BIOS, NVRAM, and FCode). | 14.4.2.1.4, 14.8.2 |
| Added selective LUNs feature. | 14.5.1 |
| **Target Persistent Binding** tabbed page:<br>Expanded description of **Target ID** field.<br>The sort order of the table can be changed. | 14.5.2 |
| Added device replacement feature (Windows 2000/Server 2003) | 14.5.4 |
| Added ability to create a symbolic name (alias) for an HBA. | 14.6.2.1 |
| Added diagnostics. | 14.7 |
| Added flash adapter beacon feature. | 14.7.1.1 |
| Updating the flash and FCode: SANblade Control FX now checks that the system device ID and vendor ID in the file match those of the HBA being flashed. | 14.8.2.2, 14.8.2.3 |
| Miscellaneous Changes | |
| Added SANblade CLI. | 16 |
| The following terms were added to the Glossary:<br>Adapter beacon<br>Boot device<br>Echo diagnostic test<br>HBA alias | A |

First Printed: March 2001
Printed in U.S.A.

QLogic Corporation, 26650 Aliso Viejo Parkway, Aliso Viejo, CA 92656, (800) 662-4471 or (949) 389-6000

# Table of Contents

## Part II SANblade Control FX

## Section 14 SANblade Control FX

## Part III SANblade CLI

## Section 16 SANblade CLI

## Figures

**Figure** **Page**

## Tables

**Table** **Page**

## Notes

# *Part I*
# SANblade Manager

This part of the *SANsurfer Applications User's Guide* describes the SANblade Manager application, a component of QLogic's SANsufer software, SANblade Manager is a comprehensive application for configuration and management of QLogic SANblade Fibre Channel (FC) host bus adapters (HBAs) used in storage area networks (SANs).

***NOTE:*** *HBA* and *adapter* are used interchangeably.

This application is available on the following operating systems:

- Windows® 2000
- Windows® Server 2003
- Red Hat™ Linux
- SuSE Linux Enterprise Server 8
- Solaris SPARC®
- Novell NetWare®

See section 1 for a summary of the SANblade Manager portion of this user's guide.

## Notes

# *Section 1*
# Introduction

This part of the *SANsurfer Applications User's Guide* contains an overview of SANblade Manager, the part of SANsurfer that allows you to configure and manage devices in a storage area network (SAN) environment that uses QLogic Fibre Channel host bus adapters (HBAs).

The contents of this part of the user's guide are described in the following paragraphs:

- **Section 1—Introduction.** This section summarizes the contents of this user's guide.
- **Section 2—System Overview.** This section outlines the hardware and software installation of devices controlled by SANblade Manager.
- **Section 3—SANblade Manager Overview.** This section describes the purpose and scope of the SANblade Manager application.
- **Section 4—System Requirements.** This section lists the hardware and software requirements needed for optimum SANblade Manager performance.
- **Section 5—Installing SANblade Manager.** This section discusses installing and uninstalling SANblade Manager.
- **Section 6—Getting Started.** This section discusses customizing the SANblade Manager application. It includes starting and exiting the SANblade Manager GUI, getting help, setting security, and setting the options that activate each time you start the SANblade Manager application.
- **Section 7—Setting Up Connections.** This section discusses connecting to hosts, configuring Fibre Channel devices, configuring LUNs, and persistently binding targets. This includes saving the host configuration to view from a file, replacing devices (not available on Solaris SPARC®), and viewing the LUN path (not available on Solaris SPARC).
- **Section 8—Monitoring the Connections.** SANblade Manager continuously monitors connected hosts and informs you of various conditions and problems through the Alarm Log and Event Log. This section discusses viewing and managing these logs.
- **Section 9—Displaying Host, Adapter, Device, and LUN Information.** This section discusses viewing information about hosts, adapters, devices, and LUNs.
- **Section 10—Performing Diagnostics.** This section discusses setting up, running, and interpreting loopback and read/write buffer tests.

- **Section 11—Updating the Adapter.** This section discusses updating NVRAM settings and the flash BIOS.
- **Section 12—Troubleshooting.** This section presents common troubleshooting questions and answers. It also provides the procedures for tracing SANblade Manager GUI and agent activity, if directed to do so by technical support.
- **Section 13—Frequently Asked Questions.** This appendix lists and provides the answers to frequently asked questions about SANblade Manager.

## *1.1* Related Documents

Refer to the following documents as appropriate when installing or using SANblade Manager:

| Part Number | Title |
|---|---|
| CF2251102-00 | *SANblade 2200 User's Guide, 1-Gb Fibre Channel to cPCI and SBus Host Bus Adapters* |
| FC2254601-00 | *SANblade 2200 Series User's Guide, 1-Gb Fibre Channel to PCI Host Bus Adapters* |
| CF2351102-00 | *SANblade 2300 Series User's Guide, 2-Gb Fibre Channel to cPCI and SBus Host Bus Adapters* |
| FC2354601-00 | *SANblade 2300 Series User's Guide, 2-Gb Fibre Channel to PCI-X Host Bus Adapters* |
| 59022-03 | *SANbox2 Switch Management User's Manual* |
| readme.txt | Release notes included with driver distributions |

*Section 2*

# System Overview

## *2.1* Introduction

SANblade Manager is a collection of device drivers and management software for controlling, configuring, and managing devices in a storage area network (SAN) environment that uses QLogic Fibre Channel host bus adapters (HBAs). This section summarizes information from various products and contains an installation checklist.

The contents of this section are summarized in the following paragraphs:

- **Section 2.1—Introduction**
- **Section 2.2—Configurations.** This section shows configuration examples.
- **Section 2.3—Installation Checklist.** This section contains an installation checklist to help you install all hardware and software properly and in the correct order.
- **Section 2.4—Configuration Parameters.** This section lists configuration and tuning parameters.
- **Section 2.5—Troubleshooting.** This section lists common troubleshooting tools to help identify the source of a hardware or software problem.

This information is intended for OEMs, field service personnel, and customers who are installing QLogic hardware and SANblade Manager software. This section assumes that users are familiar with hardware installation and operating systems where HBAs will be installed.

## *2.2* Configurations

### *2.2.1* Single-Ported (Non-failover) Configuration

Figure 2-1 shows a simple single-ported (non-failover) configuration consisting of 1 host (X), 2 HBAs (A and B), and 10 target devices (0–9). This configuration assumes that the host has access to all connected devices; therefore, an HBA operating system driver is required, but the rest of the SANblade Manager application is not required. Other SANblade Manager components help manage devices more easily.

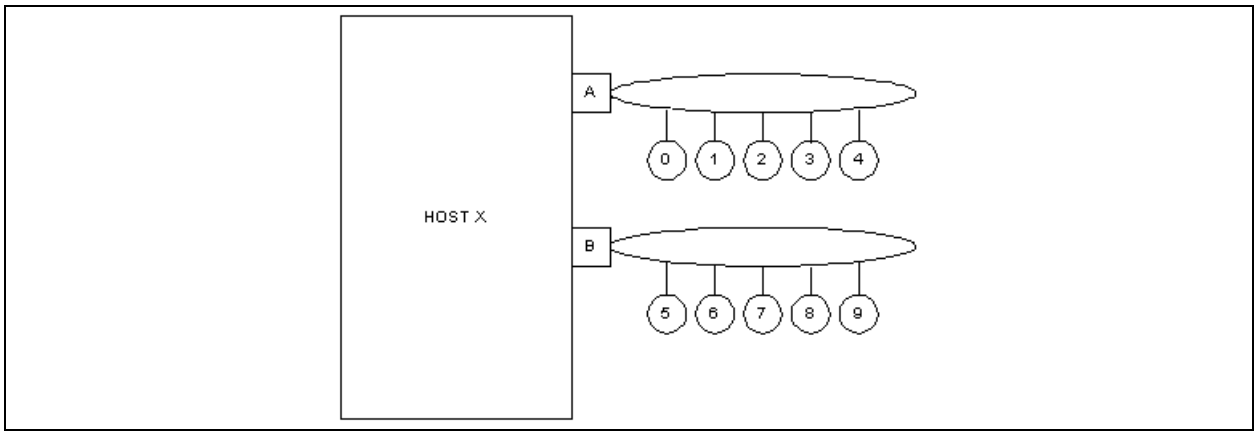



***Figure 2-1. Single-Ported Configuration***

Note that figure 2-1 simplifies hardware connections: target devices can be connected through a local loop, Fibre Channel hub, Fibre Channel switch, or any combination of those. Fibre Channel topology is useful in troubleshooting situations; however, a basic configuration requires only this basic diagram showing which hosts and HBAs are connected to which target devices. This is not a failover configuration; each target device is accessible through only one HBA.

### *2.2.2*
## Simple Failover Configuration

Figure 2-2 shows a simple failover configuration consisting of one host (X), two HBAs (A and B), three dual-ported devices (0–2), and two single-ported devices (3–4).

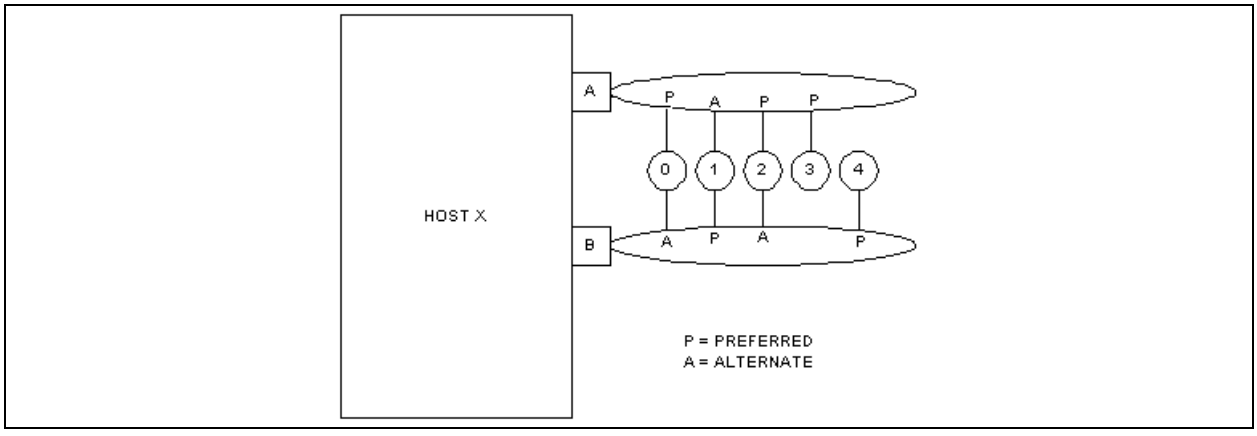



***Figure 2-2. Simple Failover Configuration***

In this configuration, connections marked *P* are preferred paths to a device, and connections marked *A* are alternate paths. Alternate paths to devices are typically hidden from the operating system and file system layers to keep them from being interpreted as two distinct devices.

### *2.2.3*
## SAN or Cluster Configuration

Figure 2-3 shows a simple storage area network (SAN) configuration consisting of two hosts (X and Y). Each host has an HBA and is connected to a common set of five target devices (0–4).

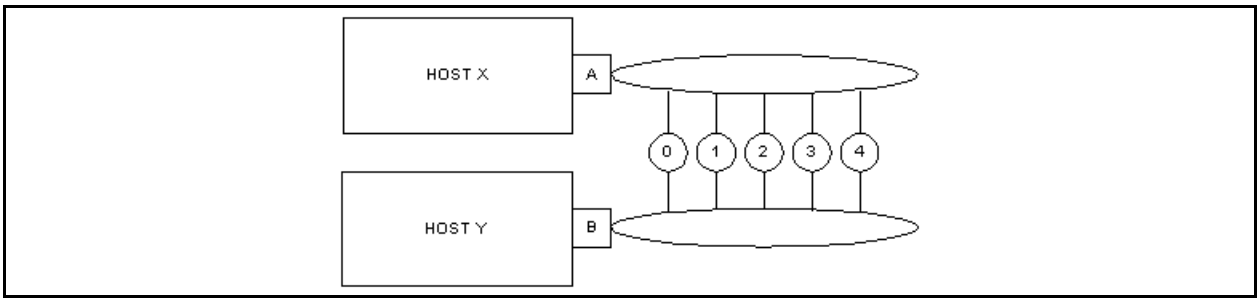



***Figure 2-3. SAN or Cluster Configuration***

If figure 2-3 represents a SAN of unrelated hosts, each host is configured to recognize a different set of devices. This configuration can be made at the target device level (called *target masking*) where host X is configured to see devices 0–1 and mask devices 2–4, and host Y is configured to see devices 2–4 and mask devices 0–1. Alternatively, this configuration can be made at the logical unit number (LUN) level (called *LUN masking*) where hosts X and Y recognize the devices but each has a different set of LUNs masked on the device.

If figure 2-3 represents a cluster of two hosts, the hardware setup is the same; however, for the software configuration, each host is configured to recognize the same set of devices. Cluster software must determine (arbitrate) which host accesses which devices at any time. For example, both hosts can be configured to recognize all targets, but cluster software determines that host X is the preferred host and owns the devices (unless cluster software determines that host X is down and host Y takes over).

### 2.2.4
## RAID Configuration and LUN Masking

Figure 2-4 illustrates the interaction of a host adapter alternate with a LUN alternate in a RAID subsystem. Two hosts (X and Y) are connected to a fabric, which is simplified for this diagram. Also on the fabric is a RAID subsystem with dual controllers (left and right) containing eight LUNs.

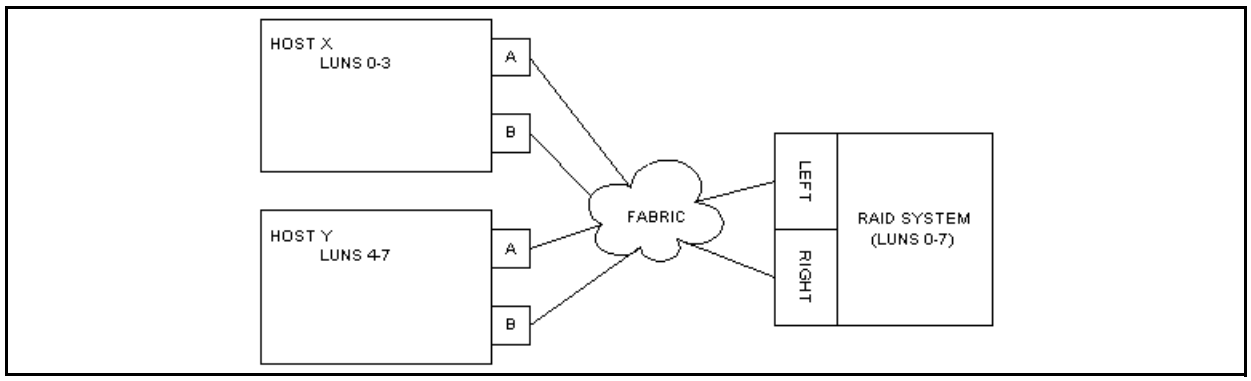



***Figure 2-4. RAID Configuration and LUN Masking***

This is a generic example of a RAID configuration. Many, but not all, RAID systems operate in this manner. Details of the configuration are described in the following paragraphs.

- All hosts and storage devices are connected to a common fabric. Details of fabric configuration are not important, except to note that all hosts and HBAs can connect to all storage devices. Depending on the fabric, some devices may appear on the local loop and/or as fabric devices.
- Hosts X and Y must be configured to recognize different target devices or else risk overwriting each other's data. The SANblade Manager application must be run on each host to configure devices as enabled (with a preferred and alternate path assigned to each device) or disabled.
- If hosts X and Y are cooperating in a cluster, they can be configured so that both recognize a particular device. In this case, clustering software and the clustered application must determine which host is permitted to write to the device.
- Host Z can be added to this configuration. SANblade Manager supports up to 30 hosts. The only limiting factor is that SANblade Manager must be run on each host in turn.
- The RAID system offers eight LUNs, numbered 0–7. The RAID system typically has its left and right controllers operating in an active/active manner, with half the LUNs available on each controller.

- Both hosts X and Y can recognize both targets on both HBAs. In SANblade Manager, each target device is configured with one HBA as its preferred path and (optionally) one HBA as its alternate path. Be sure that both controllers are configured as enabled and not masked on a target level.
- On host X, the LUN mask for both controllers is set to enable LUNs 0–3 and disable all other LUNs. This LUN mask must be consistent for both the left and right controllers so that LUN alternates in the RAID system function correctly. On host Y, the LUN mask for both controllers is set to enable LUNs 4–7 and disable all other LUNs.
- The two alternate systems function independently, based on the configuration, operation of the RAID subsystem's LUN alternate, and type of failure that occurs. If access to a target controller is lost, RAID subsystem LUN failover handles the recovery. If access to a target controller is available on an alternate path, HBA failover handles the recovery.

## *2.3* Installation Checklist

This section describes the installation process step-by-step. Note that your configuration may not require all steps, depending on the features you require.

### *2.3.1* Step 1: Collect the Hardware and Software

#### *2.3.1.1* Required Hardware

Collect the required hardware. In all cases, some combination of the following is required:

- QLogic HBAs
- Target devices such as disks, RAID subsystems, etc. Note that tape devices are displayed as part of the configuration, but are not fully supported by SANsurfer (only LUN masking and diagnostics are available).
- Connectivity hardware such as cables, hubs, fabric switches, etc.

#### 2.3.1.2
## Required Software

Collect the required software. Table 2-1 specifies QLogic software products that are required for the features you want to enable.

***Table 2-1. Driver and Utility Usage by Function***

| Function | Windows | | | Linux, Solaris | NetWare | Windows, Linux, Solaris, NetWare |
|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|
| | Miniport | STORport | QLdirect | Enhanced Driver | Enhanced Driver | SANblade Manager |
| Basic operation | x | x | | x | x | |
| Fabric support | x | x | | x | x | |
| Optimized operation (filtering) | x | | x | x | x | |
| Alternate path | x | | x | x | x | x |
| Device selection and masking | x | | | x | x | x |
| Static load balancing | x | | x | x | x | x |
| Device hot replacement | x | | | | | x |
| Secure device access | | | | | | x |
| Heterogeneous support | | | | | | x |
| IP support | x | | | | | |
| Device/SAN management | | x | | | | x |

***NOTE:*** When the STORport driver is loaded, QLdirect is not supported. In addition, the following features are disabled in SANblade Manager:

- Target persistent binding (see section 7.6)
- Failover (see section 7.2.2)
- LUN masking (see section 7.2.2)
- Device replacement (see section 7.8)
- Load balancing (see section 7.2.2.2)
- Failover watcher (current path) (see section 7.2.2)

### 2.3.2
## Step 2: Install the Hardware

Refer to hardware installation guides to install HBAs in host systems (see section 1.1). Cable target devices through the combination of local loops, hubs, and switches in your configuration.

**Verification** Before installing the device driver, verify the presence of HBAs at power up using the QLogic *Fast!*UTIL program. Type ALT+Q or CTRL+Q during power up to enter the *Fast!*UTIL program. *Fast!*UTIL allows you to perform basic HBA configuration. *Fast!*UTIL can verify device connectivity for loop and hub topologies but does not find devices on fabric configurations.

### 2.3.3
## Step 3: Install the Enhanced Driver

Refer to the appropriate software installation guide (see section 1.1) and readme.txt file to install an enhanced device driver on host systems.

***NOTE:*** Some operating systems, for example, Windows 2000, come from the operating system manufacturer with a QLogic miniport device driver. This device driver is a standard driver and does not contain the extended features required to run with SANblade Manager. The standard driver for Windows 2000/Server 2003 is version 8.*x* or lower (version 6.*x* for Linux, version 6.*x* for Novell NetWare, version 4.*x* for Solaris SPARC). You must install the most current device driver to support features such as LUN masking, failover, etc. The most current device driver versions can be found at the QLogic web site (www.qlogic.com) and on the SANsurfer Management Suite CD-ROM.

***WARNING!!*** At this stage, a dual-ported device may appear under the operating system as two distinct devices. This situation is normal and is resolved later by configuring one path to the device as an alternate path. If one device is configured as two devices, do not write data to this device, as the file system can be confused.

**Verification** Verify that HBAs recognize target devices by using operating system device configuration utilities, or use SANblade Manager to display target devices found on an HBA.

To mask devices or LUNs, or if devices appear twice because they will be configured later as preferred and alternate paths, do not format devices, assign drive letters, or save this disk configuration.

In Windows 2000/Server 2003, use the computer management utility to view which target devices are configured on which adapters, and to view and format devices and LUNs that are found.

In NetWare, use Scan all LUNs and List Storage Adapters commands to view which target devices are configured on which adapters. You can use the nwconfig utility to view the devices and LUNs that are found.

In Linux, open /var/log/messages to view which target devices are configured on which adapters. Entries are also created for each HBA recognized by the driver. Each entry contains information about target devices and LUNs that are found.

In Solaris, open /var/adm/messages to view which target devices are configured on which adapters.

### *2.3.4*
## Step 4: Install any RAID Filter Drivers

Some RAID subsystems (including some CLARiiON, EMC, and LSI subsystems) provide redundancy by using the subsystem to provide the same LUNs through two separate controllers in the subsystem. These controllers appear as unrelated target devices to HBAs and miniport drivers. They are tied together in the driver stack through a filter driver that understands the relationship between these target devices and can move LUNs back and forth between controllers.

If you do not have any such drivers to install, skip to section 2.3.5. See your RAID subsystem installation documentation or associated software documentation to install and verify RAID filter drivers.

### *2.3.5*
## Step 5: Install and Run the SANblade Manager

SANblade Manager is a management utility to view, manage, and diagnose QLogic HBAs. SANblade Manager also configures, HBAs, target devices on HBAs, and LUNs on target devices. To use target masking, LUN masking, device hot replacement, or QLdirect failover features of SANblade Manager, you must install SANblade Manager. See section 5 for complete installation instructions.

If you do not use any of these features, you can use the miniport driver without configuring it with SANblade Manager. In this case, skip to section 2.3.6.

If you are installing SANblade Manager on a NetWare 6.*x* operating system, you must also install IPX/SPX on the server.

SANblade Manager runs as a client/server application, with the client application running on a hardware platform that supports Java and agents running on each system that has QLogic HBAs. If you are using SANblade Manager on a host system where HBAs are installed, install the SANblade Manager application (GUI) and SANblade Manager agent on the local host.

***NOTE:*** In SANblade Manager, remote procedure calls (RPCs) are used. In Windows, the RPC service (ONC/RPC Portmapper) required by SANblade Manager is installed automatically. In Linux, the appropriate RPC libraries must be installed by the Linux distribution. See the Linux

distribution documentation for information about installing RPC services before installing SANblade Manager. In NetWare, tirpc.nlm and associated files must be loaded for RPC support. These files are added to the autoexec.ncf file automatically by SANblade Manager installation.

**Verification** When using SANblade Manager to configure any alternate paths to devices, these paths are treated as unconfigured paths until QLdirect is installed.

### *2.3.6*
## Step 6: Install the QLdirect Failover Driver

The QLdirect driver provides two main features with the enhanced miniport driver under Windows 2000/Server 2003:

- Failover of a target device between two HBAs
- Optimization of the I/O path
- Improved performance and CPU usage

If you are not using Windows 2000/Server 2003, or if you are not using QLdirect features, skip to section 2.3.7.

Install QLdirect using the InstallShield script provided on the distribution CD.

**Verification** QLdirect operates transparently, so there are no visible effects of failover. To verify the operation of QLdirect, force a failover by starting an I/O stream to a dual-ported device, then remove the cable for one path to the device. Monitor the event log; a failover message is generated when QLdirect performs a failover. Verification may take a couple of minutes, depending on various system parameters. Reconnect the primary path cable; QLdirect should failback to the primary path within seconds. A failback is logged into the event log.

### *2.3.7*
## Step 7: Configure the Disks in the Operating System

When all hardware and configuration is complete for Fibre Channel subsystems, use the appropriate operating system utilities to enable devices, assign drive letters or logical names, initialize file systems, etc., for each device or LUN on the system.

### *2.3.8*
## Step 8: Install the IP Communications Driver

Optionally, install the IP communications driver. To use the NDIS driver to enable IP traffic over the Fibre Channel, install that device driver and its configuration utility.

## *2.4* Configuration Parameters

### *2.4.1* Linux Enhanced Driver Parameters

#### *2.4.1.1* Basic Parameters

QLogic configuration parameters are stored in the modules.conf file in the subdirectory /etc. Values of parameters in the file are found in the readme.txt file associated with the enhanced driver.

#### *2.4.1.2* Configuration Parameter

To maintain backward compatibility, if the configuration cannot be read from persistent storage, the enhanced driver defaults to the previous operation of configuring and enabling all devices that are found. Some OEMs indicate that this is an unacceptable risk when adding a new host to a SAN system and that the desired operation is to configure *no* devices instead of *all* devices. The parameter value is ConfigRequired=1 (TRUE) in Linux.

### *2.4.2* NetWare Enhanced Driver Configuration Parameters

QLogic configuration parameters are stored in the QL2*x*00.cfg file in the default DOS directory, C:\Nwserver. Values of parameters in the file are created and saved by the NetWare agent and not intended for modification or editing.

## *2.5* Troubleshooting

This section lists troubleshooting tools to help identify the source of a problem in hardware or software. This section also contains a list of known issues related to certain configurations.

### *2.5.1* Troubleshooting Tools

The following sections explain how to use the Windows event log and SANblade Manager to solve hardware problems.

#### 2.5.1.1
### Windows Event Log

The Windows event log is the main source of information for device driver problems and events. Device drivers usually indicate only status by logging events in the system event log. SANblade Manager agents also use the application event log to report service errors, etc. For more information, see section 8.1.

The miniport driver logs events for significant driver errors. Due to a limitation of the Windows miniport driver interface, the miniport can log only two 32-bit values for any event. Information about interpreting these event codes is in the eventlog.txt file, which is shipped with the miniport driver.

In addition, the miniport driver can be configured to perform extended event logging for an adapter, which causes it to log all loop transitions and many minor events. Extended event logging uses extra overhead and is enabled only in troubleshooting situations. The extended event logging flag is stored in the adapter NVRAM and can be modified using *Fast!*UTIL or SANblade Manager.

The QLdirect driver logs events for significant driver errors, and for failover and failback of a device. QLdirect logs full text messages for each event. These event messages can be parsed and displayed on any system where QLdirect is installed. These messages usually are self-explanatory.

QLdirect can also be configured for extended event logging, which causes it to log every retry and many minor events. Extended event logging uses extra overhead and is enabled only in troubleshooting situations. The extended event logging flag for QLdirect is different from the extended event logging flag for the miniport driver; either or both can be enabled. QLdirect extended event logging is enabled by setting the following registry parameter to 1 and rebooting:

```
HKLM\System\CurrentControlSet\Services\qldirect\flags
```

#### 2.5.1.2
### SANblade Manager

SANblade Manager displays target devices on an HBA, loop topology information, loop error count information, etc. SANblade Manager displays target devices on an HBA and is useful for analyzing system configurations. SANblade Manager uses a feature of the enhanced miniport driver to find and display information about devices that are not configured on the local host. This feature can display information about all potential target devices on a fabric or all devices on a loop topology, not just those that are configured on the local host.

### *2.5.2*
## Known Issues

#### *2.5.2.1*
### Failover of JBOD Dual-Port Writes

Some older dual-ported just a bunch of disks (JBOD) drives have shared logic between the drive's A and B ports. If one HBA attempts a write command on port A when the cable to port A is removed, the drive may wait indefinitely for data on port A and never respond to failover commands on port B. This problem was identified and reported to appropriate drive manufacturers. If you suspect this problem, retry the failover using a read-only test. If this does not correct the problem, contact your drive manufacturer for new firmware.

*Section 3*

# SANblade Manager Overview

## *3.1* What is SANblade Manager?

The QLogic SANblade™ Manager is a GUI-based application that configures and manages QLogic Fibre Channel host bus adapters (HBAs) and attached devices within a storage area network (SAN) environment. Note the following:

- SANblade Manager works with the Windows® 2000, Windows® Server 2003, Red Hat™ Linux, SuSE Linux Enterprise Server 8, Solaris SPARC®, and Novell NetWare® operating systems. Support of multiple operating systems allows control of heterogeneous environments.
- SANblade Manager is a client/server application. The networking capability of the application allows for centralized management and configuration of the entire SAN.

## *3.2* Features

The SANblade Manager application has the following features:

- **Asset management.** SANblade Manager allows you to connect to and disconnect from local and remote hosts. It also provides information about connected hosts and their attached QLogic adapters (including connected devices and LUNs). In addition, you can view the HBA type.
- **Configuration management.** SANblade Manager allows you to configure local and remote systems. With SANblade Manager you can:
  - Configure QLogic Fibre Channel adapters
  - Configure Fibre Channel devices
  - Compare host. This feature allows you to view the differences between the current host and any saved host configuration, so you know what has changed in the SAN.
  - Configure LUNs for a device (*load balancing*)

    See the **SANblade HBA Support Matrix (Fibre Channel & iSCSI)** on the SANsurfer Management Suite CD-ROM for a list of adapters that support LUN load balancing.

    Support for additional operating systems and HBAs will be added in future versions of SANblade Manager.

- Configure LUN path failover. See the **SANblade HBA Support Matrix (Fibre Channel & iSCSI)** on the SANsurfer Management Suite CD-ROM for a list of adapters that support LUN path failover.

  Support for additional operating systems and HBAs will be added in future versions of SANblade Manager.

- Persistently bind targets
- Replace devices
- Update the NVRAM and flash BIOS

- **Statistics.** SANblade Manager provides statistics for each host and adapter. These statistics can be collected automatically or on request. They can be reset at any time. In addition, you can export the statistics to a CSV file that can be imported into other applications, for example, Microsoft® Excel.
- **Diagnostics.** SANblade Manager provides end-to-end diagnostics that enable you to test the adapters and the devices to which they are connected. SANblade Manager diagnostics allow you to do the following:
  - Test the link status of each adapter and its attached devices
  - Perform a loopback test, which is external to the adapter, to evaluate the ports (transmit and receive transceivers) on the adapter and the error rate
  - Perform a read/write buffer test, which tests the link between the adapter and its devices
- **Alarm and event notifications.** SANblade Manager provides asynchronous notification of various conditions and problems through alarms and events. Alarm information includes severity, time, host, adapter, application, and description. Event information includes severity, time, and message. In addition, the alarm and event information can be exported to a CSV file that can be imported into other applications, for example, Microsoft Excel.

*Section 4*

# System Requirements

The SANblade Manager application requires the hardware and software listed in this section for optimum performance.

## *4.1* Hardware Requirements

The minimum hardware requirements are as follows:

- QLogic QLA2*xxx* PCI to Fibre Channel adapters (see section 4.3)
- Single-processor or multiprocessor server or workstation:
  - Pentium III with 450 MHz or greater for Windows 2000, Windows Server 2003, and NetWare
  - Pentium II with 233 MHz or greater for Red Hat/SuSE Linux
  - Sun Ultra 10 for Solaris SPARC
- Fibre Channel devices, such as disks and RAID subsystems. SANblade manager supports most FC devices. For a complete list of devices that support failover, see the QLogic *Interoperability Guide*, which can be downloaded from the QLogic web site, www.qlogic.com/interopguide/info.asp#inter.

  ***NOTE:*** Tape devices are displayed as part of the configuration, but are not fully supported by SANsurfer (only LUN masking and diagnostics are available).
- 64 MBs of physical RAM are required to run SANblade Manager; 128 MBs are recommended. Running with less memory can cause disk swapping, which severely effects performance.
- Video card capable of 256 colors and a screen resolution of 800×600 pixels are required; 16K colors and 1024×768 pixels are recommended.
- About 70 MBs of disk space

## *4.2* Software Requirements

The minimum software requirements are as follows:

- One of the following operating systems:
  - Windows 2000 Server, Advanced Server, or Professional with SP1, SP2, SP3, or SP4
  - Windows Server 2003
  - Red Hat Linux 8 (kernel 2.4.20-18.8), Red Hat Linux 9 (kernel 2.4.20-18.9), Red Hat Enterprise Linux Advanced Server (AS) 2.1 (IA32 and IA64) (kernel 2.4.9.e-8)
  - SuSE Linux Enterprise Server 8 (SLES) (IA32) (kernel 2.4.19-64GB)
  - Solaris SPARC v2.6, 2.7, 2.8, or 2.9
  - Novell NetWare 5.1 or 6.*x* server with IPX/SPX loaded (version 6.5 is supported only on QLA23*xx* HBAs)
- Common desktop environment (CDE) to run SANblade Manager GUI
- QLogic QLA2*xxx* drivers, as appropriate:
  - Windows 2000
  - Windows Server 2003
  - NetWare
  - Linux
  - Solaris SPARC
- TCP/IP protocol for Windows 2000/Server 2003 remote management
- TCP/IP protocol for NetWare remote management
- Administrative privileges to perform management functions
- Adobe Acrobat® Reader® (version 2.1 or above) to view documentation
- Internet Explorer (version 4.0 or later) or Netscape Communicator (version 4.5 or later) to view online help

## *4.3* Supported QLogic Adapters

The QLogic adapters are collectively referred to as the ***QLA2xxx adapter*** unless otherwise noted. See the **SANblade HBA Support Matrix (Fibre Channel & iSCSI)** on the SANsurfer Management Suite CD-ROM for a detailed list of supported QLogic adapters.

*Section 5*

# Installing SANblade Manager

Installing the SANblade Manager application consists of installing the SANblade Manager GUI, platform-specific agent, and help components, as appropriate.

***NOTE:*** Before installing SANblade Manager, read and follow the instructions in the documents listed in section 1.1, as applicable.

This section discusses:

- Initial installation (see section 5.1)
- Uninstalling the SANsurfer application (see section 5.2)

## *5.1* Initial Installation

You can install SANblade Manager using the software from the QLogic Web site or from the SANsurfer Management Suite CD-ROM.

***NOTE:***

- Be sure to install the same version of the SANblade Manager application on all systems in the network.
- If you have a previous version of SANblade Manager (for example, QMS 1.0 or QMS 2.0 (QMSJ)), uninstall these applications before installing SANblade Manager.

### *5.1.1*
## Installation Options

SANblade Manager supports both stand-alone and networked configurations. Install the software appropriate for your configuration (see table 5-1).

***Table 5-1. Configuration Option Installation Requirements***

| Configuration | Software Requirements |
|---|---|
| Stand-alone system<br>This system monitors QLA2*xxx* adapters locally. | SANblade Manager GUI<br>Plus one of the following:<br>SANblade Manager 2000/2003 Agent<br>SANblade Manager Linux Agent<br>SANblade Manager Solaris Agent |
| Networked<br>This system monitors QLA2*xxx* adapters locally and on remote systems on the same network. | SANblade Manager GUI<br>Plus one of the following:<br>SANblade Manager 2000/2003 Agent<br>SANblade Manager Linux Agent<br>SANblade Manager Solaris Agent |
| This system monitors QLA2*xxx* adapters only on remote systems on the same network. | SANblade Manager GUI |
| The QLA2*xxx* adapters on this system are remotely monitored only from other systems on the same network. | One of the following:<br>SANblade Manager 2000/2003 Agent<br>SANblade Manager NetWare 5/6.x Agent<br>SANblade Manager Linux Agent<br>SANblade Manager Solaris Agent |

### *5.1.2*
## Installation Instructions

SANsurfer installer is a self-extracting program that installs the SANblade Manager application and related software.

***NOTE:*** You cannot install the SANblade Manager agent directly on a NetWare server; you must install the agent on a Windows 2000/Server2003 system connected to the NetWare server. The prerequisites for each NetWare server are as follows:

- A Windows 2000/Server2003 system must be connected to the NetWare server through the TCP/IP network.
- The Windows 2000/Server2003 system must have a drive mapped to the NetWare server system volume (sys:\).

Perform the following steps to install SANblade Manager on this system or on the NetWare server connected to this system:

1. Perform the following steps to start the installation:
   a. Do one of the following to access the SANsurfer installer:
      - If you are installing SANblade Manager from the SANsurfer Management Suite CD-ROM, follow these steps:
        - Click **SANblade HBA Software** on the CD-ROM home page.
        - Find the table that corresponds to your QLogic HBAs (**2-Gb Fibre Channel—2300 Series** or **1-Gb Fibre Channel—2200 Series**). Select the appropriate operating system.
        - Click **SANsurfer Management Software**.
        - The **File Download** dialog box displays. Click **Download**. Select a directory on your system and download the file.
      - If you are installing SANblade Manager from the QLogic Web site, follow these steps:
        - From the QLogic home page, click **Support**.
        - Click **Drivers, Software, and Manuals**.
        - Select your HBA by product or series.
        - If you selected your HBA by series, click the model number of your HBA in the table on the right-hand side of the screen.
        - Click the appropriate operating system under the **Drivers and Management Software** heading.

- In the SANblade/SANsurfer row of the table, click **Download**.
- The **File Download** dialog box displays. Click **Download**. Select a directory on your system and download the file.

b. Do one of the following to select and start the installation file:

- For a Windows 2000/Server 2003 system, locate the folder where you downloaded the SANsurfer installer, unzip the file, then double-click the SANsurfer *installer* file (where `installer` is the SANsurfer installer file).
- For a Red Hat/SuSE Linux or Solaris SPARC system, do the following:

  (1) Open a shell.

  (2) Change to the directory where you downloaded the SANsurfer installer.

  (3) Type the following and then press ENTER to ensure that the SANsurfer installer file is executable. *install* is the SANsurfer installer file.

```
sh ./install.bin
```

2. InstallAnywhere prepares to install SANsurfer. The installation **Introduction** dialog box displays (see figure 5-1). Click **Next**.

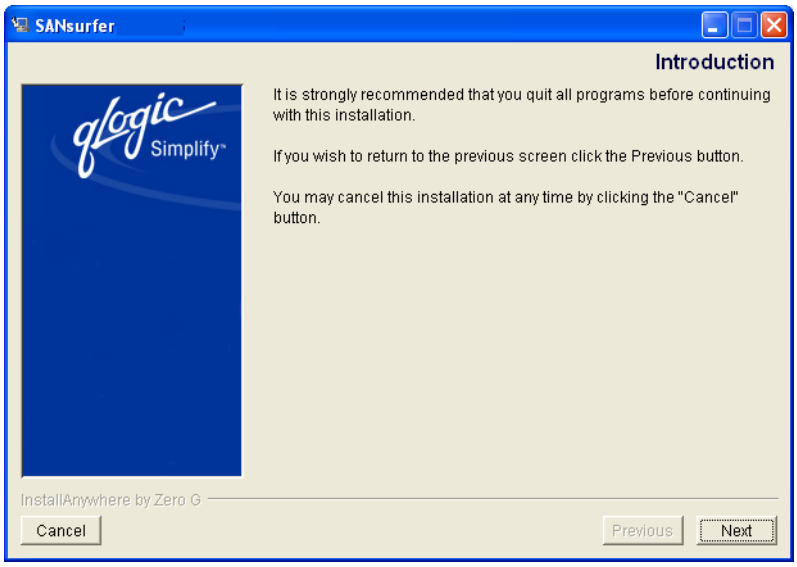



***Figure 5-1. Installation Introduction Dialog Box***

3. The **Important Information** dialog box displays (see figure 5-2). Read the information, then click **Next**.

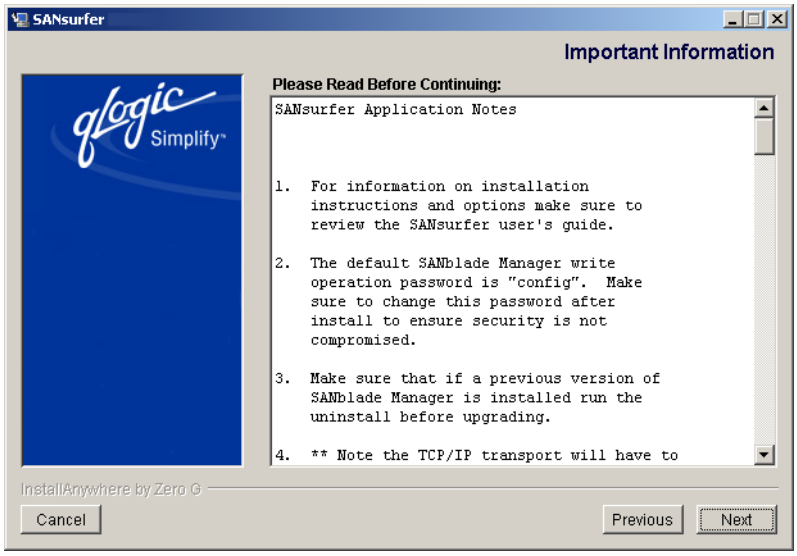



***Figure 5-2. Important Information Dialog Box***

You can find this information in the readme.txt file in the following locations:

- Windows 2000/Server 2003: Program Files\QLogic Management Suite
- Red Hat/SuSE Linux and Solaris SPARC: opt/qlogic/sansurfer

4. The **Choose Product Features** dialog box displays. The dialog box differs, depending on whether you are installing on a Windows 2000/Server 2003, Red Hat/SuSE Linux, or Solaris SPARC system. See figure 5-3 for a sample dialog box.

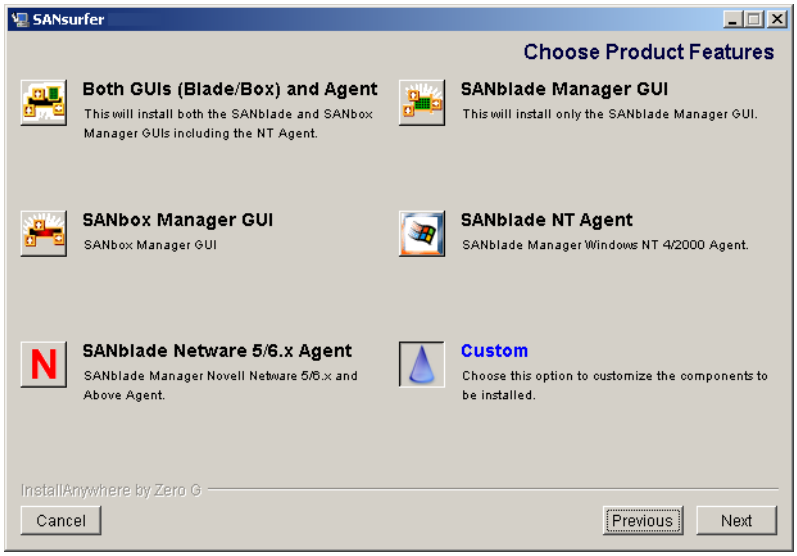



***Figure 5-3. Choose Product Features Dialog Box (Sample)***

SANblade Manager supports both stand-alone and network configurations. Do one of the following to install the software appropriate to your configuration:

- Select one preconfigured installation set from the following. Then click **Next**.

  For Windows 2000/Server 2003 systems:

  - Select **Both GUIs (Blade/Box) and Agent** if you have QLA2xxx adapters and SANbox2 switches on your system that will be locally or remotely monitored from other systems on the same network.
  - Select **SANblade Manager GUI** if the system will monitor QLA2*xxx* adapters only on remote systems on the same network.
  - Select **SANblade NT Agent** if the QLA2*xxx* adapters on this Windows 2000/Server 2003 system will be remotely monitored only from other systems on the same network.
  - Select **SANblade NetWare 5/6.*x* Agent** if the QLA2*xxx* adapters on this NetWare 5/6.*x* system will be remotely monitored only from other systems on the same network.
  - Select **SANbox Manager GUI** to install the switch application. For more information, see the *SANbox2 Switch Management User's Manual*.

For Red Hat/SuSE Linux systems:

- Select **Both GUIs (Blade/Box) and Agent** if you have QLA2xxx adapters and SANbox2 switches on your system that will be locally or remotely monitored from other systems on the same network.
- Select **SANblade Manager GUI** if the system will monitor QLA2*xxx* adapters only on remote systems on the same network.
- Select **SANbox Manager GUI** to install the switch application. For more information, see the *SANbox2 Switch Management User's Manual*.
- Select **SANblade Linux Agent** if the QLA2*xxx* adapters on this Red Hat/SuSE Linux system will be remotely monitored only from other systems on the same network.

For Solaris SPARC systems:

- Select **Both GUIs (Blade/Box) and Agent** if you have QLA2xxx adapters and SANbox2 switches on your system that will be locally or remotely monitored from other systems on the same network.
- Select **SANblade Manager GUI** if the system will monitor QLA2*xxx* adapters only on remote systems on the same network.
- Select **SANbox Manager GUI** to install the switch application. For more information, see the *SANbox2 Switch Management User's Manual*.
- Select **SANblade Solaris Agent** if the QLA2*xxx* adapters on this Solaris SPARC system will be remotely monitored only from other systems on the same network.

- Select **Customize** to create an installation set. The **Choose Product Components** dialog box displays (see figure 5-4). The dialog box differs, depending on whether you are installing on a Windows 2000/Server 2003, Red Hat/SuSE Linux, or Solaris SPARC system.

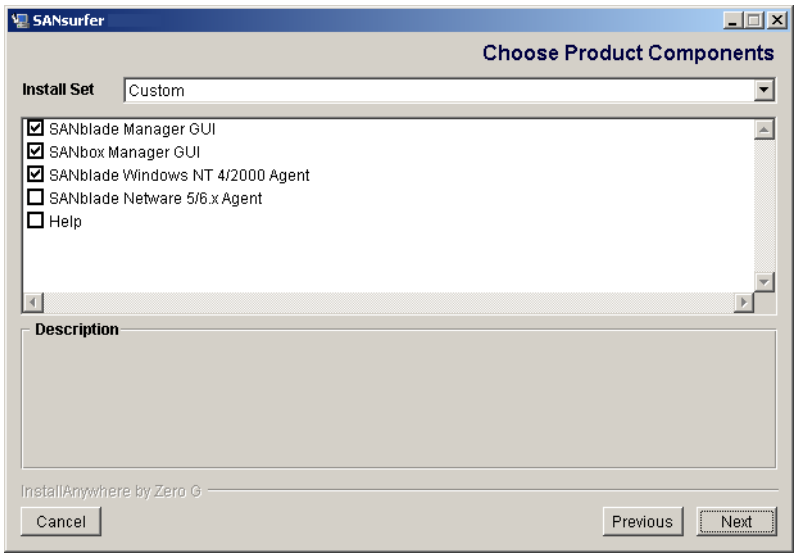



***Figure 5-4. Choose Product Components Dialog Box (Sample)***

Perform the following steps to create a custom set:

a. In the **Feature Set** box, select **Custom Set**.

b. Select from the following components:

For a Windows 2000/Server 2003 system:

- SANblade Manager GUI
- SANbox Manager GUI
- SANblade Windows 2000/2003 Agent
- SANblade NetWare 5/6.*x* Agent
- Help

For a Red Hat/SuSE Linux system:

- SANblade Manager GUI
- SANbox Manager GUI
- SANblade Linux Agent
- Help

For a Solaris SPARC system:

- SANblade Manager GUI
- SANbox Manager GUI
- SANblade Solaris Agent
- Help

c. Click **Next**.

5. The **Choose Install Folder** dialog box displays (see figure 5-5).

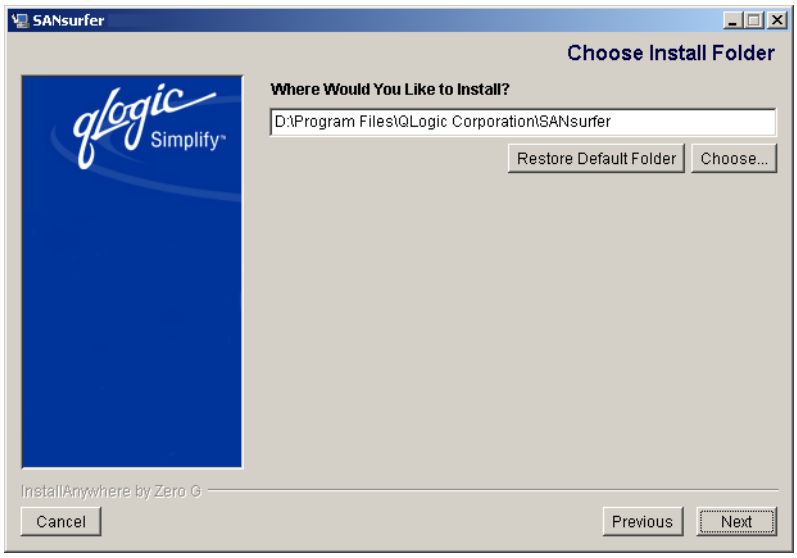



***Figure 5-5. Choose Install Folder Dialog Box***

Do one of the following:

***NOTE:*** For NetWare, select the drive mapped to the NetWare server (always select a location other than the default).

- To select the destination location displayed in the dialog box, click **Next** (recommended).

  The default location for a Windows 2000/Server 2003 system is:

  ```
  C:\Program Files\QLogic Corporation\SANsurfer
  ```

  The default location for a Red Hat/SuSE Linux and Solaris SPARC system is:

  ```
  /opt/QLogic_Corporation/SANsurfer
  ```

- To select a different location:

  a. Click **Choose.**
  b. Select the desired location.
  c. The **Choose Install Folder** dialog box redisplays. Click **Next**.

- If you selected a different location and want to reselect the default location:

  a. Click **Restore Default Folder**.
  b. Click **Next**.

6. If there is a previous version of SANblade Manager on the system, you are prompted to uninstall the old version. The installation of SANblade Manager is stopped while the previous version is uninstalled.
7. If you are installing the SANblade Manager GUI on a Windows 2000/Server 2003 system, the **Select Shortcut Profile** dialog box displays (see figure 5-6).

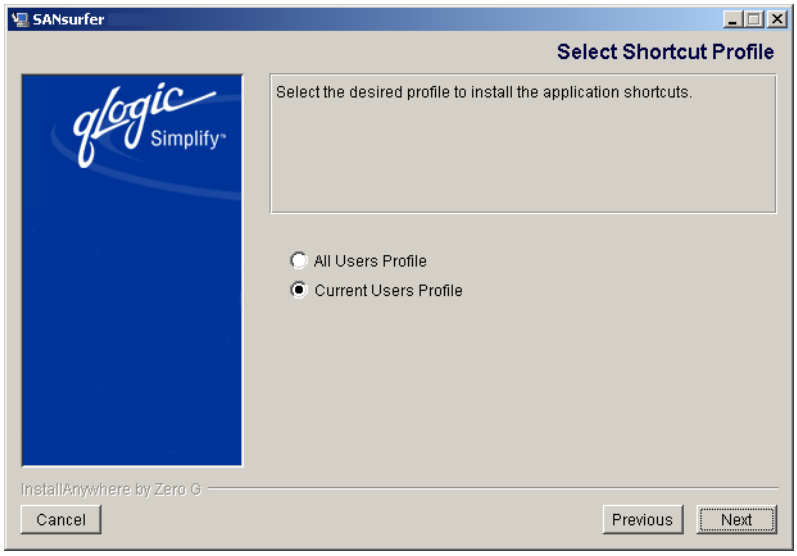



***Figure 5-6. Select Shortcut Profile Dialog Box (Windows 2000/Server 2003)***

Application shortcuts consist of the following:

- The **SANsurfer** icon on the desktop (if selected in step 8)
- **QLogic Management Suite (SANblade Manager** and **SANblade Manager Uninstaller**), which is accessible when you click the **Start** button and point to **Programs**

Perform the following steps:

a. Do one of the following:

- Click **All Users Profile** if you want the application shortcuts available to all users.
- Click **Current Users Profile** (default) if you want the application shortcuts available only to the current user.

b. Click **Next**.

8. If you are installing the SANblade Manager GUI on a Windows 2000/Server 2003 system, the **Create Desktop Icon Selection** dialog box displays (see figure 5-7).

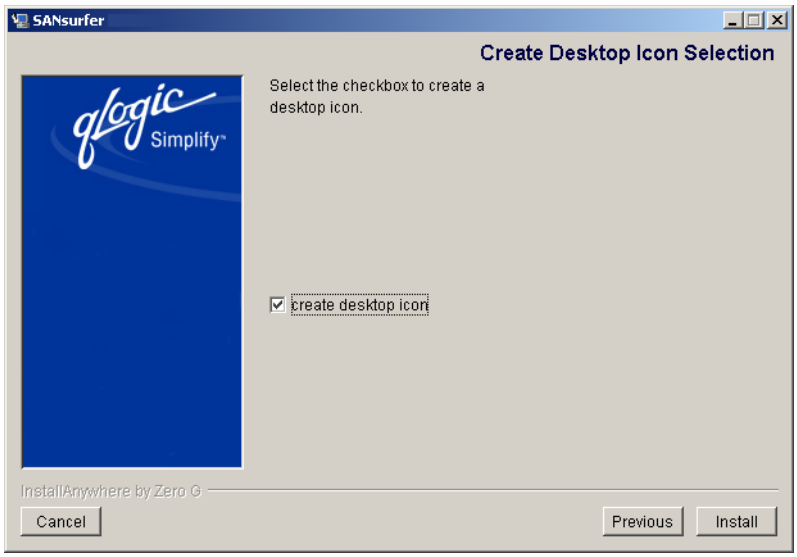



***Figure 5-7. Create Desktop Icon Selection Dialog Box (Windows 2000/Server 2003)***

Do the following:

a. Select the **Create Desktop Icon** check box (default) if you want the **SANsurfer** icon to display on the desktop.

b. Click **Install**.

***NOTE:*** If you select the **Create Desktop Icon** check box, the **SANsurfer** icon displays for the current user profile or all user profiles, depending upon your selection in step 7.

9. The **Pre-Installation Summary** dialog box displays (see figure 5-8). Review the information. Click **Previous** if you want to change anything. Click **Install** to continue.

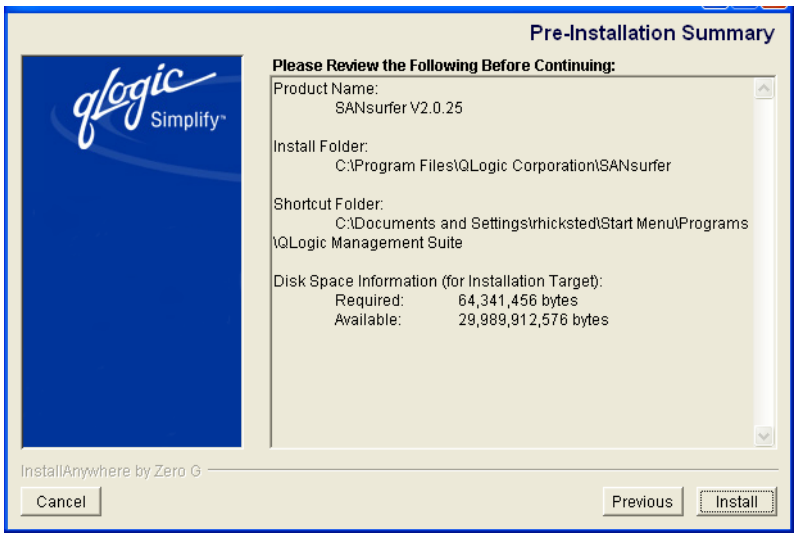



***Figure 5-8. Pre-Installation Summary Dialog Box***

10. The **Installing SANsurfer** dialog box displays (see figure 5-9). Various screens inform you that the installation is progressing.

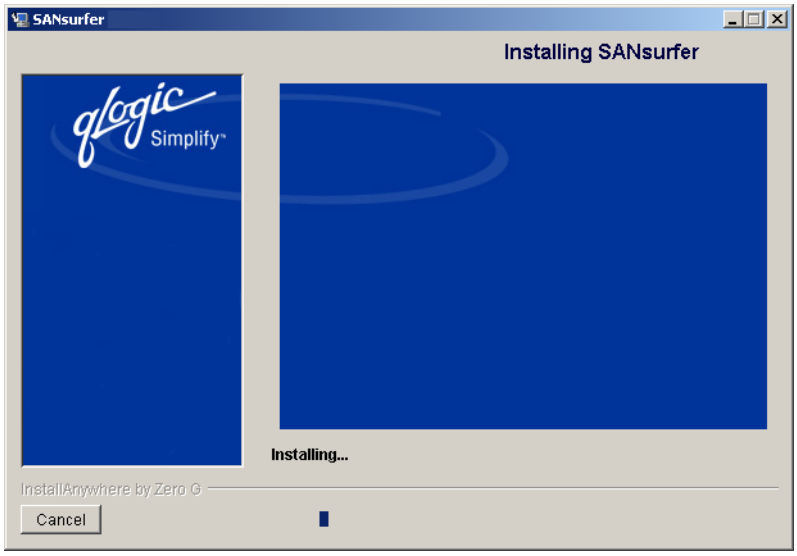



***Figure 5-9. Installing SANsurfer Dialog Box***

11. If you are installing NetWare, the **Novell NetWare Disk Selection** dialog box displays (see figure 5-10).

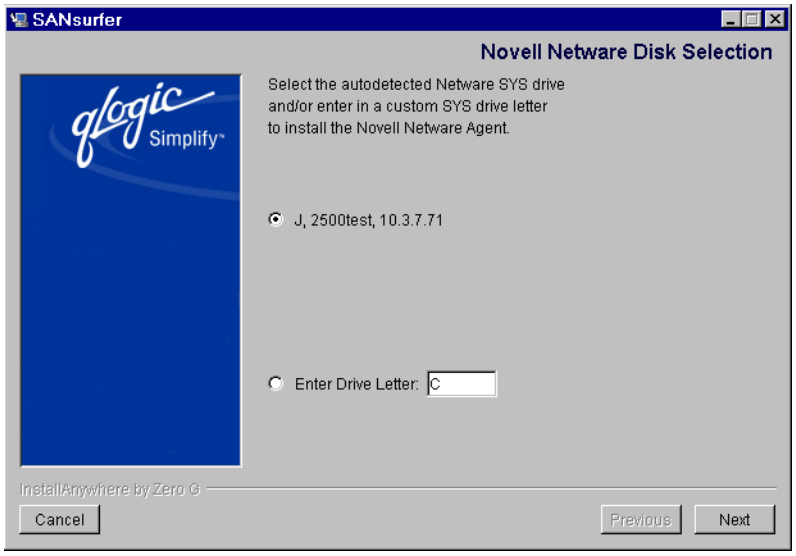



***Figure 5-10. Novell NetWare Disk Selection Dialog Box***

A list of the autodetected Windows 2000/Server 2003 drives mapped to NetWare server system volumes (sys:\) displays.

The format for a Novell NetWare 5.*x*/6 server is:

*drive, NetWare server name, NetWare server IP address*

Perform the following steps to select the Windows 2000/Server 2003 drives on which to install the NetWare agent. Each drive must be mapped to a NetWare server system volume (sys:\).

a. As appropriate, select one or more autodetected drives. In figure 5-10, for example, you could click **J, 2500test, 10.3.7.71**.

b. If a Windows 2000/Server 2003 drive that you want to select has not been mapped to the NetWare server system volume, do the following:

- Leave the **Novell NetWare Disk Selection** dialog box open. From the **Exploring** window, point to **Tools** and select **Map Network Drive** to map the Windows 2000/Server 2003 drive to the NetWare Server system volume (sys:\).
- From the **Novell NetWare Disk Selection** dialog box, type the drive letter in the **Enter Drive Letter** box and then click **Enter Drive Letter**. In figure 5-10, for example, you could type **C** in the **Enter Drive Letter** box and then click **Enter Drive Letter**.

c. Click **Next**.

12. The **Install Complete** dialog box displays (see figure 5-11). Click **Done.**

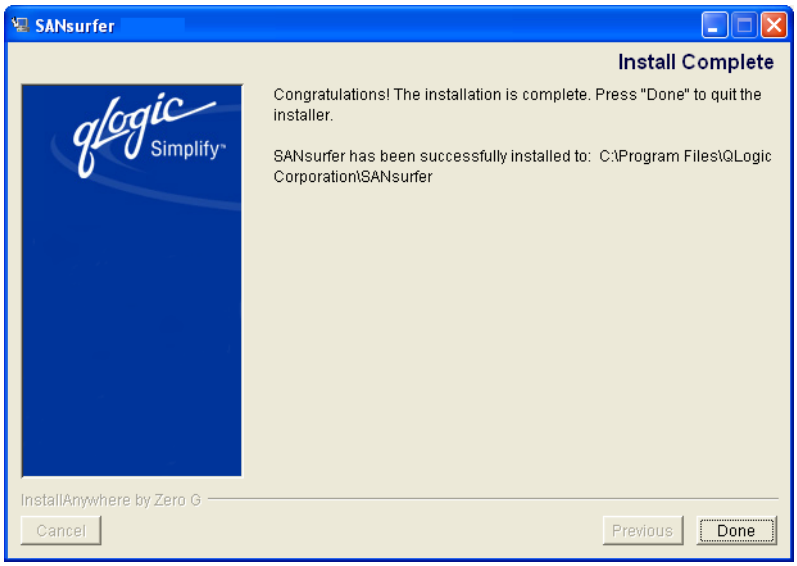



***Figure 5-11. Install Complete Dialog Box***

13. Customize the SANblade Manager application and set your security parameters (see section 6).

## *5.2* Uninstalling the SANsurfer Application

Perform the following steps to uninstall the SANsurfer application (including SANblade Manager) from this system. There is no way to uninstall only the SANblade Manager application.

***NOTE:***

- Uninstall the NetWare agent from the Windows 2000/Server 2003 drive mapped to the Novell NetWare server.
- Be sure to exit the SANblade and SANbox Manager applications before you uninstall SANblade Manager.
- The Windows 2000/Server 2003 system must have a drive mapped to the NetWare server system volume (sys:\).

1. Do one of the following to start the SANsurfer Uninstaller:

   From a Windows 2000/Server 2003 system, do one of the following:

   - Click the **Start** button, point to **Programs**, point to **QLogic Management Suite**, and then click **SANsurfer Uninstaller**.
   - Perform the following steps to use Add/Remove Programs:

     a. Click the **Start** button, point to **Settings**, and then click **Control Panel**.
     b. Double-click the **Add/Remove Programs** icon.
     c. The **Add/Remove Programs** dialog box displays (see figure 5-12). Click the **Change or Remove Programs** button (default).

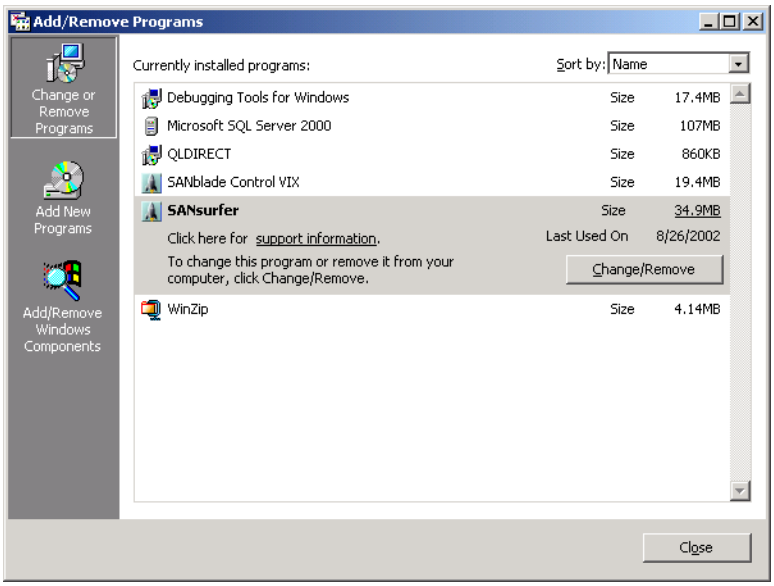



***Figure 5-12. Add/Remove Programs Dialog Box (Windows 2000)***

     d. Select **SANsurfer V*x.x.xx***.
     e. Click **Change/Remove**.

   From a Red Hat/SuSE Linux or Solaris SPARC system, do the following:

   a. Change to the directory where SANblade Manager is installed. For example, type the following and then press ENTER:

      ```
      cd /opt/QLogic_Corporation/SANsurfer
      ```

b. Change to the UninstallData directory:

```
cd /UninstallData
```

c. Type the following and then press ENTER to run the InstallAnywhere Uninstaller:

```
./SANsurferUninstaller
```

2. The **Uninstall SANsurfer—About to Uninstall** dialog box dsisplays with SANsurfer V*x.x.xx* as the program to be uninstalled (see figure 5-13). Click **Uninstall**.

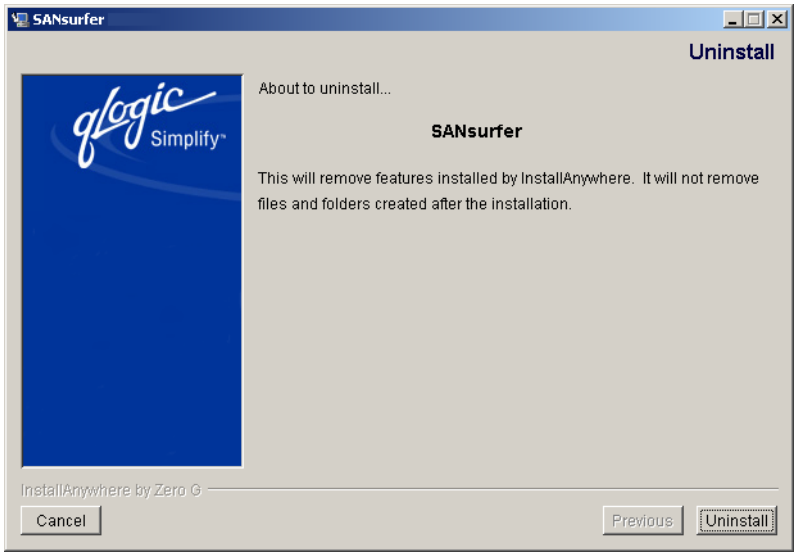



***Figure 5-13. Uninstall SANsurfer—About to Uninstall Dialog Box***

3. The **Uninstall SANsurfer—Component List** dialog box lists the components to be uninstalled (see figure 5-14).


***Figure 5-14. Uninstall SANsurfer—Component List Dialog Box***

A message displays informing you that the uninstaller is waiting 30 seconds for the agent to shut down. Wait while the uninstaller removes the components.

4. The **Uninstall SANsurfer—Uninstall Complete** dialog box informs you that the uninstall is complete (see figure 5-15). Click **Quit**.

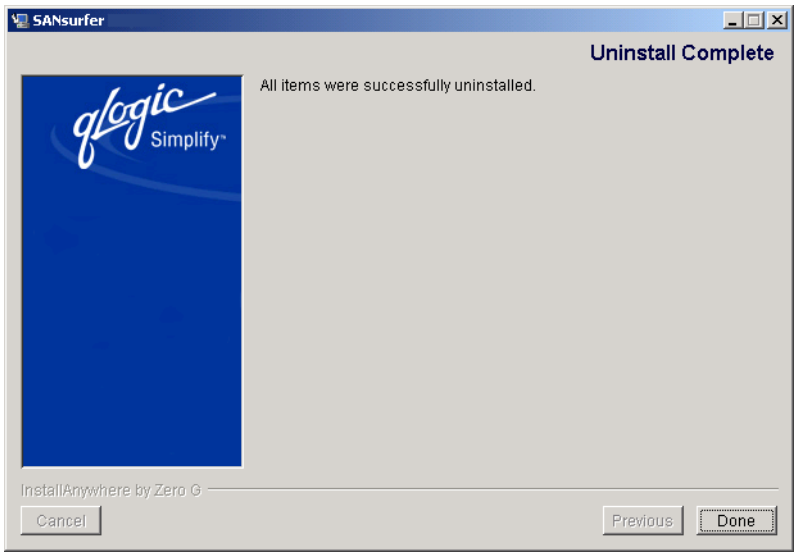



***Figure 5-15. Uninstall SANsurfer—Uninstall Complete Dialog Box***

5. If any items were not successfully uninstalled, remove them.

   Some files and directories remain after uninstalling SANsurfer. These components must be deleted manually and can be found in the following directory on the computer's hard disk: Program Files\QLogic Corporation\SANsurfer.

6. If you selected Add/Remove Programs in step 1 to uninstall SANblade Manager from a Windows 2000/Server 2003 system, do the following:

   a. Click **Cancel** to exit the **Add/Remove Programs** dialog box.
   b. Click the close button to exit the **Control Panel**.

7. Reboot the system.

*Section 6*

# Getting Started

This section includes the procedures for starting the SANblade Manager GUI, exiting the SANblade Manager GUI, and customizing the application options and policies.

This section discusses:

- Starting the SANblade Manager GUI (see section 6.1)
- SANblade Manager main window (see section 6.2)
- Exiting the SANblade Manager GUI (see section 6.3)
- Getting help (see section 6.4)
- Setting SANblade Manager security (see section 6.5)
- Setting the warning display option (see section 6.6)
- Setting the configuration change alarm option (see section 6.7)
- Specifying the polling interval (see section 6.8)
- Setting the Event Log options (see section 6.9)
- Setting the Alarm Log option (see section 6.10)
- Setting the configuration policies (see section 6.11)
- Refreshing the HBA tree (see section 6.12)

## *6.1* Starting the SANblade Manager GUI

The SANblade Manager GUI startup procedures differ depending upon the operating system. This section discusses starting the SANblade Manager GUI on the following systems:

- Windows 2000/Server 2003 (see section 6.1.1)
- Red Hat/SuSE Linux or Solaris SPARC (see section 6.1.2)

***NOTE:*** For information about connecting to specified hosts automatically when starting the SANblade Manager GUI from the command line, see section 7.1.4.

### 6.1.1 Starting SANblade Manager on Windows 2000/Server 2003

On a Windows 2000/Server 2003 system, do one of the following to start the SANsurfer application, which includes the SANblade Manager GUI. When done, the SANblade Manager main window displays (see section 6.2).

- Double-click the **SANsurfer** icon on your desktop (if the icon was created during installation) (see figure 6-1). (If you have an older version of SANblade Manager and are upgrading to the current version, the old icon image displays.)


*Figure 6-1. SANsurfer Icon*

- Click the **Start** button, point to **Programs**, point to **QLogic Management Suite**, and then click **SANsurfer**.
- Click the **Start** button, click **Run**, and then do one of the following:
  - Type in the name of SANsurfer (SANsurfer.EXE), including all the paths. Click **OK**.
  - Click **Browse**, then select the program after finding it in the **Browse** dialog box. Click **Open**.

### 6.1.2 Starting SANsurfer on Red Hat/SuSE Linux or Solaris SPARC

On a Red Hat/SuSE Linux and Solaris SPARC system, perform the following steps to start the SANsurfer application, which includes the SANblade Manager GUI. When done, the SANblade Manager main window displays (see section 6.2).

1. Ensure that you are in a graphical user environment.
2. Open a command terminal.
3. Change to the directory where the SANblade Manager application is installed. The default location is /opt/QLogic_Corporation/SANsurfer.
4. Type `./SANSurfer` and then press ENTER to start the SANblade Manager GUI.

## 6.2 SANblade Manager Main Window

The **SANblade Manager** main window (displays below (see figure 6-2).

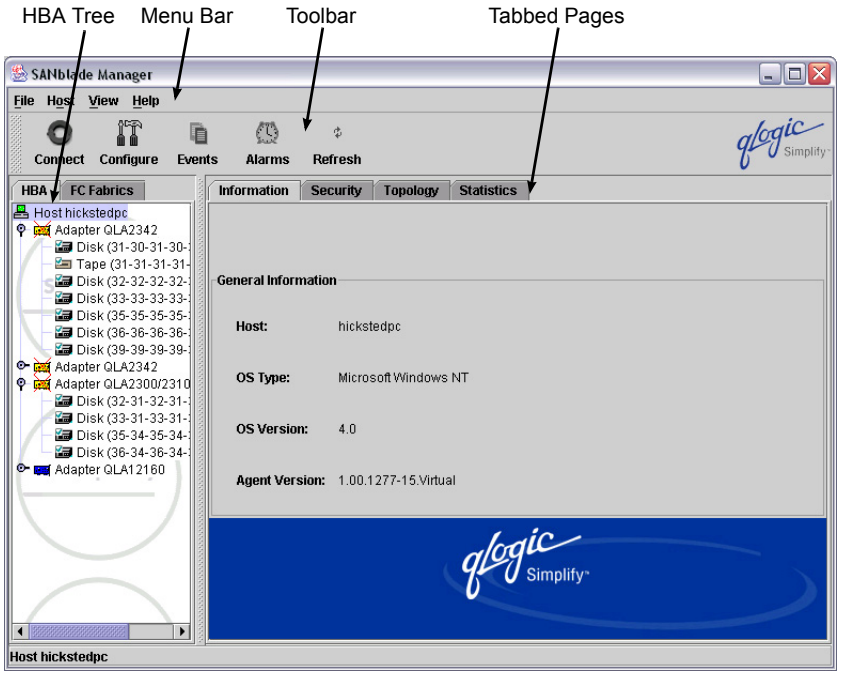



***Figure 6-2. SANblade Manager Main Window***

The window consists of the following sections:

- Menu bar
- Toolbar
- HBA tree
- Tabbed pages

The HBA tree displays the hosts with their connected adapters, devices, and LUNs. The HBA tree contains the following visual indicators:

- The blinking heart on the **host** icon indicates that the connection between the GUI and the agent is active for this host.
- The device icon displays the device status:
  - A **device** icon with a check mark indicates that the device is enabled for diagnostics (read/write buffer test). A device icon without a check mark indicates that the device is not enabled for diagnostics. See section 10.1.3 for more information.

- A **device** icon with a circled red X indicates one of the following:
  - The device is down.
  - The port to the device is down or offline.
  - The device is not responding properly to SCSI commands.

- The tape icon displays the tape status:
  - A **tape** icon with a check mark indicates that the tape is enabled for diagnostics (read/write buffer test). A tape icon without a check mark indicates that the tape is not enabled for diagnostics. See section 10.1.3 for more information.
  - A **tape** icon with a circled red X indicates one of the following:
    - The tape is down.
    - The port to the tape is down or offline.
    - The tape is not responding properly to SCSI commands.

- The **adapter** icon displays alarm status. The most severe alarm status for the adapter displays (see section 8.2 for details about alarms):
  - A green **adapter** icon indicates no alarm.
  - A gray **adapter** icon indicates an informational alarm.
  - A blue **adapter** icon indicates an unknown alarm.
  - A yellow **adapter** icon indicates a warning alarm.
  - A yellow **adapter** icon with a red X indicates that the loop is down.
  - A red **adapter** icon indicates a bad alarm.

  To view the HBA type, move the mouse over the **adapter** icon. The HBA type displays for a few seconds. You can also click the **adapter** icon; the HBA type displays in the bottom of the screen (below the HBA tree).

## *6.3* Exiting the SANblade Manager GUI

Do one of the following to exit the SANblade Manager GUI:

- On the SANblade Manager main window **File** menu, select **Exit**.
- Press SHIFT+X.

## *6.4* Getting Help with the SANblade Manager GUI

This section discusses:

- Viewing online help (see section 6.4.1)
- Specifying the browser location (see section 6.4.2)
- Viewing SANblade Manager software information (see section 6.4.3)

### 6.4.1
## Viewing Online Help

On the SANblade Manager main window **Help** menu, click **Browse Contents** to view the online help. The help window displays.

### 6.4.2
## Specifying the Browser Location

Perform the following steps to specify the location of the browser SANblade Manager launches when you select to view the online help (see section 6.4.1):

1. On the SANblade Manager main window **Help** menu, click **Set Browser Location**. The **Browser Location** dialog box displays (see figure 6-3).

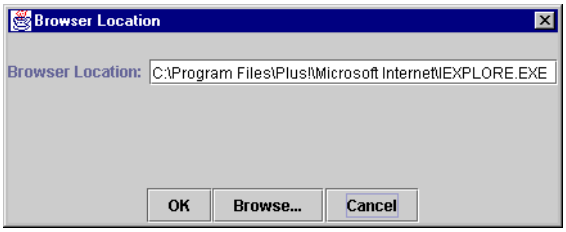



***Figure 6-3. Browser Location Dialog Box***

2. In the **Browser Location** box, enter the location. Be sure to specify the path and file name.

   If you do not know the location, click **Browse** to display a file selection dialog. Select the file. The **Browser Location** dialog box redisplays.

3. Do one of the following:

   - Click **OK** to save the location to the SANblade Manager configuration file.
   - Click **Cancel** to exit the **Browser Location** dialog box without making changes.

### 6.4.3
## Viewing SANblade Manager Software Information

To view information about the SANblade Manager application software, on the SANblade Manager main window **Help** menu, click **About.**

The **About SANblade Manager** window displays (see figure 6-4).

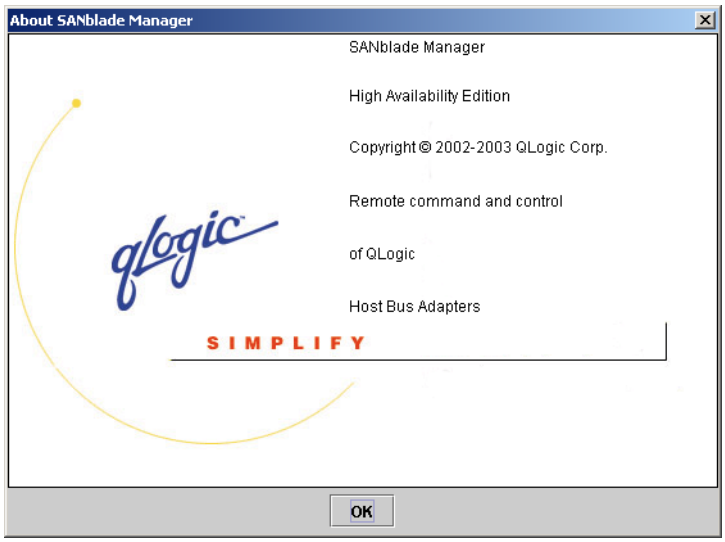



***Figure 6-4. About SANblade Manager Window***

This window displays the following information:

- High Availability edition version number
- Copyright information

Click **OK** to return to the SANblade Manager main window.

### 6.5
## Setting SANblade Manager Security

SANblade Manager security ensures that adapter configuration changes require password authorization. SANblade Manager prompts for the password when you change the following:

- NVRAM
- Flash BIOS
- Failover configuration
- Persistent configuration data
- Port configuration
- LUN configuration
- Device replacement
- Password (when you want it changed)

You can change the SANblade Manager application access password for any host connected to your system for which you have administrator or root privileges.

***NOTE:*** The default SANblade Manager application access password is *config*. Change this password after installation to ensure that security is not compromised.

Perform the following steps to set the application access password for a host:

1. In the SANblade Manager main window HBA tree, select the host for which you want to set the application access password.
2. Click the **Security** tab. The **Security** tabbed page displays (see figure 6-5). The host name displays at the top of the tabbed page.

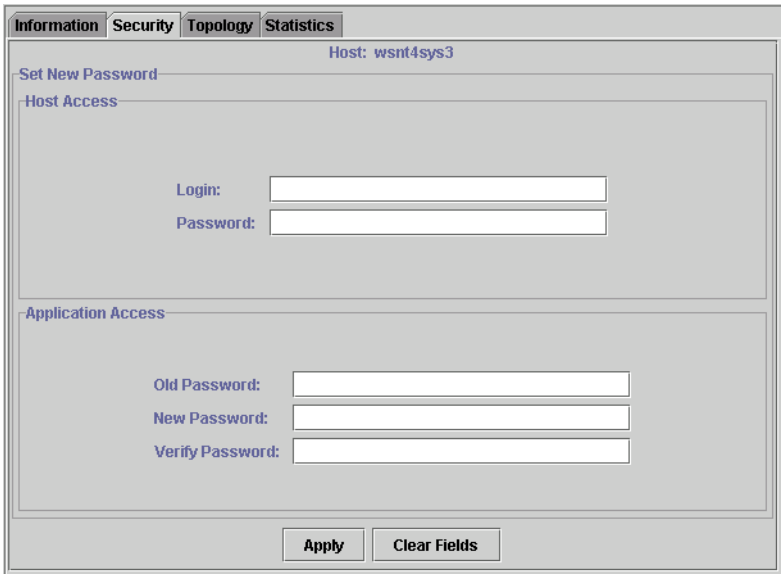



***Figure 6-5. Security Tabbed Page***

3. In the Host Access section, do the following to verify that you have administrator or root privileges for the selected host. These are the system login and password you use to access the machine.
   a. In the **Login** box, type the login name that has administrator or root privileges on the host you selected.
   b. In the **Password** box, type the login password for the login name.
4. In the Application Access section, do the following to modify the SANblade Manager application access password:
   a. In the **Old Password** box, type the current password.
   b. In the **New Password** box, type the new password.
   c. In the **Verify Password** box, type the new password again to confirm the new password.

5. Do one of the following:
   - Click **Apply** to update the application access password.
   - Click **Clear Fields** to clear the typed entries in the **Security** tabbed page text boxes.

## *6.6* Setting the Warning Display Option

You can configure the SANblade Manager GUI to display warning dialog boxes when certain conditions occur. Perform the following steps to set the warning display option:

1. On the SANblade Manager main window **View** menu, select **Options**. The **Options** dialog box displays (see figure 6-6).

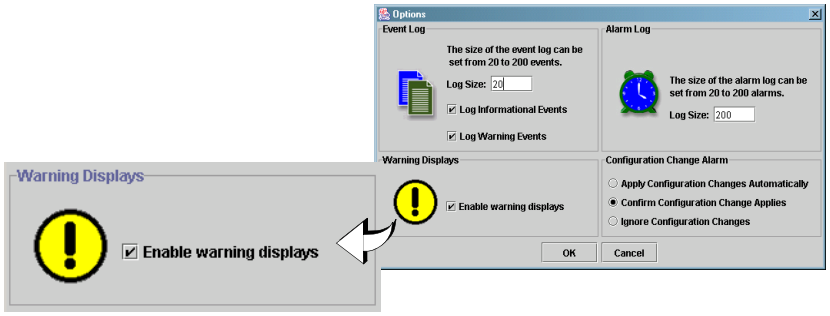



***Figure 6-6. Options Dialog Box—Warning Displays Section***

2. In the Warning Displays section, do one of the following:
   - Select the **Enable Warning Displays** check box if you want the warning dialog boxes to display.
   - Clear the **Enable Warning Displays** check box if you do not want the warning dialog boxes to display. This is the default.

3. Click **OK** to return to the **SANblade Manager** main window.

## *6.7* Setting the Configuration Change Alarm Option

SANblade Manager tries to keep the devices and the LUNs that the adapter displays current. When cables are pulled, devices hot plugged into the SAN, or devices are removed, SANblade Manager generates a configuration alarm in the Alarm Log.

Perform the following steps to set how the SANblade Manager GUI handles configuration changes:

1. On the SANblade Manager main window **View** menu, select **Options**. The **Options** dialog box displays (see figure 6-7).

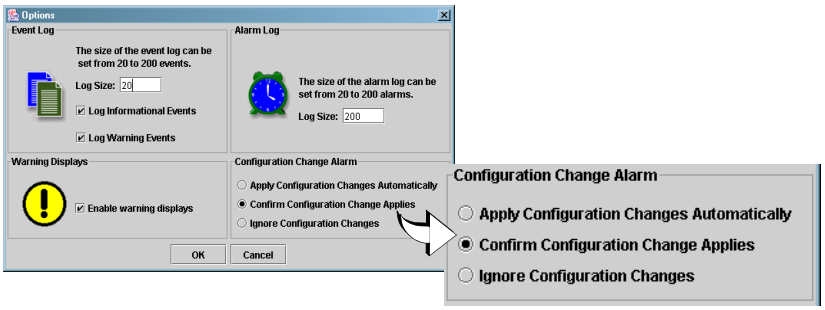



***Figure 6-7. Options Dialog Box—Configuration Change Alarm Section***

2. In the **Configuration Change Alarm** section, do one of the following:
   - Select **Apply Configuration Changes Automatically** to have the SANblade Manager GUI automatically update to the new configuration.

     If another host has made configuration changes that need to be updated in this configuration, the configuration change—reloading message displays. Click **OK**.
   - Select **Confirm Configuration Change Applies** if you want to decide whether to update to the new configuration.

     If a configuration change occurs, the configuration change—refresh confirmation message displays. Do one of the following:
     - Click **Yes** to refresh the configuration.
     - Click **No** to not update to the new configuration. The old configuration continues to display. To update to the current configuration, manually connect and disconnect the host (see section 7).
   - Select **Ignore Configuration Changes** if you want to ignore the configuration change alarm. The old configuration continues to display. To update to the current configuration, manually connect and disconnect the host (see section 7).

3. Click **OK** to return to the **SANblade Manager** main window.

*6.8*
# Specifying the Polling Interval

The polling interval is set on a host basis. The polling interval is the length of time between polls to a connected host to retrieve information. The SANblade Manager main window HBA tree refreshes automatically based on this rate.

***NOTE:*** If you want to update the HBA tree immediately, click the **Refresh** button on the toolbar.

Perform the following steps to set a host's polling interval:

1. In the SANblade Manager main window HBA tree, select the host (or adapter, device, or LUN connected to the host) for which you want to set the host's polling interval.
2. Do one of the following:
   - From the **Host** menu, select **Polling**.
   - Right-click the selected host (or adapter, device, or LUN connected to the host) in the HBA tree. From the pop-up menu, select **Polling**.
3. The **Polling Setting** dialog box displays (see figure 6-8). The name of the host displays in the title bar.

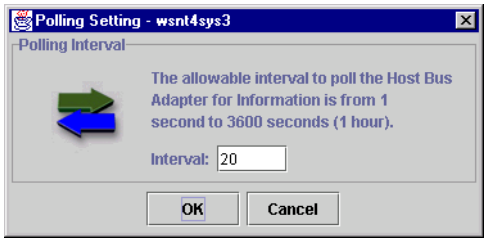



***Figure 6-8. Polling Setting Dialog Box***

4. In the **Interval** box, type the polling interval. The range is 1 second to 3600 seconds (1 hour). The default is 30 seconds.

   ***NOTE:*** The faster the polling rate, the more quickly the SANblade Manager GUI receives indications from the connected host. However, faster polling rates consume more of your system's CPU and network resources and slow the system.

5. Click **OK** to set the interval. Click **Cancel** to not change the interval setting.

*6.9*
# Setting the Event Log Options

Perform the following steps to set the number of events the Event Log can list and the logging of informational and warning events:

***NOTE:*** See section 8.1 for information about viewing the Event Log.

1. On the SANblade Manager main window **View** menu, select **Options**. The **Options** dialog box displays (see figure 6-9).

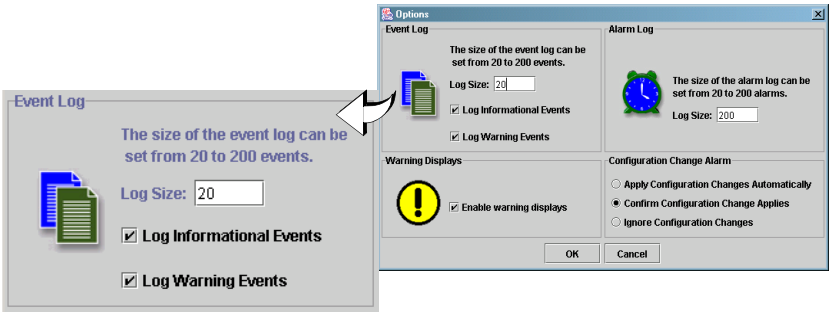



***Figure 6-9. Options Dialog Box—Event Log Section***

2. In the Event Log section **Log Size** box, type the number of events the **Event Log** can list. The range is 20 to 200 events. The default is 20 events.
3. If you want to enable logging of informational events, select the Event Log section **Log Informational Events** check box.
4. If you want to enable logging of warning events, select the Event Log section **Log Warning Events** check box.
5. Click **OK** to return to the **SANblade Manager** main window.

## 6.10 Setting the Alarm Log Option

Perform the following steps to set the number of alarms the Alarm Log can list:

***NOTE:*** See section 8.2 for information about viewing the Alarm Log.

1. On the SANblade Manager main window **View** menu, select **Options**. The **Options** dialog box displays (see figure 6-10).

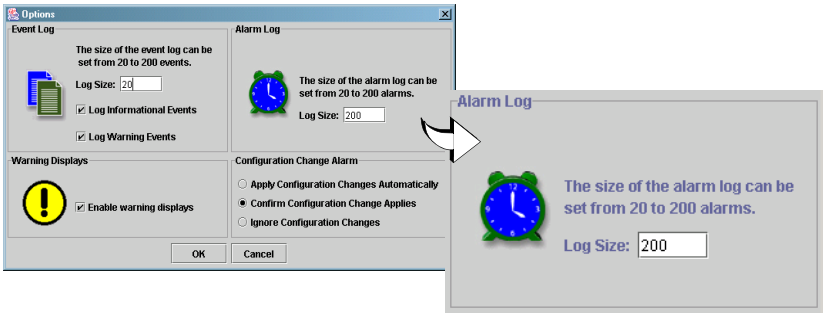



***Figure 6-10. Options Dialog Box—Alarm Log Section***

2. In the Alarm Log section **Log Size** box, type the number of alarms the **Alarm Log** can list. The range is 20 to 200 alarms. The default is 200 alarms.
3. Click **OK** to return to the SANblade Manager main window.

## 6.11 Setting the Configuration Policies

You can set the policies for sharing devices and LUNs among hosts. A device or LUN is shared when more than one host that displays in the HBA tree has access to the device or LUN. Only hosts that display in the HBA tree are checked for shared access to a device or LUN.

***NOTE:***

- If you set a policy in which the sharing of devices or LUNs among hosts is not permitted and SANblade Manager detects sharing, the Shared Device Found dialog box displays (see figure 6-11).


***Figure 6-11. Shared Device Found Dialog Box***

From this dialog box, you can click **More** to view the shared components, as in figure 6-12. Highlight the shared device or LUN on the left, the shared hosts display on the right. Click **OK** to return to the message.

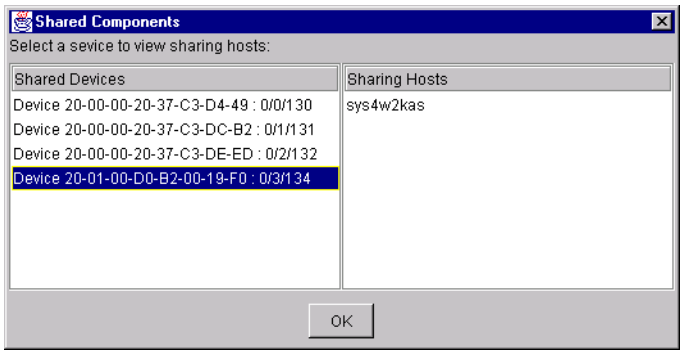



***Figure 6-12. Shared Components Window***

- When SANblade Manager updates the configuration to reflect configuration changes made by another host, the configuration change—reloading message displays. Click **OK**.

Perform the following steps to set the configuration policies:

1. On the SANblade Manager main window **View** menu, select **Policies**. The **Policy Settings** dialog box displays (see figure 6-13).

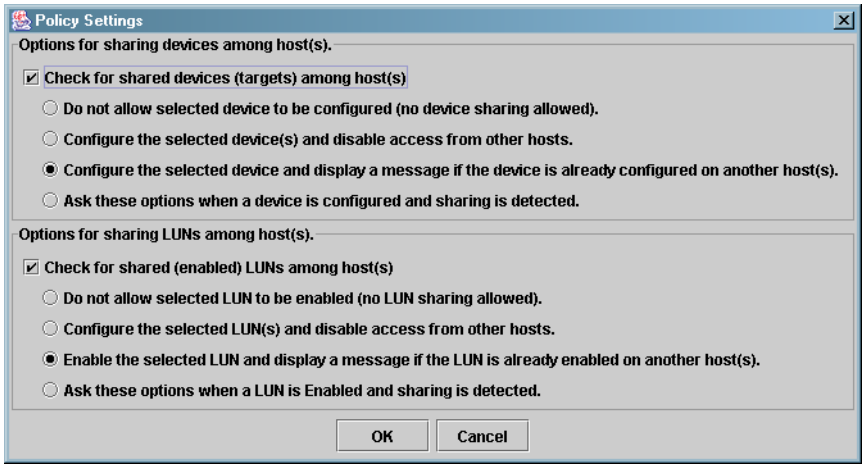



***Figure 6-13. Policy Settings Dialog Box***

2. Device sharing checking occurs each time a configuration change is made to a device. Do one of the following to select the options for sharing devices among hosts:
   - Clear the **Check for shared devices (targets) among host(s)** check box to disable device sharing checking.
   - Select the **Check for shared devices (targets) among host(s)** check box to enable device sharing checking, then select one of the following policies:
     - **Do not allow selected device to be configured (no device sharing allowed).**

       If you select this policy and this type of sharing is detected, a warning displays. Do one of the following:
       - Click **OK** for your system to unconfigure or not configure the device.
       - Click **More** to view which devices are being shared with what hosts that are conflicting with this policy.
     - **Configure the selected device(s) and disable access from other hosts.**

       If you select this policy and this type of sharing is detected, a warning displays. Do one of the following:
       - Click **OK** to disable access to these devices from other hosts that display in the HBA tree.
       - Click **Cancel** to disable this policy for this instance.
       - Click **More** to view which devices are being shared with what hosts that are conflicting with this policy.
     - **Configure the selected device and display a message if the device is already configured on another host(s).**

       If you select this policy and this type of sharing is detected, a warning displays. Do one of the following:
       - Click **OK** to disable access to these devices from other hosts.
       - Click **Cancel** to disable this policy for this instance.
       - Click **More** to view which devices are being shared with what hosts that are conflicting with this policy.

- **Ask these options when a device is configured and sharing is detected.**

  If you select this policy and sharing is detected, the **Shared Device Found** dialog box displays. Do the following:

  a. Select one of the following:

     - **Do not configure device.**
     - **Configure and disable access from other hosts.**
     - **Proceed with device configuration.**

  b. Click **OK** to accept your selection. Click **Cancel** to not configure the device.

3. LUN sharing checking occurs each time a configuration change is made to a LUN. Do one of the following to select the options for sharing LUNs among hosts:

   - Clear the **Check for shared (enabled) LUNs among host(s)** check box to disable LUN sharing checking.
   - Select the **Check for shared (enabled) LUNs among host(s)** check box to enable device sharing checking, then select one of the following policies:
     - **Do not allow selected LUN to be enabled (no LUN sharing allowed).**

       If you select this policy and this type of sharing is detected, a warning displays. Do one of the following:

       - Click **OK** for your system to unconfigure or not configure the LUN.
       - Click **More** to view which LUNs are being shared with what hosts that are conflicting with this policy.

     - **Configure the selected LUN(s) and disable access from other hosts.**

       If you select this policy and this type of sharing is detected, a warning displays. Do one of the following:

       - Click **OK** to disable access to these LUNs from other hosts that display in the HBA tree.
       - Click **Cancel** to disable this policy for this instance.
       - Click **More** to view which LUNs are being shared with what hosts that are conflicting with this policy.

- **Enable the selected LUN and display a message if the LUN is already enabled on another host(s).**

  If you select this policy and this type of sharing is detected, a warning displays. Do one of the following:

  - Click **OK** to disable access to these LUNs from other hosts.
  - Click **Cancel** to disable this policy for this instance.
  - Click **More** to view which LUNs are being shared with what hosts that are conflicting with this policy.

- **Ask these options when a LUN is enabled and sharing is detected.**

  If you select this policy and sharing is detected, the **Shared LUN Found** dialog box displays. Do the following:

  a. Select one of the following:

     - **Do not configure LUN.**
     - **Configure and disable access from other hosts.**
     - **Proceed with LUN configuration.**

  b. Click **OK** to accept your selection. Click **Cancel** to not configure the LUN.

## *6.12* Updating the HBA Tree

The QLogic main window HBA tree refreshes automatically based on the polling interval (see section 6.8). If you want to refresh the HBA tree immediately (you changed the configuration, for example), click the **Refresh** button on the toolbar.

*Section 7*

# Setting Up Connections

You can connect to and configure local and remote systems.

This section discusses:

- Connecting to hosts (see section 7.1)
- Configuring Fibre Channel devices (see section 7.2)
- Configuring LUNs for a device (see section 7.3)
- Viewing adapter, device, and path information (see section 7.4)
- Viewing the current LUN path (see section 7.5)
- Viewing and setting a LUN path (see section 7.5)
- Bind target devices attached to the adapter (see section 7.6)
- Deleting persistent configuration data (see section 7.7)
- Replacing devices (see section 7.8)
- Viewing a saved host configuration from a file (see section 7.9)
- Printing a host configuration (see section 7.10)

## *7.1* Connecting to Hosts

The SANblade Manager GUI tries to ensure that a host is not loaded more than once into the HBA tree. If a host has multiple interfaces (for example, more than one NIC is installed), the SANblade Manager GUI will not load the host more than once in the HBA tree if the host IP address is registered with the DNS server or local host file.

***NOTE:*** To ensure that a host does not display more than once in the HBA tree, register each host's IP address with the DNS server or the local host file.

This section discusses:

- Connecting to hosts manually (see section 7.1.1)
- Connecting to hosts automatically (see section 7.1.2)
- Connecting to hosts using a host group file (see section 7.1.3)
- Connecting to specified hosts automatically when starting the SANblade Manager GUI from the command line (see section 7.1.4)
- Disconnecting from hosts (see section 7.1.5)

### *7.1.1*
## Manually Connecting to a Host

Perform the following steps to manually connect to a host:

1. Do one of the following:
   - ❑ Click the **Connect** button on the SANblade Manager main window toolbar.
   - ❑ On the SANblade Manager main window **Host** menu, click **Connect**.
   - ❑ Press INSERT.

   The **Connect to Host** dialog box displays (see figure 7-1).

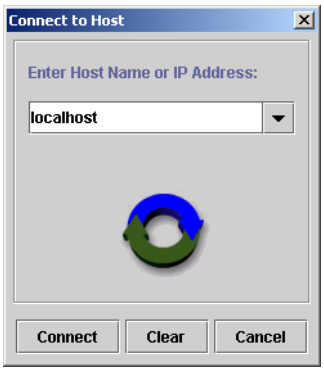



***Figure 7-1. Connect to Host Dialog Box***

2. In the **Enter Host Name or IP Address** box, do one of the following:
   - ❑ Select **localhost** to connect to the machine on which you are using the SANblade Manager GUI.
   - ❑ Type or select a remote machine. You can use the host name or the machine's IP address.

3. Do one of the following:
   - ❑ Click **Connect** to initiate the connection. If successful, the host and its adapters display in the HBA tree. If you entered a new remote host and the connection was successful, its name is also added to the **Enter Host Name or IP Address** box drop-down list.
   - ❑ Click **Cancel** to abort the connection process and return to the **SANblade Manager** main window.
   - ❑ Click **Clear** to delete all machines on the list except **localhost**. (The local machine cannot be deleted.)

### 7.1.2
## Auto Connecting to All Hosts

The auto-connect feature dynamically connects your machine to all the hosts in the network that meet the following conditions:

- The SANblade Manager agent on the host is running.
- The host is on the same class C IP address subnet as your machine.

The hosts display in the HBA tree and in the **Connect to Host** dialog box **Enter Host Name or IP Address** box drop-down list. If, for example, the SANblade Manager agent on the host stops running, the host no longer displays in the HBA tree.

***NOTE:*** You must manually connect to a host on a different subnet (see section 7.1.1).

Perform the following steps to auto connect to all hosts:

1. On the SANblade Manager main window **Host** menu, select the **Broadcast** check box.
2. On the **Host** menu, click **Set Interval**. The **Broadcast Interval** dialog box displays (see figure 7-2).


***Figure 7-2. Broadcast Interval Dialog Box***

3. In the **Broadcast Interval** box, enter the number of seconds between broadcasts. The range is 30 to 600 seconds, the default is 30 seconds. Click **OK** to make the change or **Cancel** to keep the current value.
4. On the **Host** menu, select the **Auto Connect** check box.

To disable auto connecting to all hosts, clear the **Auto Connect** check box.

### 7.1.3
## Connecting to Hosts Using a Host Group File

You can connect to a group of hosts using a host group file that you previously created. This section discusses:

- Creating a host group file (see section 7.1.3.1)
- Using a host group file to connect to hosts (see section 7.1.3.2)

### *7.1.3.1*
## Creating a Host Group File

Perform the following steps to save the group of hosts that display in the HBA tree to a host group file:

1. Do one of the following:
   - ❑ On the SANblade Manager main window **Host** menu, click **Save Group**.
   - ❑ Right-click the HBA tree. From the pop-up menu, click **Save Group**.
2. The **Save** dialog box displays. Save the host group file (.hst) in an appropriate directory. Click **Save**.

***NOTE:*** You can also create or edit a host group file (.hst) using an editor. The format of the file is one host name per line, for example:

adsw2ksys2
nt4ssys1
nw51sys7

Do one of the following:

- ■ From a Windows 2000/Server 2003 system, open the **Notepad** window.
- ■ From a Red Hat/SuSE Linux or Solaris SPARC system, open a terminal and use the vi editor.

### *7.1.3.2*
## Using a Host Group File to Connect to Hosts

Perform the following steps to connect to a group of hosts using a previously created host group file:

1. Do one of the following:
   - ❑ On the SANblade Manager main window **Host** menu, click **Open Group**.
   - ❑ Right-click the HBA tree. From the pop-up menu, click **Open Group**.
2. The **Open** dialog box displays. Select the host group file (.hst) that contains the hosts to which you want to connect. Click **Open**.

   The hosts display in the SANblade Manager main window HBA tree.

### 7.1.4
## Connecting to Hosts Automatically when Starting the SANblade Manager GUI from the Command Line

***NOTE:*** For information about starting SANblade Manager without automatically connecting to hosts, see section 6.1.

You can connect to specified hosts automatically when starting the SANblade Manager GUI from the command line. You can connect to a single host or a group of hosts listed in a host group file.

***NOTE:*** For information about creating a host group file, see section 7.1.3.1.

This section discusses connecting from the following systems:

- Windows 2000/Server 2003 (see section 7.1.4.1)
- Red Hat/SuSE Linux or Solaris SPARC (see section 7.1.4.2)

### 7.1.4.1
## Connecting on Windows 2000/Server 2003

On a Windows 2000/Server 2003 system, perform the following steps to connect to one or more specified hosts automatically when starting the SANblade Manager GUI from the command line. When done, the SANblade Manager main window displays with the specified hosts.

1. From a Windows 2000/Server 2003 system, click the **Start** button, point to **Programs**, point to **Accessories**, and then click **Command Prompt**. The **Command Prompt** window displays.
2. Change to the directory where the SANsurfer application is installed.
3. Do one of the following:
   - Type the following and then press ENTER to connect to a single host. *hostname* is the host name or IP address:

     ```
     SANsurfer -h hostname
     ```

     For example:

     ```
     SANsurfer -h adsw2ksys2
     ```

   - Type the following and then press ENTER to connect to a group of hosts listed in a host group file (.hst). *path* is the path of the host group file.

     ```
     SANsurfer -g path
     ```

     For example:

     ```
     SANsurfer -g c:\Program Files\QLogic Corporation\
     SANsurfer\hostfiles\group1.hst
     ```

#### 7.1.4.2
## Connecting on Red Hat/SuSE Linux or Solaris SPARC

On a Red Hat/SuSE Linux or Solaris SPARC system, perform the following steps to connect to specified hosts automatically when starting the SANblade Manager GUI from the command line. When done, the SANblade Manager main window displays with the specified hosts.

1. Ensure that you are in a graphical user environment.
2. Open a command terminal.
3. Change to the directory where the SANsurfer application is installed.
4. Do one of the following:
   - Type the following and then press ENTER to connect to a single host at start up. *hostname* is the host name or IP address:

     `./SANsurfer -h` *hostname*

     For example:

     ```
     ./SANsurfer -h adsw2ksys2
     ```
   - Type the following and then press ENTER to connect to the hosts listed in a group file (.hst) at start up. *path* is the path of the group file.

     `./SANsurfer -g` *path*

     For example:

     ```
     ./SANsurfer -g /opt/QLogic Corporation/
     SANsurfer/hostfiles/group1.hst
     ```

#### 7.1.5
## Disconnecting from a Host

Perform the following steps to disconnect from a host:

1. In the SANblade Manager main window HBA tree, select the host (or adapter, device, or LUN connected to the host) that you want to disconnect.
2. Do one of the following:
   - On the **Host** menu, select **Disconnect**.
   - Right-click the host in the HBA tree. From the pop-up menu, select **Disconnect**.
   - Press DELETE.

When the host is disconnected, it no longer displays in the HBA tree. If you are using the auto-connect feature, the host does not auto connect. If you want to reconnect to a disconnected host, do so manually (see section 7.1.1).

## 7.2 Configuring Fibre Channel Devices

Perform the following steps to configure Fibre Channel devices:

1. Do one of the following from the SANblade Manager main window:
   - ❑ In the HBA tree, select the host (or adapter, device, or LUN connected to the host). Click the **Configure** button on the toolbar.
   - ❑ Right-click the host, adapter, device, or LUN in the HBA tree. From the pop-up menu, select **Configure**.

   If SANblade Manager detects an invalid configuration, the detected invalid device and LUN configuration message displays. Click **OK**; auto configure runs automatically.

   Invalid configurations include:

   - ❑ A device with contradictory visible paths. Only one path can be visible at a time.
   - ❑ A LUN with contradictory enabled paths. A configuration is valid when all paths are enabled or disabled.
   - ❑ There is more than one preferred path in the system. Only one path can be preferred at a time.
   - ❑ There are non-SPIFFI compliant devices that have been separated based on the device port name. (SPIFFI stands for specification for platform-independent failover and failback integration.)

   The **Fibre Channel Port Configuration** dialog box displays (see figure 7-3).

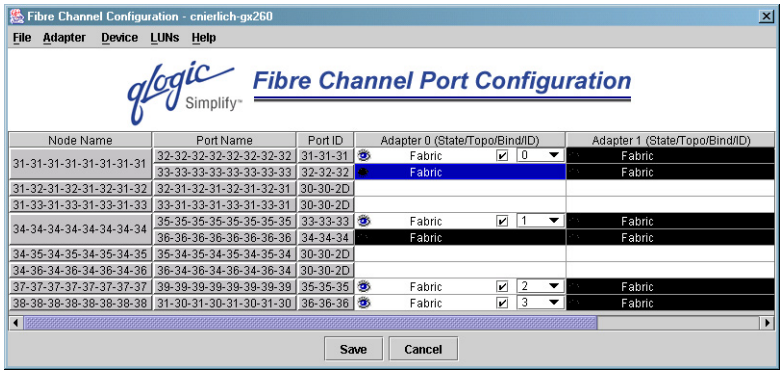



***Figure 7-3. Fibre Channel Port Configuration Dialog Box***

The host name displays in the title bar. The table is a two-dimensional view of the adapters and devices in the machine. The following information displays:

- **Node Name.** World wide device node name
- **Port Name.** World wide device port name
- **Adapter *n* (State/Topo/Bind/ID).** The adapter cell in the table represents a path from the adapter to the device. The **Bind** and **ID** options are not displayed on Novell NetWare systems.

  Adapter cell information consists of the following:

  - **State.** The state of the adapter, which can be Visible, Hidden, or Unconfigured.
  - **Topo.** Short for topology, which is either Fabric (the device is in the fabric) or Local (the device is on the local loop).
  - **Bind.** When this check box is selected, the path is configured and bound it to the target ID. When this check box is cleared, this path is unconfigured.
  - **ID.** This drop-down box shows the available target IDs for the target.

  In addition, the cell is color-coded as follows to represent path information:

  - **White with Open Eye icon.** Path visible to the operating system

  - **Black with no icon.** Path hidden from the operating system

  - **Gray with Stop icon.** Unconfigured device

  - **White with no icon.** No path

2. Select the following, as appropriate, from the **Fibre Channel Port Configuration** dialog box:

   - Configure device paths for this host (see section 7.2.1):
     - Auto configuring all device paths (see section 7.2.1.1)
     - Configuring individual device paths (see section 7.2.1.2)
     - Forcing separation of device ports (see section 7.2.1.3)

- Configure LUN path failover and LUN masking for this host (see section 7.2.2):
  - Enable or disable failover configuration (see section 7.2.2.1)
  - Load balancing all LUN paths (see section 7.2.2.2)
  - Enabling and disabling all LUNs (see section 7.2.2.3)
  - Configuring LUN path failover and LUN masking for a device (see section 7.3)
- Configure LUN masking for this host (see section 7.2.2):
  - Enabling and disabling all LUNs (see section 7.2.2)
  - Configuring LUN masking for a device (see section 7.3)
- Bind target devices attached to the adapter (see section 7.6)
- Delete persistent configuration data for an adapter or device (see section 7.7) (This option is not available on Solaris SPARC.)
- View information (see section 7.4):
  - Adapter information (see section 7.4.1)
  - Device information (see section 7.4.2)
- Get help. From the **Help** menu, click **Browse Contents**. The help text for the **Fibre Channel Port Configuration** dialog box displays.

3. The modified configuration set up by SANblade Manager can be either applied to the live system for dynamic updates or saved to the system's persistent configuration data. If the configuration is saved, the adapter's driver retrieves the data from the persistent configuration data at the next system bootup and configures the system accordingly.

   ***NOTE:*** Some older versions of the drivers do not support persistent configuration data and the application does not save persistent configuration entries for these drivers.

   Do one of the following:

   - Click **Save** to save the new configuration. The new configuration is saved to the persistent configuration data so that it will be used the next time the system is rebooted. The current boot configuration remains in memory and redisplays after the save operation completes.

The following messages can display:

- If the save was successful, the configuration saved—must reboot message displays. Click **OK**. Reboot the system that you configured to display the new configuration.
- If the save failed, the save configuration failed message displays. The failure is usually caused by communication problems between the GUI and agent. Click **OK**.

- Click **Cancel** to not save the configuration changes.

*7.2.1*
## Configuring Device Paths for this Host

You can configure device paths for a host as visible, hidden, or unconfigured. Use the following options as appropriate:

- Auto configuring all device paths (see section 7.2.1.1)
- Configuring individual device paths (see section 7.2.1.2)
- Forcing separation of device ports and combining separated device ports (see section 7.2.1.3)

***NOTE:*** There must be one visible path for the operating system to see a device.

*7.2.1.1*
## Auto Configuring Device Paths

The auto configure option configures all device paths for the selected host to their default values. The default path for each device is the first available path as visible, with the other paths hidden. This command also prompts for the auto configuring of the LUNs associated with these devices.

From the **Fibre Channel Configuration** dialog box **Device** menu, select **Auto Configure** to configure the device paths on this host to their default values**.**

Perform the following steps to configure the device paths, and optionally the LUN paths, on this host to their default values:

1. From the **Fibre Channel Configuration** dialog box **Device** menu, select **Auto Configure**.
2. The configure LUN paths to their default values message displays. Do one of the following:
   - Click **Yes** to change the current LUN configurations to their default values.
   - Click **No** to keep the current LUN configurations.

*7.2.1.2*

## Configuring Individual Device Paths

Perform the following steps to set device path visibility to the operating system:

***NOTE:*** There must be one visible path for the operating system to see the device.

1. From the **Fibre Channel Configuration** dialog box, right-click in the cell in the Adapter *n* column.
2. **From the pop-up menu,** select one of the available options:
   - ❑ Select **Set Visible** to set this path as visible by the operating system during the boot process.
   - ❑ Select **Set Unconfigured** to set this path as not visible by the operating system.
3. **From the pop-up menu,** select one of the available options:
   - ❑ Select **Set Visible** to set this path as visible by the operating system during the boot process.
   - ❑ Select **Set Hidden** to set this path as not visible by the operating system during the boot process but used in failover conditions.
   - ❑ Select **Set Unconfigured** to set this path as not visible by the operating system nor used in failover conditions.
4. If setting the path has caused the LUNs associated with this device to have an invalid configuration, the modify LUN configuration message displays. When the problem occurs, it usually results from changing a device to or from the unconfigured state. You need to modify the LUN configuration for this device before the configuration can be saved or applied. Click **OK**.

*7.2.1.3*

## Forcing Separation of Device Ports

Failover and currently active paths are usually configured based on a device basis (as represented by the device node name). This allows for adapter level and port failover. You can, however, separate a device into two devices on a port basis (by device port name), where each has a subset of paths. This allows only for adapter level failover.

This feature is available only on Windows 2000/Server 2003 when failover is enabled.

This section discusses:

- Forcing separate devices (see section 7.2.1.3.1)
- Combining separated devices (see section 7.2.1.3.2)

*7.2.1.3.1*
## Forcing Separate Devices

This feature is available only on Windows 2000/Server 2003 when failover is enabled.

Perform the following steps to separate a device with two ports into two distinct devices based on the port name:

1. From the **Fibre Channel Port Configuration** dialog box, click in the cell in the Device Node Name column. For example, in figure 7-4 you could click device node name 34-34-34-34-34-34-34-34.

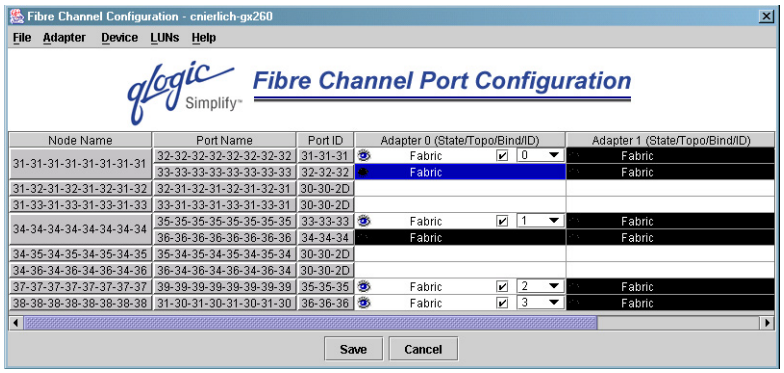



***Figure 7-4. Fibre Channel Port Configuration Dialog Box***

2. Do one of the following:
   - From the **Device** menu, select **Force Separate Devices**.
   - Right-click and select **Force Separate Devices**.

3. The confirm forced separation of device message displays. Do one of the following:
   - Click **No** to not separate the device.
   - Click **Yes** to force device separation. The new configuration displays, as in the example in figure 7-5; there are two listings for device node name 34-34-34-34-34-34-34-34.

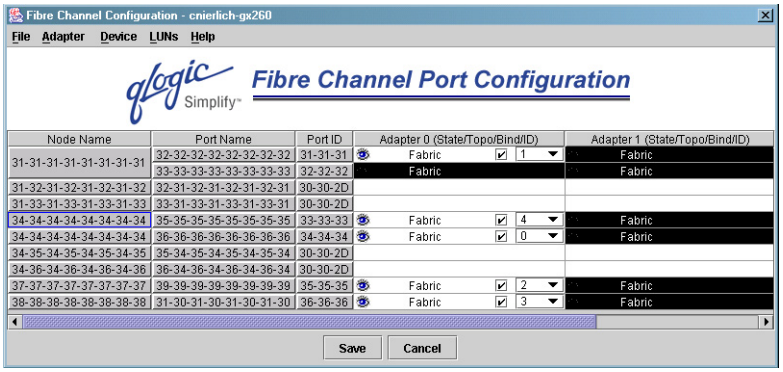



***Figure 7-5. Force Separated Device Configuration***

*7.2.1.3.2*
## Combining Separated Devices

This feature is available only on Windows 2000/Server 2003 when failover is enabled.

Perform the following steps to combine two devices with the same device node name that were separated based on their port name back into one device based on the device node name:

1. From the **Fibre Channel Port Configuration** dialog box, click in the cell in the Device Node Name column. For example, click device node name 34-34-34-34-34-34-34-34 in figure 7-5.
2. Do one of the following:
   - From the **Device** menu, select **Combine Separated Devices**.
   - Right-click and select **Combine Separated Devices**.

3. The confirm combining of separated devices message displays. Do one of the following:
   - ❑ Click **No** to not combine the separated device.
   - ❑ Click **Yes** to combine the separated device. The new configuration displays, as in figure 7-6 for device node name 34-34-34-34-34-34-34-34.

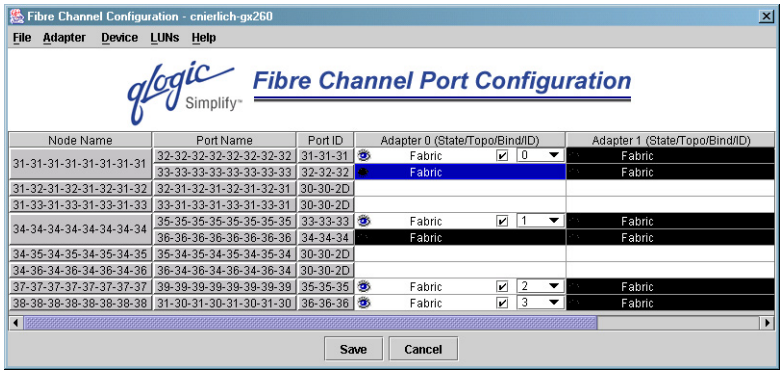



***Figure 7-6. Combine Separated Device Configuration***

### *7.2.2*
## Configuring LUN Path Failover and LUN Masking for this Host

You can configure the following:

- LUN path failover—set paths as preferred or alternate, and, optionally, current.
- LUN masking—set LUNs as masked or unmasked from the operating system. Enabling a LUN sets the LUN as unmasked; disabling a LUN sets the LUN as masked.

Use the following options as appropriate:

- Enable or disable failover configuration (see section 7.2.2.1)
- Static load balancing all LUN paths (see section 7.2.2.2)
- Enabling and disabling all LUNs (see section 7.2.2.3)
- Configuring LUN paths and LUN masking for a device (see section 7.3)

*7.2.2.1*
## Enable or Disable Failover Configuration

This feature is not available on Novell NetWare.

If you are using third-party software for failover, disable failover in SANblade Manager by performing the following steps:

1. From the **Fibre Channel Configuration** dialog box, click the **File** menu.
2. Clear the **Enable Failover Configuration** check box. All the target paths become visible, and all the LUN paths become preferred.

When failover is disabled, the following restrictions apply:

- In the **Fibre Channel Configuration** dialog box, you can set the path state to **Visible** or **Unconfigured** (the path state cannot be **Hidden**).
- In the **LUN Configuration** dialog box, the path state is limited to **Preferred** (the path state cannot be **Alternate**).

***NOTE:*** You can still use SANblade Manager for persistent binding and LUN masking.

*7.2.2.2*
## Load Balancing All LUN Paths on this Host

The static load balance option configures all LUN paths on this host as preferred or alternate using the resources most efficiently. The LUNs are staggered between the adapters to distribute the loads. You can configure all LUNs or only LUNs that are enabled.

Perform the following steps to configure all or enabled LUNs on this host:

1. From the **Fibre Channel Configuration** dialog box **LUNs** menu, select **Load Balance.**
2. Do one of the following:
   - Select **Enabled LUNs Only** to configure only enabled LUNs for load balancing across the paths within this device.

     If you selected this option for a device with no enabled LUNs, the no LUNs enabled message displays. Click **OK**.
   - Select **All LUNs** to configure all LUNs for load balancing across the paths within this device.

### *7.2.2.3*
## Enabling and Disabling All LUNs on this Host

You can configure LUN masking—setting LUNs masked or unmasked from the operating system. Enabling a LUN sets the LUN as unmasked; disabling a LUN sets the LUN as masked.

Perform the following steps to enable or disable all LUNs on this host:

1. From the **Fibre Channel Configuration** dialog box **LUNs** menu, select **Enable LUNs**.
2. Do one of the following:
   - Select **Enable All** to configure all LUNs as enabled.
   - Select **Disable All** to configure all LUNs as disabled.
   - Select **Inverse State** to enable currently disabled LUNs and disable currently enabled LUNs.

### *7.3*
## Configuring LUNs for a Device

Perform the following steps to configure individual LUNs for a selected device:

1. Do one of the following:
   - In the **Fibre Channel Configuration** dialog box, click in the cell in the Device Node Name or Device Port Name column. From the **Device** menu, select **Configure LUNs**.
   - In the **Fibre Channel Configuration** dialog box, right-click in the cell in the Device Node Name or Device Port Name column. From the pop-up menu, select **Configure LUNs**.
   - In the **Fibre Channel Configuration** dialog box, double-click in the cell in the Device Node Name or Device Port Name column. From the pop-up menu, select **Configure LUNs**.

The following messages can display:

- If SANblade Manager detects an invalid LUN configuration, the detected invalid LUN configuration message displays. Invalid LUN configurations include:
  - A LUN with contradictory enabled paths. All paths must be enabled or disabled.
  - Too many or too few preferred paths in the system. Only one path can be preferred at a time.

  Click **OK**; auto configure runs automatically.
- If SANblade Manager detects an invalid SAN fabric configuration, the detected invalid SAN fabric message displays. Change this configuration before continuing; it is beyond the scope of SANblade Manager to configure the SAN fabric. Click **OK** to continue.

The **LUN Configuration** dialog box displays for the device (see figure 7-7).

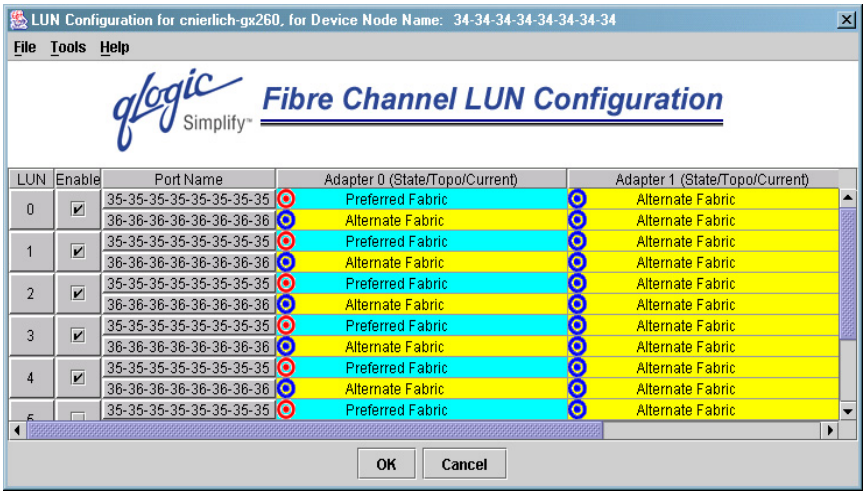



***Figure 7-7. LUN Configuration Dialog Box***

The title bar displays the host name and world wide device node name. The table displays the following information:

- **LUN.** LUN number
- **Enable.** Whether the LUN is enabled
- **Device Port Name.** World wide device port name
- **Adapter *n* (State/Topo/Current).** The adapter cell in the table represents a path from the adapter to the device.

Adapter cell information consists of the following:

- **State.** The state of the LUN, which can be Visible, Hidden, or Unconfigured.
- **Topo.** Short for topology, either Fabric (the device is in the fabric) or Local (the device is on the local loop).
- **Current.** The state of the path, which is either Current, Alternate, or Unconfigured.

The cell and bull's eye are color-coded to represent path information:

- **Blue cell.** Preferred path
  - **Green bull's-eye.** Current path

    
    
  - **Red bull's-eye.** Not the current path

    
    
- **Gray cell with Stop icon.** Unconfigured path

  
  
- **Yellow cell.** Alternate path
  - **Green bull's-eye.** Current path

    
    
  - **Blue bull's-eye.** Not the current path

    
    
- **White cell with no icon.** No path

2. Select the following, as appropriate, from the **LUN Configuration** dialog box:
   - Auto configure all LUN paths on this device (see section 7.3.1).
   - Configure LUN path failover for this device (see section 7.3.2):
     - Auto configuring all LUN paths on this device (see section 7.3.2.1)
     - Load balancing LUN paths on this device (see section 7.3.2.2)
     - Configuring LUN paths to the default values (see section 7.3.2.3)
     - Setting individual LUN paths (see section 7.3.2.4)
   - Configure LUN masking for this device (see section 7.3.3):
     - Enabling and disabling all LUNs (see section 7.3.3.1)
     - Enabling and disabling individual LUNs (see section 7.3.3.2)

- View information (see section 7.4):
  - Adapter information (see section 7.4.1)
  - Device information (see section 7.4.2)
  - Path information (see section 7.4.3)
- Get help. From the **Help** menu, click **Browse Contents**. The help text for the **LUN Configuration** dialog box displays.

3. Do one of the following:
   - Click **OK** to save the changes until you exit the **Fibre Channel Configuration** dialog box, where you determine what happens to all the configuration changes (see section 7.2, step 3).

     If SANblade Manager detects an invalid LUN configuration during an attempt to save the configuration, the invalid configuration—automatically configure invalid LUNs message displays. Do one of the following:
     - Click **Yes** if you want the software to auto configure the invalid LUNs with the default paths. The configured invalid LUNs with defaults confirmation message displays. Click **OK**.
     - Click **No** if you do not want to auto configure the invalid LUNs. The configuration changes you made are not saved. You can change the configuration manually and then save the changes.
   - Click **Cancel** to not apply the changes.

### *7.3.1* Auto Configuring All LUN Paths on this Device

The auto configure option configures all LUN paths for the selected device to their default values. The default path for each LUN is the first available path as preferred.

From the **LUN Configuration** dialog box **Tools** menu, select **Auto Configure** to configure the LUN paths on this device to their default values.

### *7.3.2* Configure LUN Path Failover for this Device

You can configure LUN path failover—set paths as preferred or alternate, and, optionally, current. Use the following options as appropriate:

- Auto configuring all LUN paths (see section 7.3.2.1)
- Load balancing LUN paths (see section 7.3.2.2)
- Configuring LUN paths to the default values (see section 7.3.2.3)
- Setting individual LUN paths (see section 7.3.2.4)

***NOTE:***

- You can set only the LUN path of an enabled LUN. A LUN path can be set as preferred or alternate if the device path is configured as hidden or visible, but not as unconfigured.
- You can use the **Current Path** option from the **Host** menu to view the failover settings for a selected host and set preferred or alternate LUN path as the currently active path (see section 7.5).

*7.3.2.1*
## Auto Configuring All LUN Paths on this Device

The auto configure option configures all LUN paths for the selected device to their default values. The default path for each LUN is the first available path as preferred, with the other paths as alternates for LUN failover.

From the **LUN Configuration** dialog box **Tools** menu, select **Auto Configure** to configure the LUN paths on this device to their default values.

*7.3.2.2*
## Load Balancing LUN Paths on this Device

The load balance option configures all LUN paths on this device as preferred or alternate using the all available paths evenly. The LUNs are staggered between the adapters to distribute the loads. You can configure all LUNs or only LUNs that are enabled.

Perform the following steps to configure all or enabled LUNs on this device:

1. From the **LUN Configuration** dialog box **Tools** menu, select **Load Balance**.
2. Do one of the following:
   - Select **Enabled LUNs Only** to configure only enabled LUNs for load balancing across the paths within this device.

     If you selected this option for a device with no enabled LUNs, the no LUNs enabled message displays. Click **OK**.
   - Select **All LUNs** to configure all LUNs for load balancing across the paths within this device.

*7.3.2.3*
## Configuring LUN Paths to the Default Values

You can configure LUN paths to their default values for LUN failover, with the first configured path as preferred and all other paths as alternate. You can configure the following:

- All LUNs for an adapter (see section 7.3.2.3.1)
- An individual LUN (see section 7.3.2.3.2)

***NOTE:*** This option is available only when the LUN is enabled and there are at least two available paths.

*7.3.2.3.1*
## Configure Adapter LUN Paths to the Default

Perform the following steps to configure all LUN paths for an adapter to the default values:

1. For the adapter for which you want to configure the LUNs, right-click in the Adapter *n* heading.
2. From the pop-up menu, select **Configure Adapter Using Default**.

*7.3.2.3.2*
## Configure an Individual LUN's Paths to the Default

Perform the following steps to configure an individual LUN's paths to the default values:

1. For the LUN that you want to configure, right-click in the cell in the LUN, Enable, or Device Port Name column.
2. From the pop-up menu, select **Configure Path Using Default**.

*7.3.2.4*
## Setting Individual LUN Paths

Perform the following steps to set a LUN path as the preferred or alternate path in a failover condition. You can also select the preferred or alternate path as the currently active path.

1. From the **LUN Configuration** dialog box, right-click in the cell in the Adapter *n* column.
2. From the pop-up menu, select one of the available options.
   - Select **Set LUN to Preferred** to set the alternate path as the preferred path in a failover condition.
   - Select **Set LUN to Alternate** to set the preferred path as the alternate path in a failover condition.
   - Select **Set Path to Current** to set this preferred or alternate path as the currently active path.

### *7.3.3*
## Configure LUN Masking for this Device or Tape

You can configure LUN masking—set LUNs as masked or unmasked from the operating system. Enabling a LUN sets the LUN as unmasked; disabling a LUN sets the LUN as masked. Use the following options as appropriate:

- Enabling and disabling all LUNs (see section 7.3.3.1)
- Enabling and disabling individual LUNs (see section 7.3.3.2)

### *7.3.3.1*
## Enabling and Disabling All LUNs

Perform the following steps to configure all LUNs attached to this device or tape as enabled or disabled:

1. From the **LUN Configuration** dialog box, right-click in the Enable heading.
2. From the pop-up menu, select one of the following:
   - **Enable All LUNs** to configure all LUNs as enabled
   - **Disable All LUNs** to configure all LUNs as disabled
   - **Inverse State** to enable currently disabled LUNs and disable currently enabled LUNs

### *7.3.3.2*
## Enabling and Disabling Individual LUNs

You can configure a specific LUN as enabled or disabled. In the **LUN Configuration** dialog box Enable column, do one of the following:

- Select the **Enable** check box to configure the LUN as enabled.
- Clear the **Enable** check box to configure the LUN as disabled.

### *7.4*
## Viewing Adapter, Device, and Path Information

You can view adapter, device, and tape information from the **Fibre Channel Configuration** and **LUN Configuration** dialog boxes. From the **LUN Configuration** dialog box, you can also view LUN information.

***NOTE:*** See section 9 for information about viewing host, adapter, device, tape, and LUN information from the tabbed pages.

### *7.4.1*
## Viewing Adapter Information

Perform the following steps to view adapter information from the **Fibre Channel Configuration** dialog box and **LUN Configuration** dialog box:

1. Right-click in the Adapter *n* column heading. From the pop-up menu, select **Adapter Information**. The **Adapter Information** dialog box displays (see figure 7-8).

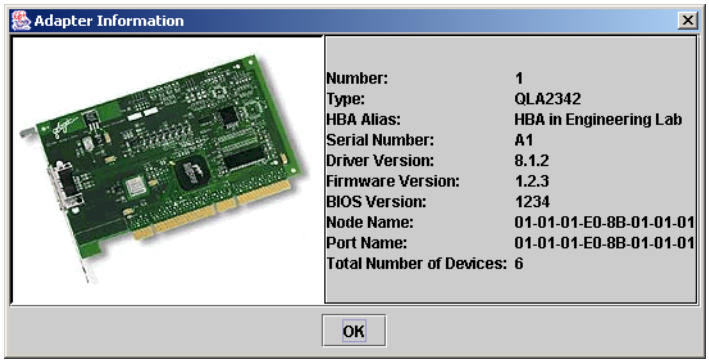



***Figure 7-8. Adapter Information Dialog Box***

**The following information displays:**

- **Number.** Adapter number
- **OS Instance.** The operating system number from which the adapter can be accessed (Solaris SPARC).
- **Type.** Type of adapter. 2200 indicates a QLA22*xx* adapter; 2300 indicates a QLA23*xx* adapter
- **HBA Alias.** Symbolic name given to the adapter on the adapter **Information** tabbed page.
- **Serial Number.** Serial number of the adapter
- **Driver Version.** Version of the adapter driver on the host that controls the adapter
- **Firmware Version.** Version of the adapter firmware on the host that controls the adapter
- **BIOS Version.** BIOS version on the adapter
- **Node Name.** World wide adapter node name
- **Port Name.** World wide adapter port name
- **Total Number of Devices.** Number of devices attached to the adapter

2. Click **OK** to close the **Adapter Information** dialog box.

### *7.4.2*
## Viewing Device and Tape Information

Perform the following steps to view device and tape information from the **Fibre Channel Configuration** dialog box and **LUN Configuration** dialog box:

1. To display information about a device or tape, do one of the following:

   - From the **Fibre Channel Configuration** dialog box, right-click a cell in the Device Node Name or Device Port Name column. From the pop-up menu, select **Device Information**.
   - From the **LUN Configuration dialog** box, right-click a cell in the LUN, Enable, or Device Port Name column. From the pop-up menu, select **Device Information**.

   The **Device Information** dialog box displays (see figure 7-9).


***Figure 7-9. Device Information Dialog Box***

   The following information displays:

   - **Product Identification.** Product ID of the device or tape
   - **Product Vendor.** Device or tape manufacturer
   - **Product Revision.** Device or tape revision level
   - **Path.** Path number
   - **Target.** Device or tape number
   - **LUN.** LUN of the first LUN attached to the device or tape
   - **Loop ID.** Complement of the AL_PA
   - **Port ID.** Port ID of the selected device or tape's port
   - **Node Name.** World wide node name of the device or tape
   - **Port Name.** World wide port name of the selected device or tape's port

     ***NOTE:*** If the device node name was selected in step 1, all the device or tape's port names display.

   - **Number of LUNs.** Number of LUNs attached to the device or tape

2. Click **OK** to close the **Device Information** dialog box.

### *7.4.3*
## Viewing Path Information

Perform the following steps to view path information from the **LUN Configuration** dialog box:

1. Right-click in the cell in the Adapter *n* column. From the pop-up menu, select **Path Information**. The **Path Information** dialog box displays for the path (see figure 7-10).

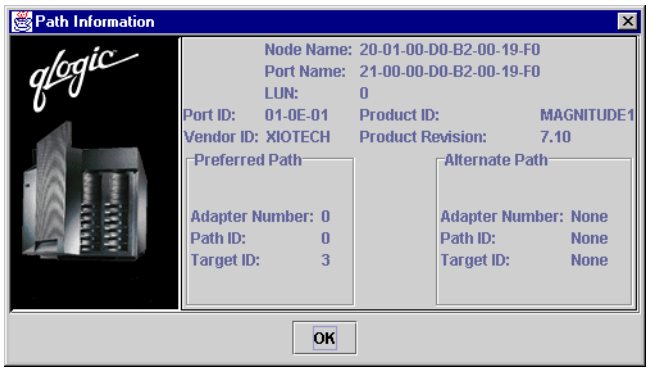



***Figure 7-10. Path Information Dialog Box***

The following information displays:

- **Device Node Name.** World wide node name of the device
- **Device Port Name.** World wide port name of the selected device's port
- **LUN.** LUN number
- **Device Port ID.** Port ID of the selected device's port
- **Vendor ID.** Device manufacturer
- **Product ID.** Product ID of the device
- **Product Revision.** Device revision level

- For the Preferred Path and Alternate Path sections:
  - **Adapter Number**
  - **Path ID.** Path number
  - **Target ID.** Device ID

2. Click **OK** to close the **Path Information** dialog box.

### *7.5*
## Viewing and Setting a LUN Path

The **Current Path** option from the **Host** menu enables you to do the following:

- View the failover settings for a selected host
- Set a preferred or alternate LUN path as the currently active path

***NOTE:*** See sections 7.2.2 and 7.3.2 for information about setting LUN paths as the preferred or alternate path in a failover condition, and selecting the preferred or alternate path as the currently active path.

Perform the following steps to view the failover information or set a LUN path as current:

1. From the SANblade Manager main window HBA tree, select the host for which you want to view failover current path information.
2. Do one of the following:
   - From the **Host** menu, select **Current Path**.
   - Right-click the host (or adapter, device, or LUN connected to the host) in the HBA tree. From the pop-up menu, select **Current Path**. The **Current Path** dialog box displays (see figure 7-11).

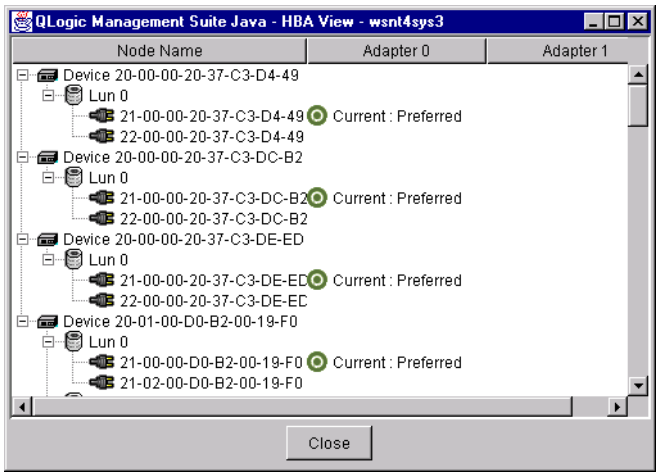



***Figure 7-11. Current Path Dialog Box***

The identifying information displays:

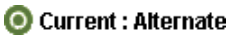
- **Host.** The title bar displays the host name.

The current path failover information displays:

- **Node Name.** Listing of the devices and LUNs.
  - **Devices.** World wide device node name
  - **LUNs.** LUNs are listed under the devices to which they are connected. The LUN number and world wide device port name are included.
- **Adapter *n*.** The adapter cell in the table represents a path from the adapter to the LUN.

The cell's text and bull's-eye color represent the path type (preferred or alternate, and current):

- **Green bull's eye.** Current path. Can be the preferred or alternate path


- **Red bull's eye.** Preferred path that is not the current path


- **Blue bull's eye.** Alternate path that is not the current path


- **Blank.** Not a path

3. If you want to set the path of a device as currently active, do the following:
   a. Right-click the path status in the adapter column.
   b. From the pop-up menu, select **Set Current**. The bull's-eye changes to green and the word *Current* displays.

## *7.6* Bind Target Devices Attached to the Adapter

This feature is not supported in Novell NetWare.

Target persistent binding is done by associating a target ID with the world wide node name and world wide port name of the target (targets can also be bound by port ID; contact QLogic Technical Support for more information). Persistent binding information for targets is saved to persistent storage:

- /kernel/drv/qla2x00.conf (Solaris SPARC)
- Registry (Windows 2000/Server 2003)
- /etc/modules.conf and /etc/qla2*x*00.conf files (Red Hat/SuSE Linux)

Bind target devices to the attached HBAs using the **Fibre Channel Port Configuration** dialog box, as described in the following steps:

1. To access the **Fibre Channel Port Configuration** dialog box, perform the following steps:
   - In the HBA tree, select the host (or adapter, device, or LUN connected to the host). Click the **Configure** button on the toolbar.
   - Right-click the host, adapter, device, or LUN in the HBA tree. From the pop-up menu, select **Configure**.

The **Fibre Channel Port Configuration** dialog box is shown in figure 7-12.

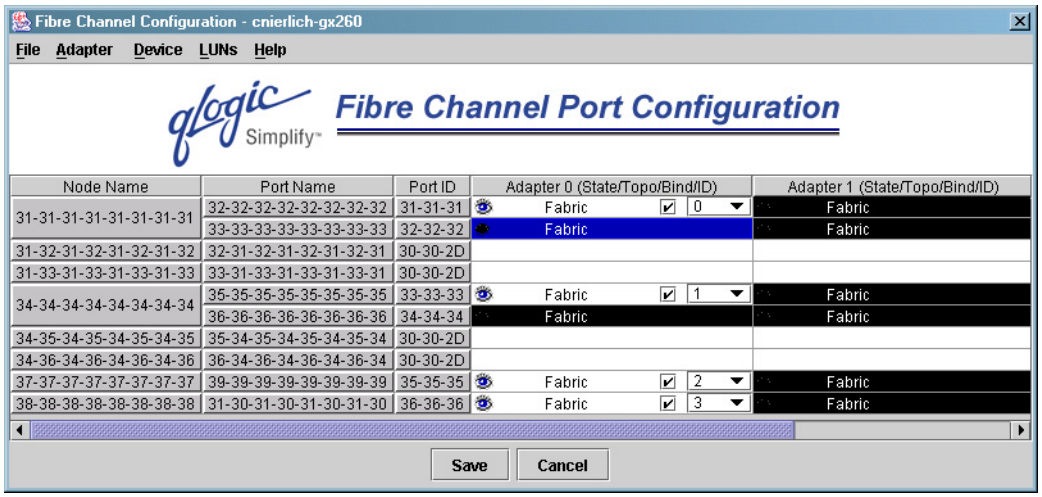



***Figure 7-12. Fibre Channel Configuration Dialog Box***

2. Select the **Bind** check box if you want to configure the port and bind it to the target ID that you have selected in the **ID** drop-down box. If you do not want to configure the port, clear the check box. If you clear the check box, the corresponding port will be unconfigured. (In Solaris SPARC, unconfigured entries are saved in persistent storage. In Windows 2000/Server 2003, unconfigured entries are not saved in persistent storage).

   If target persistent binding information was saved in persistent storage and the machine is restarted, the driver reads the information saved in persistent storage during start up. SANblade Manager then reads this information from the driver and sets the target IDs accordingly.

   If no persistent binding information was saved in persistent storage, the driver assigns target IDs at start up; then SANblade Manager reports the target IDs assigned by the driver.

3. Select an ID from the **ID** drop-down box.

   In Solaris SPARC and Red Hat/SuSE Linux, target IDs can be assigned to configured ports. Valid target ID values are in the range 0–254 (Red Hat/SuSE Linux) or 0–255 (Solaris SPARC). The IDs are validated before they are saved. Duplicate target IDs are not allowed.

   When you set a target ID for a visible path in Red Hat/SuSE Linux, the same target ID is set for both hidden and configured paths. When you set a target ID for a visible path in Solaris SPARC, the same target ID is *not* set for both hidden and configured paths.

In Windows 2000/Server 2003, target IDs can be assigned only to ports that will be configured. Valid targets ID values are in the range 0–(*n*–1), where *n* is the number of targets attached to the HBA.

Once persistent binding information for the targets is saved, the ports retain the assigned target IDs across reboots.

4. Complete binding the target IDs by clicking one of the buttons at the bottom of the **Fibre Channel Configuration** dialog box:
   - **Save.** The current configuration is saved. Any previously saved configuration for the current HBA is overwritten.
   - **Cancel.** The current configuration is not saved.

## *7.7* Deleting Persistent Configuration Data

When you select persistent configuration data, the current configuration data displays if one exists. You can do the following:

- Delete the persistent configuration data for an adapter and its devices and LUNs (see section 7.7.1).
- Delete the persistent configuration data for a device and its LUNs (see section 7.7.2).

### *7.7.1* Deleting Adapter Persistent Configuration Data

Perform the following steps to delete the persistent configuration data for an adapter and its devices and LUNs:

1. Do one of the following:
   - From the **SANblade Manager** main window HBA tree, right-click the adapter (or its host). From the pop-up menu, select **Adapter Persistent Configuration Data**.
   - From the **Fibre Channel Configuration** dialog box **Adapter** menu, select **Persistent Configuration Data**.

   The **Fibre Persistent Configuration Editor** displays the adapters (see figure 7-13).

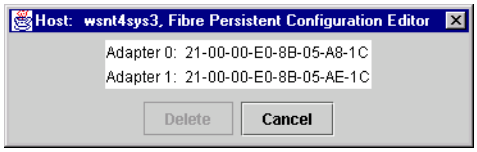



***Figure 7-13. Fibre Persistent Configuration Editor for Adapters***

For each adapter connected to the host, the **Fibre Persistent Configuration Editor** lists the adapter number and the adapter world wide port name.

2. Do one of the following:
   - Delete one or more entries as follows:
     a. Select the adapter entries that you want to delete.
     b. Click **Delete** to remove the entries.
     c. The **Security Check** dialog box displays. In the **Enter Password** box, type the password. Click **OK**.

     ***NOTE:*** Changes made to the persistent configuration are final. If you do not want the changes, reconfigure the host (see section 7.2).
   - Click **Cancel** to not delete an entry.

### *7.7.2* Deleting Device Persistent Configuration Data

Perform the following steps to delete the persistent configuration data for a device and its LUNs:

1. Do one of the following:
   - From the **SANblade Manager** main window HBA tree, right-click the device (or LUN connected to the device). From the pop-up menu, select **Device Persistent Configuration Data**.
   - From the **Fibre Channel Configuration** dialog box **Device** menu, select **Persistent Configuration Data**.

   The **Fibre Persistent Configuration Editor** displays the devices (see figure 7-14).

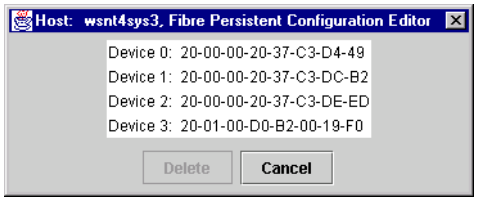



***Figure 7-14. Fibre Persistent Configuration Editor for Devices***

For each device connected to the adapter, the **Fibre Persistent Configuration Editor** displays the device number and device world wide node name.

2. Do one of the following:
   - Delete one or more entries as follows:
     a. Select the device entries that you want to delete.
     b. Click **Delete** to remove the entries.
     c. The **Security Check** dialog box displays. In the **Enter Password** box, type the password. Click **OK**.

     ***NOTE:*** Changes made to the persistent configuration are final. If you do not want the changes, reconfigure the host (see section 7.2).

   - Click **Cancel** to not delete an entry.

## *7.8* Replacing Devices

The QLA2*xxx* adapter's driver does not automatically purge a device that has been physically removed nor delete a device that is no longer accessible because of errors or failure. The driver keeps the device in its database and marks it as invisible. The driver adds a new device to the database, even if the device is inserted in the same slot as a removed device.

With the SANblade Manager GUI, you can delete a removed device's data from the driver's database and assign an inserted device the same slot as the one that it replaces.

***NOTE:*** The SANblade Manager replacing devices feature is available only on Windows 2000/Server 2003 and Novell NetWare systems. It is not available on Red Hat/SuSE Linux and Solaris SPARC systems (the **Device Replacement** button appears dimmed on the **Utilities** tabbed page).

Perform the following steps to replace an inactive device with an active device and save the information to the driver database:

1. From the **SANblade Manager** main window HBA tree, select the adapter.
2. Click the **Utilities** tab. The **Utilities** tabbed page displays (see figure 7-15).

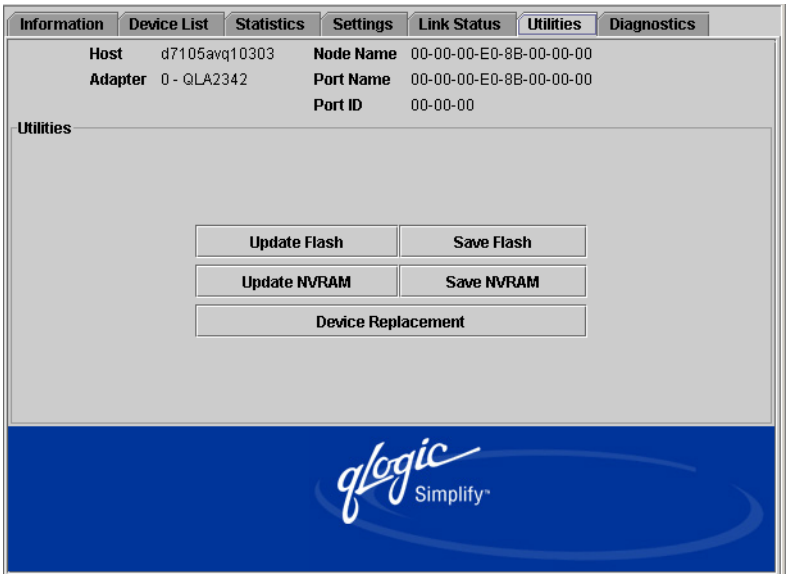



***Figure 7-15. Utilities Tabbed Page***

Click the **Device Replacement** button.

3. The **Warning on Device Replacement** dialog box displays (see figure 7-16).


***Figure 7-16. Warning on Device Replacement Dialog Box***

The dialog box provides:

- Information about the device replacement process
- The number, type, and world wide adapter node name of the adapter you selected in step 1

Do the following:

a. Read the information.

b. Do one of the following:

   - Click **Next** to proceed.
   - Click **Cancel** to exit the **Device Replacement Wizard** without replacing a device.
   - Click **Help** to display context-sensitive help.

4. If you clicked **Next**, the **Select Inactive Device** dialog box displays (see figure 7-17).

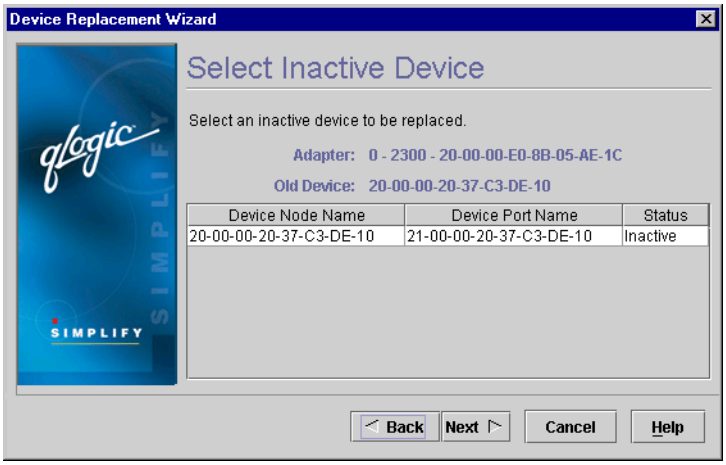



***Figure 7-17. Select Inactive Device Dialog Box***

The **Select Inactive Device** dialog box displays the following information:

- **Adapter.** Adapter number, type, and world wide adapter node name.
- **Old Device.** World wide device node name of the device that you want to replace.
- Table listing the inactive devices attached to the adapter. The device node name is the world wide device node name.

Do the following:

a. From the table, select the inactive device to be replaced. The device node name displays in the **Old Device** field.

b. Do one of the following:

- Click **Back** to return to the previous dialog box.
- Click **Next** to proceed.
- Click **Cancel** to exit the **Device Replacement Wizard** without replacing a device.
- Click **Help** to display context-sensitive help.

5. If you clicked **Next**, the **Select Active Device** dialog box displays (see figure 7-18).

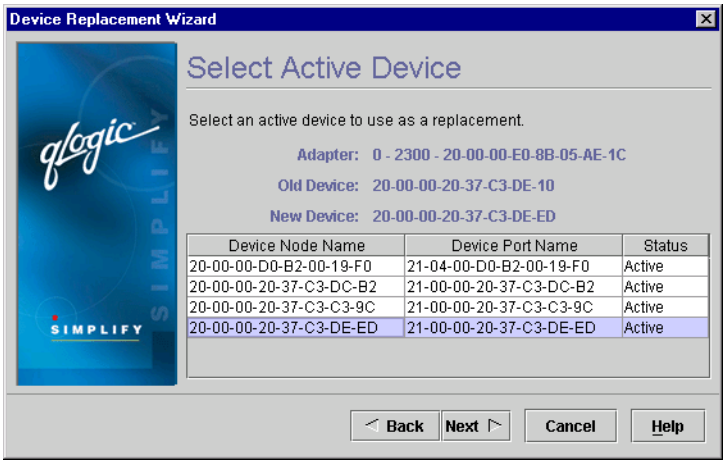



***Figure 7-18. Select Active Device Dialog Box***

The **Select Active Device** dialog box displays the following information:

- **Adapter.** Adapter number, type, and world wide adapter node name.
- **Old Device.** Device node name of the inactive device that you want to replace.
- **New Device.** Device node name of the active device to replace the inactive device.
- Table listing the active devices attached to the adapter. The device node name is the world wide device node name.

Do the following:

a. Select the active device to replace the inactive device from the table. The device node name displays in the **New Device** field.

b. Do one of the following:

- Click **Back** to return to the previous dialog box.
- Click **Next** to proceed.
- Click **Cancel** to exit the **Device Replacement Wizard** without replacing a device.
- Click **Help** to display context-sensitive help.

6. If you clicked **Next**, the **Confirm Device Replacement** dialog box displays (see figure 7-19).


***Figure 7-19. Confirm Device Replacement Dialog Box***

The **Confirm Device Replacement** dialog box displays the following information:

- **Adapter.** Adapter number, type, and world wide adapter node name.
- **Old Device.** World wide device node name of the inactive device that you want to replace.
- **New Device**. World wide device node name of the active device to replace the inactive device.

Do one of the following:

- Click **Back** to return to the previous dialog box.
- Click **Finish** to confirm that the device replacement selections are correct.

- Click **Cancel** to exit the **Device Replacement Wizard** without replacing a device.
- Click **Help** to display context-sensitive help.

7. If you clicked **Finish**, the **Security Check** dialog box displays. In the **Enter Password** box, type the password. Click **OK**.
8. When the changes have been saved to the adapter, the device replacement complete message displays. Click **OK**.

## *7.9* Viewing a Saved Host Configuration from a File

When a host is offline, you can view a virtual image of its host configuration that you saved to an external file in your working directory.

This section discusses:

- Saving the host configuration to a file (see section 7.9.1)
- Viewing the host configuration from a file (see section 7.9.2)

### *7.9.1* Saving the Host Configuration to a File

Perform the following steps to save a host configuration to a file:

1. Do one of the following:
   - From the **SANblade Manager** main window, perform the following steps:
     a. In the HBA tree, select the host (or adapter, device, or LUN connected to the host).
     b. Do one of the following:
        - From the **Host** menu, select **Save to File**.
        - Right-click the host (or adapter, device, or LUN connected to the host) in the HBA tree. From the pop-up menu, select **Save to File**.
        - Press CTRL+S.
   - From the **Fibre Channel Configuration** dialog box **File** menu, select **Save Configuration to File**.
2. When successful, the host configuration successfully saved to file message displays. The message includes the path and file name (in the format *hostname_date_number.qlc)*.

   ***NOTE:*** Write down the path and file name of the host configuration file.

### 7.9.2
## Viewing the Host Configuration from a File

Perform the following steps to view the saved virtual host configuration from a file:

***NOTE:*** You cannot view a virtual host configuration for a host that is currently connected.

1. Do one of the following:
   - From the **Host** menu, select **Load from File**.
   - Right-click in the HBA tree. From the pop-up menu, select **Load from File.**
   - Press CTRL+O.
2. The **Open** dialog box displays. Select a .qlc file from the local working directory. Click **Open**.
3. The load host configuration message displays. Click **OK**.

   The virtual host configuration displays in the HBA tree. Note that the host configuration is displayed as offline and the icons are blue. You can still view configuration information (see figure 7-20).

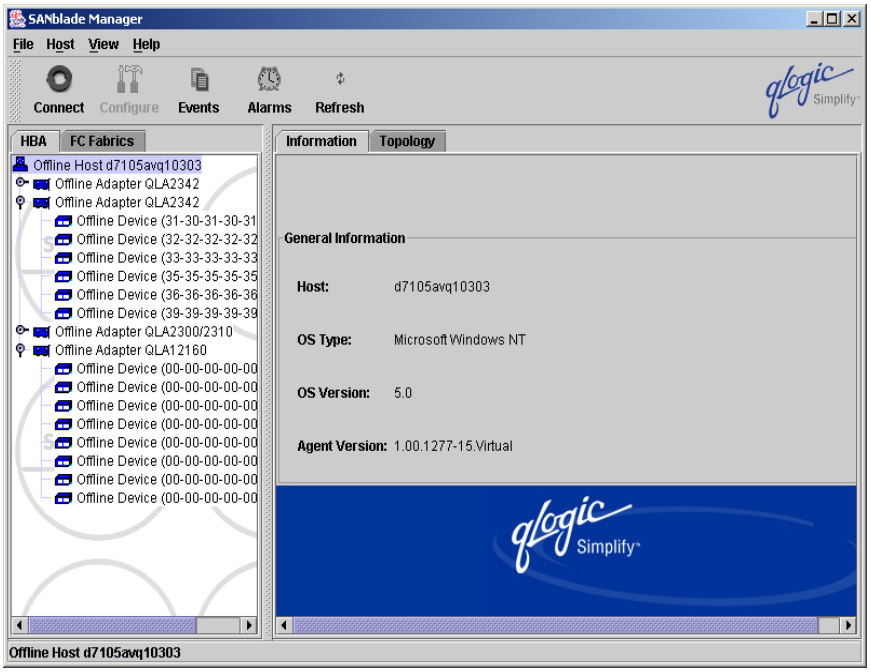



***Figure 7-20. Virtual Host Configuration from a File***

4. To remove a virtual host configuration from the HBA tree, disconnect it (see section 7.1.5).

## *7.10* Printing a Host Configuration

Perform the following steps to print a host configuration:

1. From the **SANblade Manager** main window, do the following:
   a. In the HBA tree, select the host (or adapter, device, or LUN connected to the host).
   b. Do one of the following:
      - Click the **Configure** button on the toolbar.
      - Right-click the host (or adapter, device, or LUN connected to the host) in the HBA tree. From the pop-up menu, select **Configure**.

   The **Fibre Channel Configuration** dialog box displays (see figure 7-3).
2. From the **File** menu, select **Print**.
3. Select the printer and print the configuration.

## *7.11* Comparing Host Configurations

The compare host features allows you to visually see the changes happening to your SAN: devices being added, devices being removed, BIOS updates, and adapter updates.

Perform the following steps to compare the current host configuration (online) to a previously saved host configuration file (offline) (see section 7.9.1).

1. From the **SANblade Manager** main window, do one of the following:
   - From the **Host** menu, select **Compare Host**.
   - Press CTRL+SHIFT+C.

2. The **Open** dialog box displays. Select a .qlc file from the local working directory. Click **Open**. The **Differences Between Online Host and Offline Host** dialog box displays (see figure 7-21).

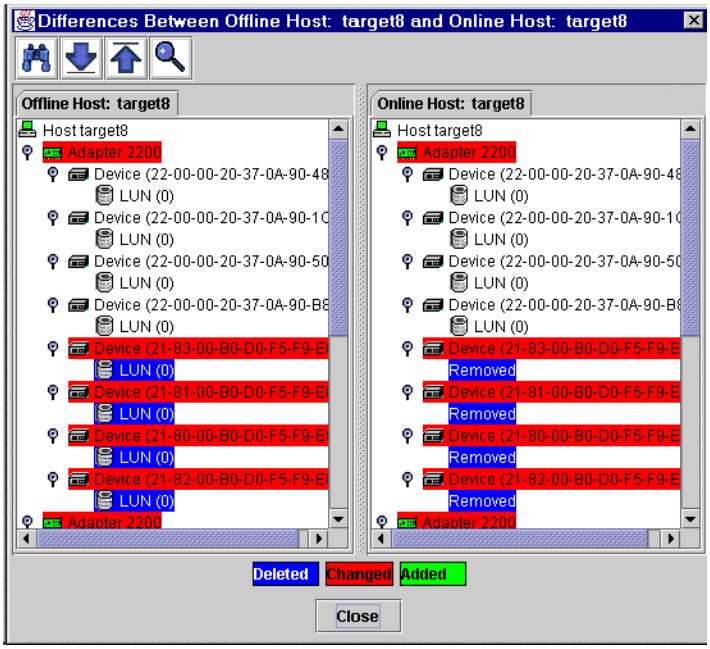



***Figure 7-21. Differences Between Offline Host and Online Host Dialog Box***

The **Online Host** and **Offline Host** tabbed pages are synchronized: the scroll bar moves both pages. If one host tree is expanded or collapsed, the other tree is also expanded or collapsed. (The trees are expanded by default.)

The **Online Host** and **Offline Host** tabbed pages are color coded as follows and indicated at the bottom of figure 7-21:

- Components highlighted in red have been changed.
- Components highlighted in green have been added to the online host configuration (they are not in the offline host configuration).
- Components highlighted in blue have been deleted from the online host configuration (they are in the offline host configuration).

Use the buttons on the tool bar to navigate through the **Offline Host** and **Online Host** tabbed pages:

- Click the binoculars button to search the host configuration for a requested name. If the search is found, the two tabbed pages are synchronized and the found text is displayed with the selection color of the operating system (the selection color supersedes the change colors).
- Click the down arrow button to find the next difference between the host configurations.
- Click the up arrow button to find the previous difference between the host configurations.
- Click the magnifying glass button to show differences between the selected components (see figure 7-22). You can also right-click the component name in the **Differences Between Online Host and Offline Host** dialog box to show the differences.

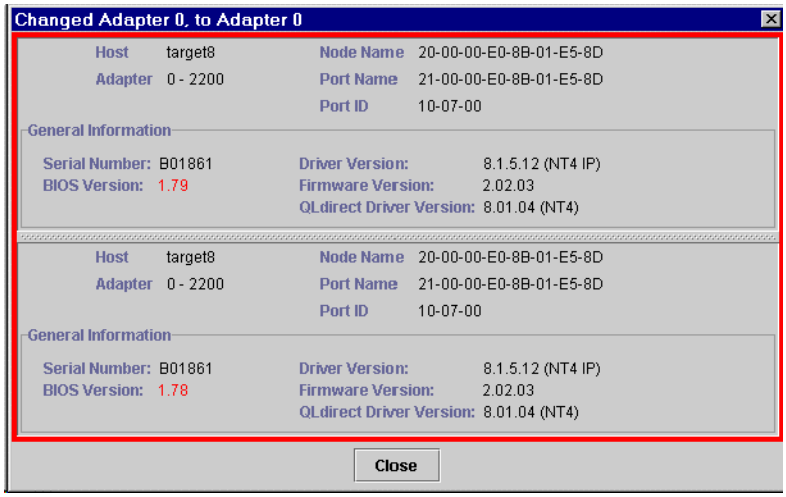



***Figure 7-22. Changed Components Comparison***

*Section 8*

# Monitoring the Connections

SANblade Manager continuously monitors connected hosts and informs you of various conditions and problems through the Alarm Log and Event Log.

This section discusses:

- Viewing and managing the Event Log (see section 8.1)
- Viewing and managing the Alarm Log (see section 8.2)

*8.1*

## Viewing and Managing the Event Log

The Event Log displays events relating to SANblade Manager application operations for any host connected to your system. Events display in the order that they occur, with the most recent event at the top of the list. New events populate the Event Log automatically.

This section discusses:

- Viewing the Event Log (see section 8.1.1)
- Clearing the Event Log (see section 8.1.2)
- Printing the Event Log (see section 8.1.4)

***NOTE:*** See section 6.9 for information about setting the Event Log options.

*8.1.1*

### Viewing the Event Log

Perform the following steps to view the Event Log.

1. From the **SANblade Manager** main window, do one of the following:
   - On the toolbar, click **Events**.
   - On the **View** menu, select **Event Log**.
   - Press CTRL+SHIFT+E.

The **Event Log** dialog box displays (see figure 8-1).

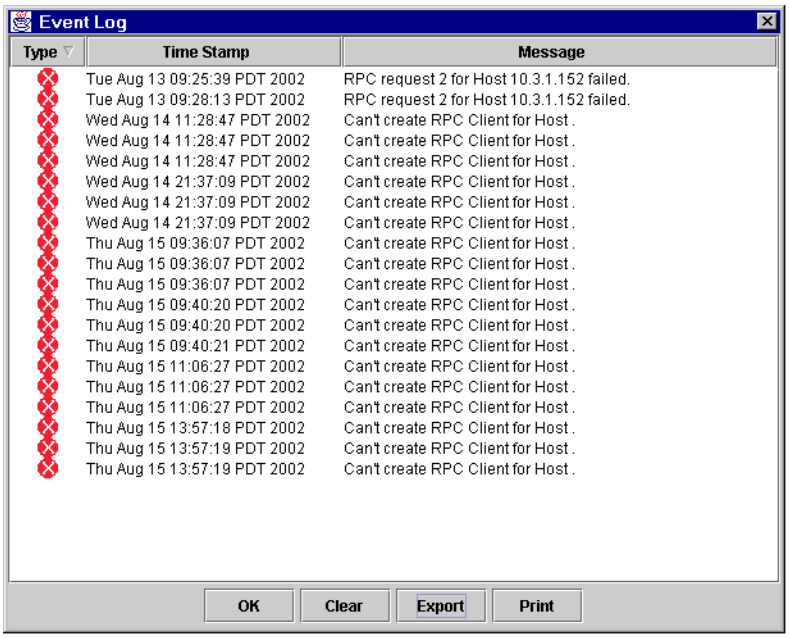



***Figure 8-1. Event Log Dialog Box***

The **Event Log** dialog box includes the following information about each event:

- **Type.** The severity of the event.
  - **Informative event.** An informative or general information event
  - **Warning event.** A noncritical application event
  - **Error event.** A critical application event
- **Time Stamp.** The date and time the event was reported
- **Message.** A brief explanation of the event

2. If you want to sort the existing entries in the **Event Log dialog box**, click the column heading. A triangle displays in the heading, indicating an ascending sort (default). Click the triangle for a descending sort.

3. To view an individual event, double-click the event. The **Event Details** dialog box displays (see figure 8-2).

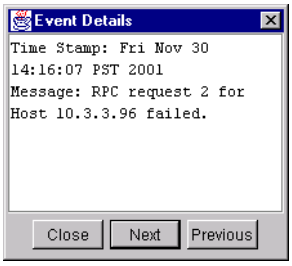



***Figure 8-2. Event Details Dialog Box***

The **Event Details** dialog box displays the time stamp and message.

Do the following as appropriate:

- Click **Next** to view the details of the next event.
- Click **Previous** to view the details of the previous event.
- Click **Close** to return to the **Event Log** dialog box.

4. If you want to clear the Event Log, see section 8.1.2.
5. If you want to export the Event Log, see section 8.1.3.
6. If you want to print the Event Log, see section 8.1.4.
7. Click **OK** to return to the **SANblade Manager** main window.

### *8.1.2* Clearing the Event Log

Perform the following steps to purge the **Event Log** of all its entries.

1. From the **Event Log dialog box**, click **Clear**. See section 8.1.1 for information on accessing the **Event Log** dialog box.
2. The clear event entries confirmation message displays.

   Do one of the following:

   - Click **OK** to clear the events, then click **Cancel** to return to the **SANblade Manager main window**.
   - Click **Cancel** to not clear the events, then click **Cancel** to return to the **SANblade Manager main window**.

### *8.1.3*
## Exporting the Event Log

Perform the following steps to export the current events to a CSV (comma delimited) list, which can be exported to another application.

1. From the **Event Log** dialog box, click **Export**. See section 8.1.1 for information on accessing the **Event Log** dialog box.
2. You are prompted to select a location and a file name (see figure 8-3). After selecting a location from the **Look in** list, type a file name in the **File** box, then click **Save**.

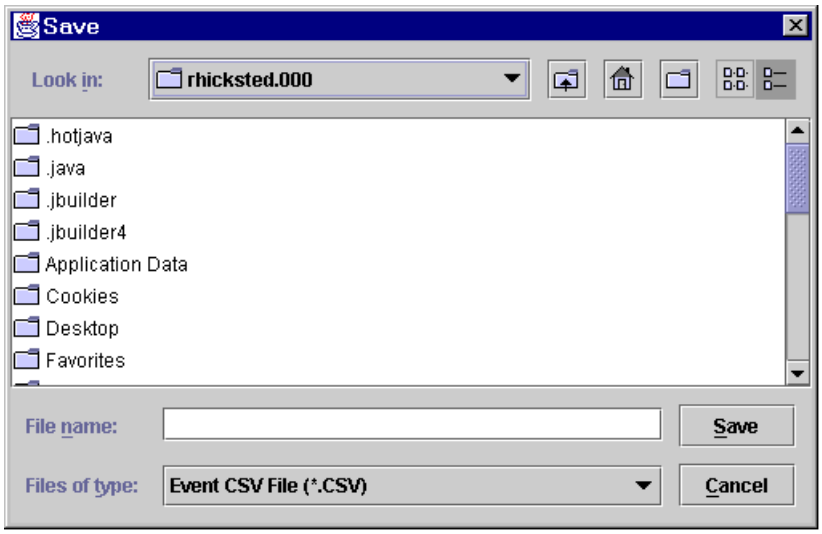



***Figure 8-3. Export Event Log—File Name and Location***

Figure 8-4 shows an example output file, which contains the following event information:

- Event status (unknown, bad, good, or warning)
- Date
- Message

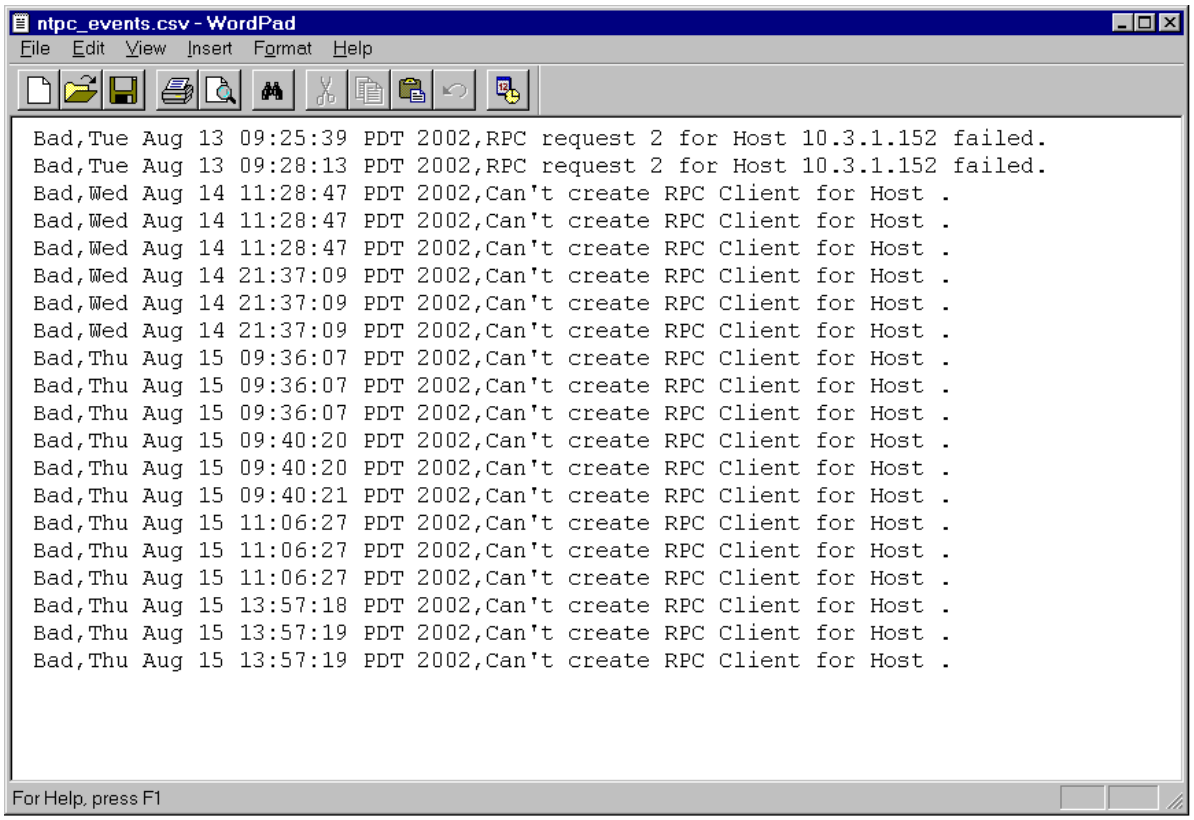



***Figure 8-4. Export Event Log—Sample Output File***

### *8.1.4*
## Printing the Event Log

Perform the following steps to print the **Event Log**.

***NOTE:*** See section 8.1.1 for information on accessing the **Event Log** dialog box.

1. From the **Event Log dialog box**, click **Print**.
2. Print the Event Log.

### *8.2*
## Viewing and Managing the Alarm Log

SANblade Manager continuously monitors the connected hosts for alarms. The **adapter** icon on the HBA tree displays alarm status. When SANblade Manager receives an alarm, the **adapter** icon flashes with the color of the most severe alarm received, with alarm status indicated as follows:

- A green **adapter** icon indicates no alarm.
- A gray **adapter** icon indicates an informational alarm.
- A blue **adapter** icon indicates an unknown alarm.
- A yellow **adapter** icon indicates a warning alarm.
- A yellow **adapter** icon with a red X indicates that the loop is down.
- A red **adapter** icon indicates a bad alarm.

See figure 8-5 for a sample HBA tree with alarms.

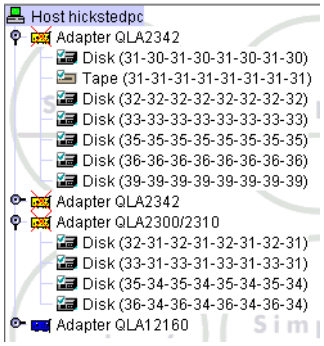



***Figure 8-5. HBA Tree with Alarms***

The flashing **adapter** icon indicates that there is at least one active alarm. When you view the Alarm Log, the icon stops flashing and returns to its normal state.

The Alarm Log displays alarms that occur on hosts connected to your system. Alarms display in the order that they occur, with the most recent alarm at the top of the list. Or they display in the order you specify. New alarms populate the Alarm Log automatically.

This section discusses:

- Viewing the Alarm Log (see section 8.2.1)
- Clearing the Alarm Log (see section 8.2.2)
- Printing the Alarm Log (see section 8.2.2)

***NOTE:*** See section 6.10 for information about setting the Alarm Log options.

### *8.2.1* Viewing the Alarm Log

Perform the following steps from the SANblade Manager main menu to view the **Alarm Log**.

1. To view the alarms for one host, do one of the following:
   - Select the host in the HBA tree. From the **View** menu, select **Alarm Log**.
   - Right-click the host in the HBA tree. From the pop-up menu, select **Alarm Log**.
   - Select the host in the HBA tree. Click **Alarms** on the toolbar.
   - Select the host in the HBA tree. Press CTRL+SHIFT+A.

   To view the alarms on one adapter, do one of the following:
   - Select the adapter (or a device connected to the adapter) in the HBA tree. From the **View** menu, select **Alarm Log**.
   - Right-click the adapter (or a device connected to the adapter) in the HBA tree. From the pop-up menu, select **Alarm Log**.
   - Select the adapter (or a device connected to the adapter) in the HBA tree. Press CTRL+SHIFT+A.

The **Alarm Log** dialog box displays (see figure 8-6).

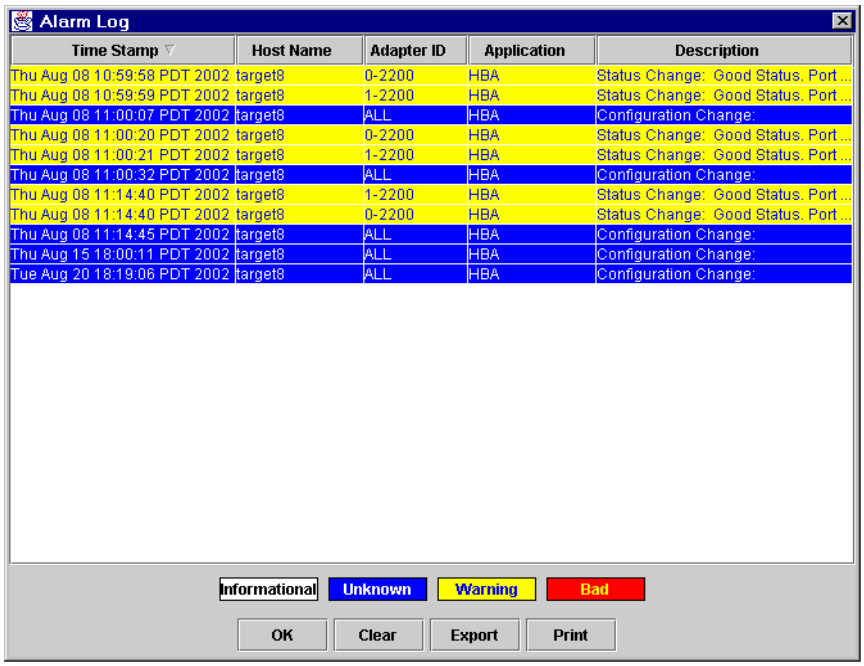



***Figure 8-6. Alarm Log Dialog Box***

The **Alarm Log** dialog box includes the following information about each alarm:

- **Time Stamp.** Date and time the alarm was reported
- **Host Name.** Name of the host where the alarm originated
- **Adapter ID.** Name of the adapter where the alarm occurred
- **Application.** Type of management application running when the alarm occurred
- **Description.** Description of the alarm
- **Alarm Severity.** Severity of the alarm. The alarm row is color-coded as follows and indicated at the bottom of figure 8-6:
  - Informational—white
  - Unknown—blue
  - Warning—yellow
  - Bad—red

2. If you want to sort the alarm entries, click the column heading. A triangle displays in the heading, indicating an ascending sort (default). Click the triangle for an descending sort.
3. To view an individual alarm, double-click the alarm. The **Alarm Details** dialog box displays (see figure 8-7).

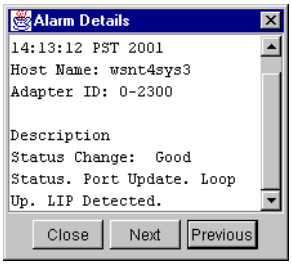



***Figure 8-7. Alarm Details Dialog Box***

The **Alarm Details** dialog box displays the time stamp, host name, device ID, and description.

Do the following as appropriate:

- Click **Next** to view the details of the next alarm.
- Click **Previous** to view the details of the previous alarm.
- Click **Close** to return to the **Alarm Log** dialog box.

4. If you want to clear the Alarm Log, see section 8.2.2.
5. If you want to export the Alarm Log, see section 8.2.3.
6. If you want to print the Alarm Log, see section 8.2.4.
7. Click **OK** to return to the **SANblade Manager** main window.

### *8.2.2* Clearing the Alarm Log

Perform the following steps to purge the **Alarm Log** of all its entries:

1. From the **Alarm Log dialog box**, click **Clear**. See section 8.2.1 for information on accessing the **Alarm Log** dialog box.
2. The clear alarm entries confirmation message displays. Do one of the following:
   - Click **OK** to clear the alarms. SANblade Manager clears the alarms as follows:
     - If you are viewing the alarms for all the hosts, SANblade Manager clears all the alarms.

- If you are viewing the alarms for one host, SANblade Manager clears the alarms only for that host.
- If you are viewing the alarms for one adapter, SANblade Manager clears the alarms only for that adapter.

- Click **Cancel** to not clear the alarms.

3. From the **Alarm Log dialog box**, click **OK** to return to the SANblade Manager main window.

### *8.2.3* Exporting the Alarm Log

Perform the following steps to export the current alarms to a CSV (comma delimited) list, which can be exported to another application:

1. From the **Alarm Log** dialog box, click **Export**. See section 8.2.1 for information on accessing the **Alarm Log** dialog box.
2. You are prompted to select a location and a file name (see figure 8-8). After selecting a location from the **Look in** list, type a file name in the **File name** box, then click **Save**.

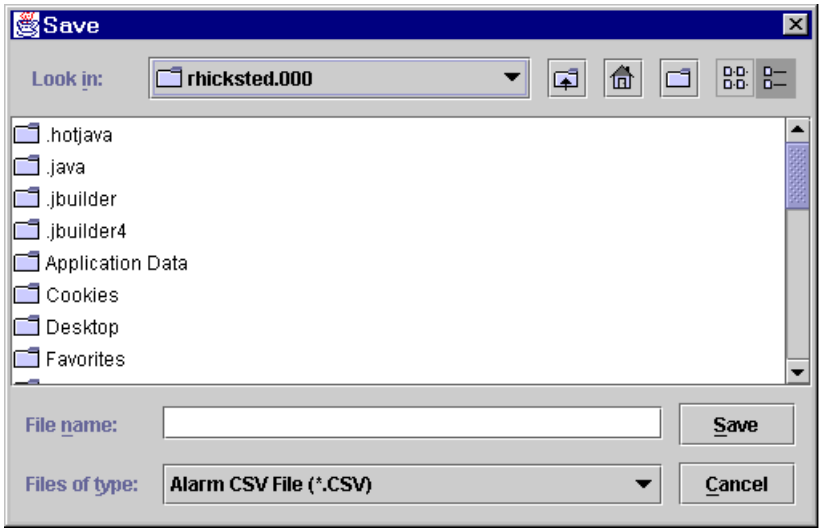



***Figure 8-8. Export Alarm Log—File Name and Location***

Figure 8-9 shows an example output file, which contains the following alarm information:

- Date
- Host
- Adapter
- Status
- Message

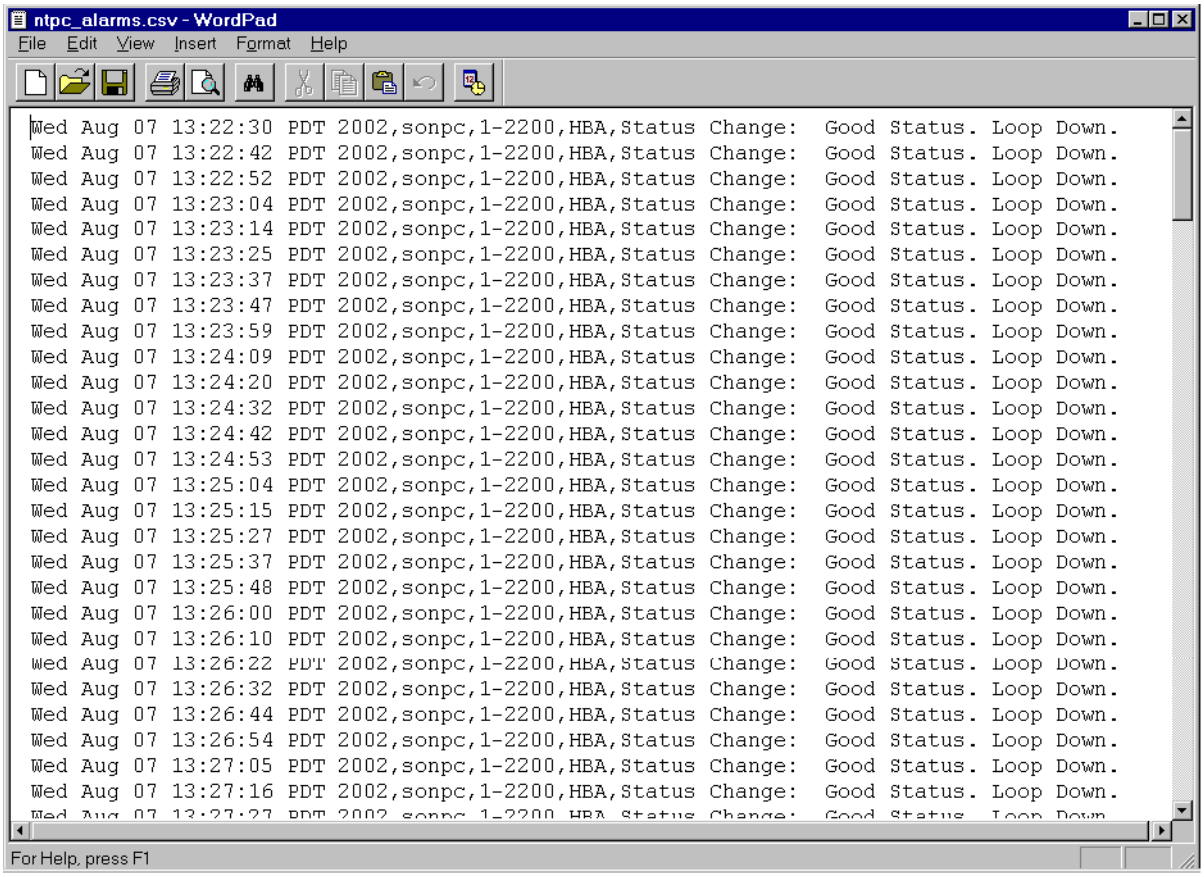



***Figure 8-9. Export Alarm Log—Sample Output File***

### *8.2.4*
## Printing the Alarm Log

Perform the following steps to print the Alarm Log:

***NOTE:*** See section 8.2.1 for information on accessing the **Alarm Log** dialog box.

1. From the **Alarm Log** dialog box, click **Print**.
2. Print the Alarm Log.

## Notes

*Section 9*

# Displaying Host, Adapter, Device, and LUN Information

You can display information about hosts, adapters, devices, and LUNs. This section discusses viewing information about the following:

- Hosts—general information, topology, and statistics (see section 9.1)
- Adapters—general information, statistics, device list, and link status (see section 9.2)
- Devices—general information and LUN list (see section 9.3)
- LUNs—general information (see section 9.4)

***NOTE:*** See section 7.4 for information about viewing adapter, device, and path information when configuring devices and LUNs.

## *9.1* Displaying Host Information

You can view the following information about a host:

- General host information (see section 9.1.1)
- Topology (see section 9.1.2)
- Host statistics (see section 9.1.3)

### *9.1.1*
## Viewing General Host Information

Perform the following steps to view general information about a host:

1. In the SANblade Manager main window HBA tree, select the host.
2. Select the **Information** tab. The **Host Information** tabbed page displays (see figure 9-1).

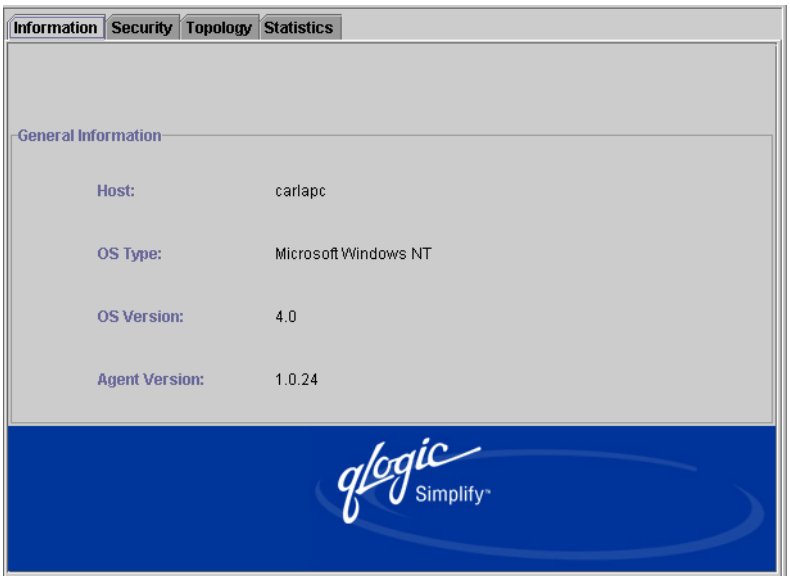



***Figure 9-1. Host Information Tabbed Page***

The following information displays:

- **Host.** Host name
- **OS Type.** Operating system running on the host
- **OS Version.** Operating system version
- **Agent Version.** SANblade Manager agent version

### *9.1.2*
## Viewing Topology Information

Perform the following steps to view the topology for a host:

1. In the SANblade Manager main window HBA tree, select the host.
2. Select the **Topology** tab. The **Topology** tabbed page displays (see figure 9-2).

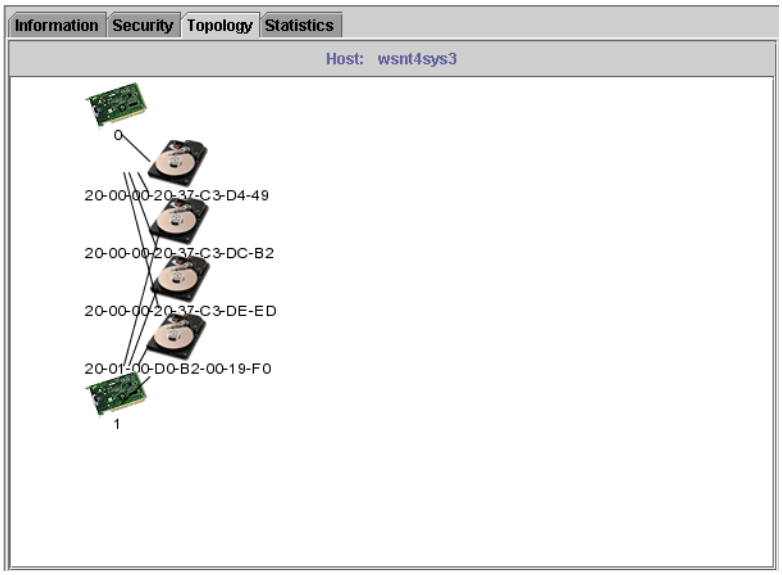



***Figure 9-2. Topology Tabbed Page***

The following information displays:

- **Host.** Host name

The Topology section displays a graphical representation of the selected host that includes the following:

- Adapters with their adapter numbers
- Devices with their world wide device port names

***NOTE:*** You can select and move the adapter and device icons.

### *9.1.3*
## Viewing and Updating Host Statistics

This section discusses:

- Viewing host statistics (see section 9.1.3.1)
- Updating host statistics (see section 9.1.3.2)
- Exporting host statistics (see section 9.1.3.3)

***NOTE:*** Host statistics are available only for Windows 2000/Server 2003 systems and only when the QLdirect driver is installed. The **Statistics** tab does not display if these criteria are not met.

### *9.1.3.1*
## Viewing Host Statistics

Perform the following steps to view statistics for a host:

1. In the SANblade Manager main window HBA tree, select the host.
2. Select the **Statistics** tab. The **Host Statistics** tabbed page displays (see figure 9-3).

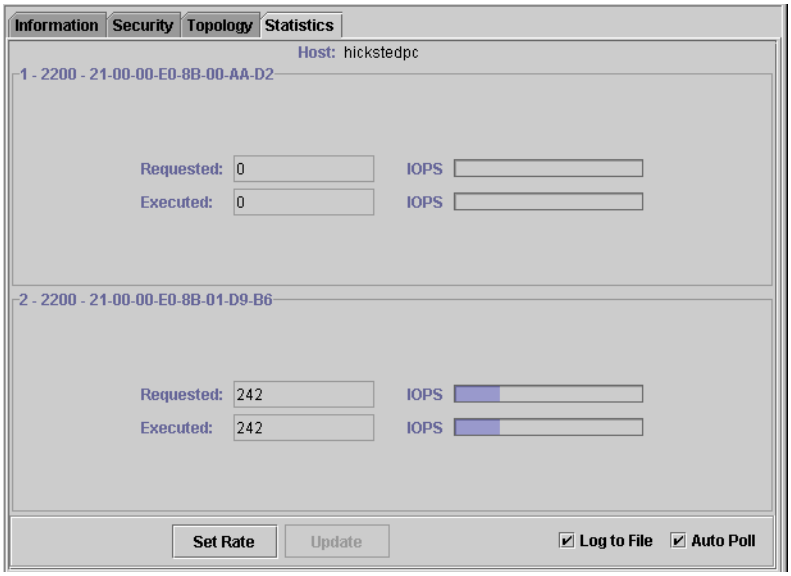



***Figure 9-3. Host Statistics Tabbed Page***

The identifying information displays:

- **Host.** Host name

For each adapter, the following information displays. IOPS stands for I/Os per second; KBPS stands for kilobytes per second.

- **Adapter.** Adapter's number, adapter type (2200 indicates a QLA22*xx* adapter; 2300 indicates a QLA23*xx* adapter), and world wide adapter port name
- **Requested.** Number of IOPS or KBPS of data requested
- **Executed.** Number of IOPS or KBPS of data executed
- **IOPS** or **KBPS.** Graphical representation of the number of IOPS or KBPS. All IOPS bars use one scale; all KBPS bars use a different scale. Each scale is based on a power of ten that is greater than the highest throughput. Therefore, when you view the same type of bars for more than one adapter, you are viewing their relative throughput.

3. You can toggle between displaying the statistics as IOPS or KBPS. Do the following:
   a. Right-click in the section for the adapter.
   b. Select **View by I/O** or **View by KB**.

You can update statistics manually or have them automatically update at a specified interval (see section 9.1.3.2). You can also export the statistics to a CSV (comma delimiter) file (see section 9.1.3.3).

### *9.1.3.2* Updating Host Statistics

You can update the host statistics manually or set the system to automatically update the host statistics.

#### *9.1.3.2.1* Updating Host Statistics Manually

Do one of the following to update host statistics manually:

- Clear the **Auto Poll** check box.
- Click **Update** to display the current statistics.

*9.1.3.2.2*

## Updating Host Statistics Automatically

Perform the following steps to automatically update the host statistics at a specified interval:

1. Select the **Auto Poll** check box.
2. Click **Set Rate**. The **Statistics Sampling Rate** dialog box displays (see figure 9-4).

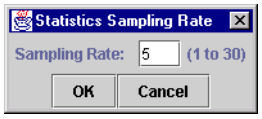



***Figure 9-4. Statistics Sampling Rate Dialog Box***

3. In the **Sampling Rate** box, type the sampling rate interval. The range is 1 second to 30 seconds. The default is 5 seconds.

   ***NOTE:*** The faster the polling rate, the more quickly the SANblade Manager GUI receives indications from the host. However, faster polling rates consume more of your system's CPU and network resources and slow the system.

4. Click **OK** to set the interval. Click **Cancel** to not set the interval.

*9.1.3.3*

## Exporting Host Statistics

Perform the following steps to export the host statistics to a CSV (comma delimited) file, which can be exported to another application:

1. From the **Host Statistics** tabbed page (see figure 9-3), select the **Log to File** check box. See section 9.1.3.1 for information on accessing the **Host Statistics** tabbed page.
2. You are prompted to select a location and a file name (see figure 9-5). After selecting a location from the **Look in** list, type a file name in the **File name** box or select an existing file. Click **Save**.

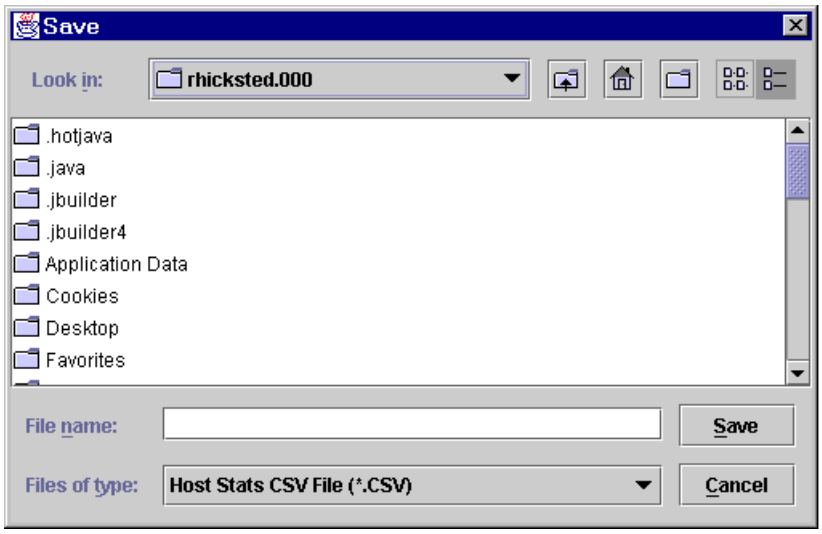



***Figure 9-5. Export Host Statistics—File Name and Location***

3. If you selected an exiting file, the **Stats** dialog box displays (see figure 9-6). To append the host statistics to the selected file, click **Yes**.


***Figure 9-6. Export Host Statistics—Append Existing File***

Figure 9-7 shows an example output file, which contains the following host statistics information:

- Adapter number and type
- I/O or KB
- Requested
- Executed
- Scale
- Time since last poll

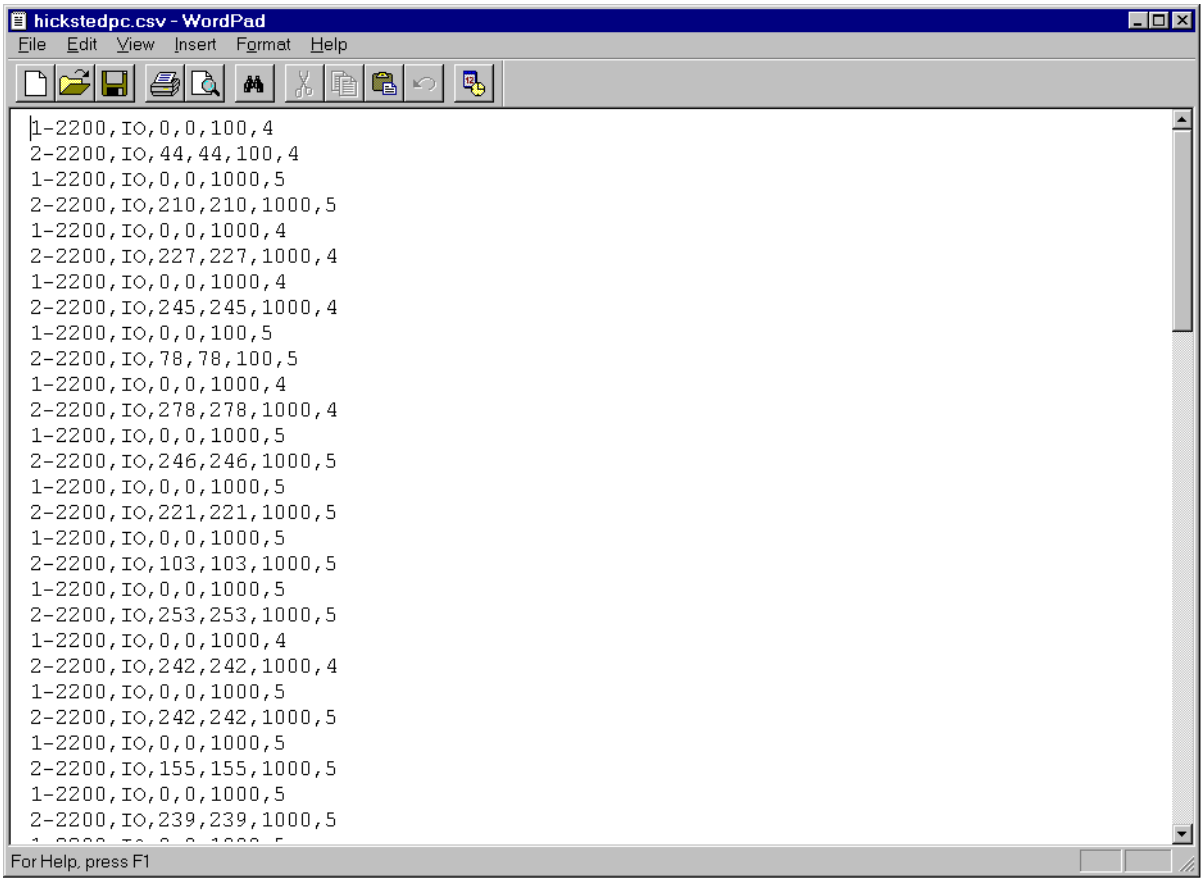



***Figure 9-7. Export Host Statistics—Sample Output File***

## 9.2 Displaying Adapter Information

You can view the following adapter information:

- General adapter information (see section 9.2.1)
- Adapter statistics (see section 9.2.2)
- Device list (see section 9.2.3)
- Link status (see section 9.2.4)

### 9.2.1 Viewing General Adapter Information

Perform the following steps to view general information about an adapter connected to a host:

1. In the SANblade Manager main window HBA tree, select the adapter.
2. Select the **Information** tab. The **Adapter Information** tabbed page displays (see figure 9-8).

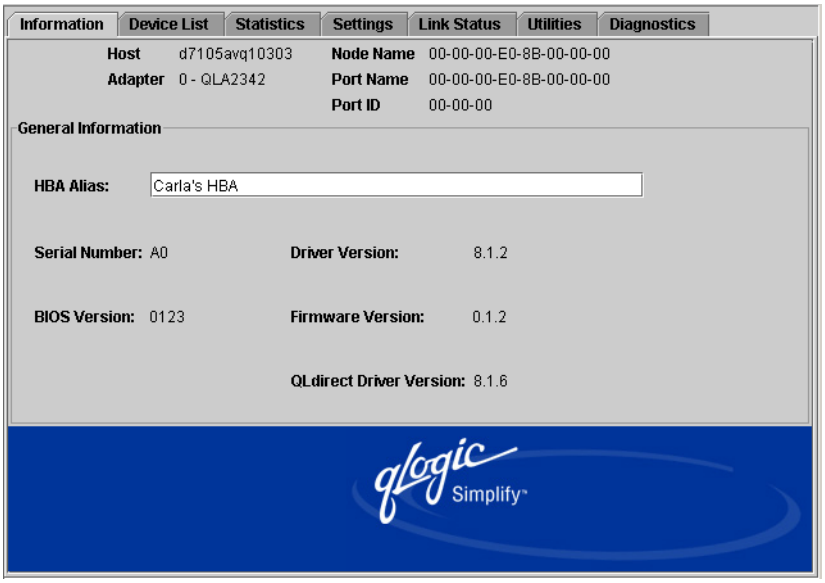



***Figure 9-8. Adapter Information Tabbed Page***

The identifying information displays:

- **Host.** Name of the host connected to the adapter
- **Adapter.** Adapter number and type (2200 indicates a QLA22*xx* adapter; 2300 indicates a QLA23*xx* adapter)
- **Node Name.** World wide adapter node name

- **Port Name.** World wide adapter port name
- **Port ID.** Port ID of the adapter

The general information displays:

- **HBA Alias.** Symbolic name you can assign to the HBA for identification purposes. You do not have to press ENTER after typing the name; it is saved automatically.
- **Serial Number.** Serial number of the adapter
- **BIOS Version.** BIOS version on the adapter (Windows 2000/Server 2003, Linux, and NetWare)
- **FCode Version.** FCode version on the adapter (Solaris SPARC)
- **Driver Version.** Version of the adapter driver on the host that controls the adapter
- **Firmware Version.** Version of the adapter firmware on the host that controls the adapter
- **QLdirect Driver Version.** If loaded, version of the QLdirect failover driver that resides on the host that controls the adapter (for Windows 2000/Server 2003)
- **OS Instance.** The operating system number from which the adapter can be accessed (Solaris SPARC).

### *9.2.2* Viewing and Updating Adapter Statistics

This section discusses:

- Viewing adapter statistics (see section 9.2.2.1)
- Updating adapter statistics (see section 9.2.2.2)

*9.2.2.1*

## Viewing Adapter Statistics

Perform the following steps to view statistical information about an adapter connected to a host:

1. In the SANblade Manager main window HBA tree, select the adapter.
2. Select the **Statistics** tab. The **Adapter Statistics** tabbed page displays (see figure 9-9).

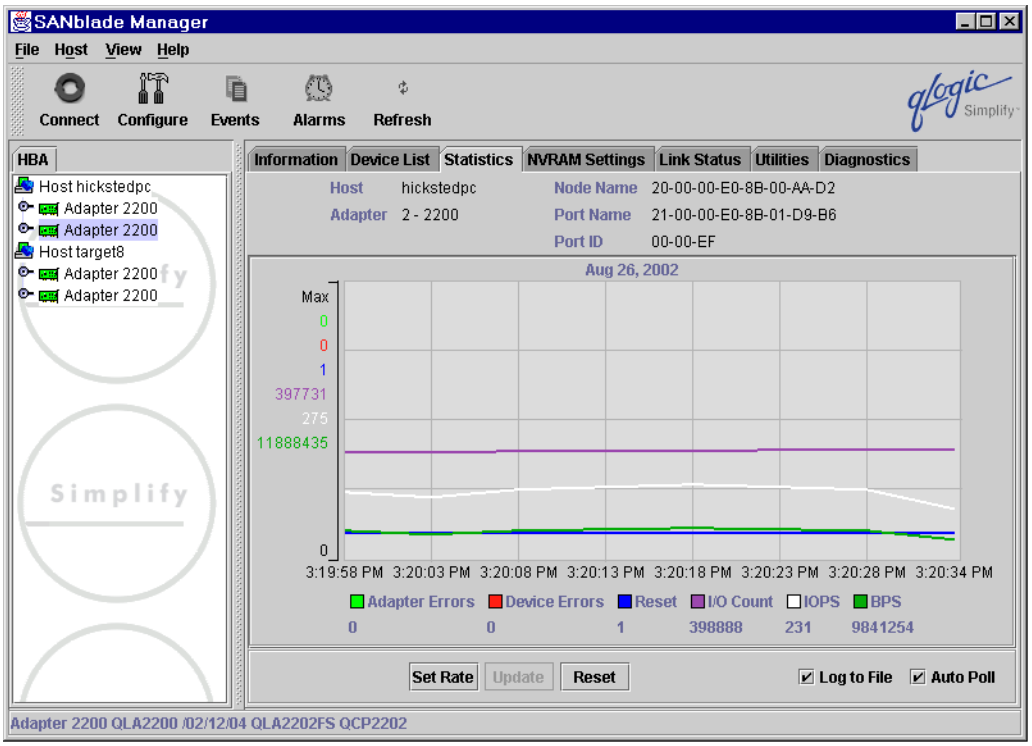



***Figure 9-9. Adapter Statistics Tabbed Page***

The identifying information displays:

- **Host.** Name of the host connected to the adapter
- **Adapter.** Adapter number and type
- **Node Name.** World wide adapter node name
- **Port Name.** World wide adapter port name
- **Port ID.** Port ID of the adapter

The statistical information displays:

- **Adapter Errors.** Number of adapter errors reported by the adapter's driver
- **Device Errors.** Number of device errors reported by the adapter's driver
- **Reset.** Number of LIP resets reported by the adapter's driver

- **I/O Count.** Total number of I/Os reported by the adapter's driver
- **I/O per Second.** Number of I/Os processed by the adapter per second
- **Bytes per Second.** Number of bytes processed by the adapter per second

You can update statistics manually or have them automatically update at a specified interval (see section 9.2.2.2). You can also export the statistics to a CSV (comma delimiter) file (see section 9.2.2.3).

*9.2.2.2*
## Updating Adapter Statistics

You can update the adapter statistics manually, set the system to update the statistics automatically, or reset the statistics.

*9.2.2.2.1*
## Updating Adapter Statistics Manually

Perform the following steps to update adapter statistics manually:

1. Clear the **Auto Poll** check box.
2. Click **Update** to retrieve statistics from the host.

*9.2.2.2.2*
## Updating Adapter Statistics Automatically

Perform the following steps to set the system to update adapter statistics automatically:

1. Select the **Auto Poll** check box.
2. Click **Set Rate**. The **Statistics Sampling Rate** dialog box displays (see figure 9-10).

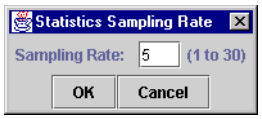



***Figure 9-10. Statistics Sampling Rate Dialog Box***

3. In the **Sampling Rate** box, type the sampling rate interval. The range is 1 second to 30 seconds. The default is 5 seconds.

   ***NOTE:*** The faster the polling rate, the more quickly the SANblade Manager GUI receives indications from the host. However, faster polling rates consume more of your system's CPU and network resources and slow the system.

4. Click **OK** to set the interval. Click **Cancel** to not set the interval.

*9.2.2.2.3*

## Resetting Adapter Statistics

Click **Reset** to reset the statistics to their initial value of zero.

*9.2.2.3*

## Exporting Adapter Statistics

Perform the following steps to export the adapter statistics to a comma delimited (CSV) file, which can be exported to another application.

1. From the **Adapter Statistics** tabbed page (see figure 9-9), select the **Log to File** check box. See section 9.2.2.1 for information on accessing the **Host Statistics** tabbed page.
2. You are prompted to select a location and a file name (see figure 9-11). After selecting a location from the **Look in** list, type a file name in the **File name** box or select an existing file. Click **Save**.

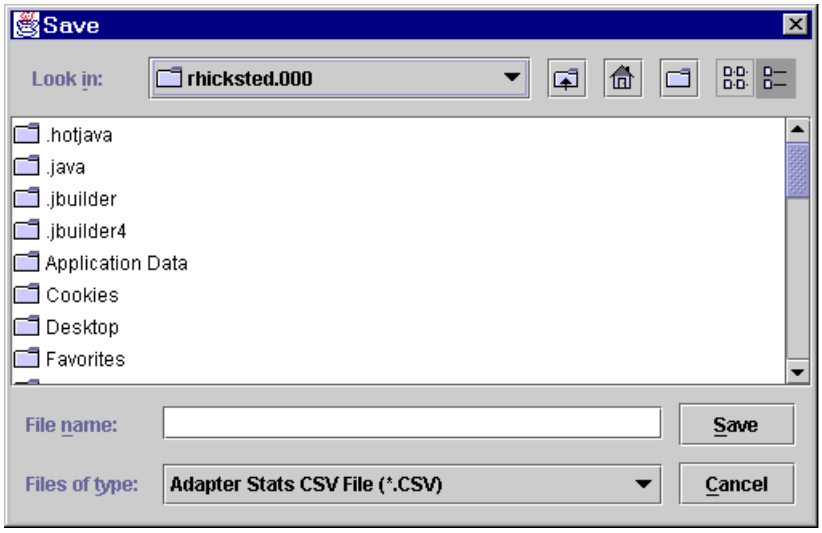



***Figure 9-11. Export Adapter Statistics—File Name and Location***

3. If you selected an exiting file, the **Stats** dialog box displays (see figure 9-12). To append the host statistics to the selected file, click **Yes**.


***Figure 9-12. Export Adapter Statistics—Append Existing File***

Figure 9-13 shows an example output file, which contains the following host statistics information:

- Adapter errors
- Device errors
- Resets
- Recount
- IOPS
- bytes per second (bps)

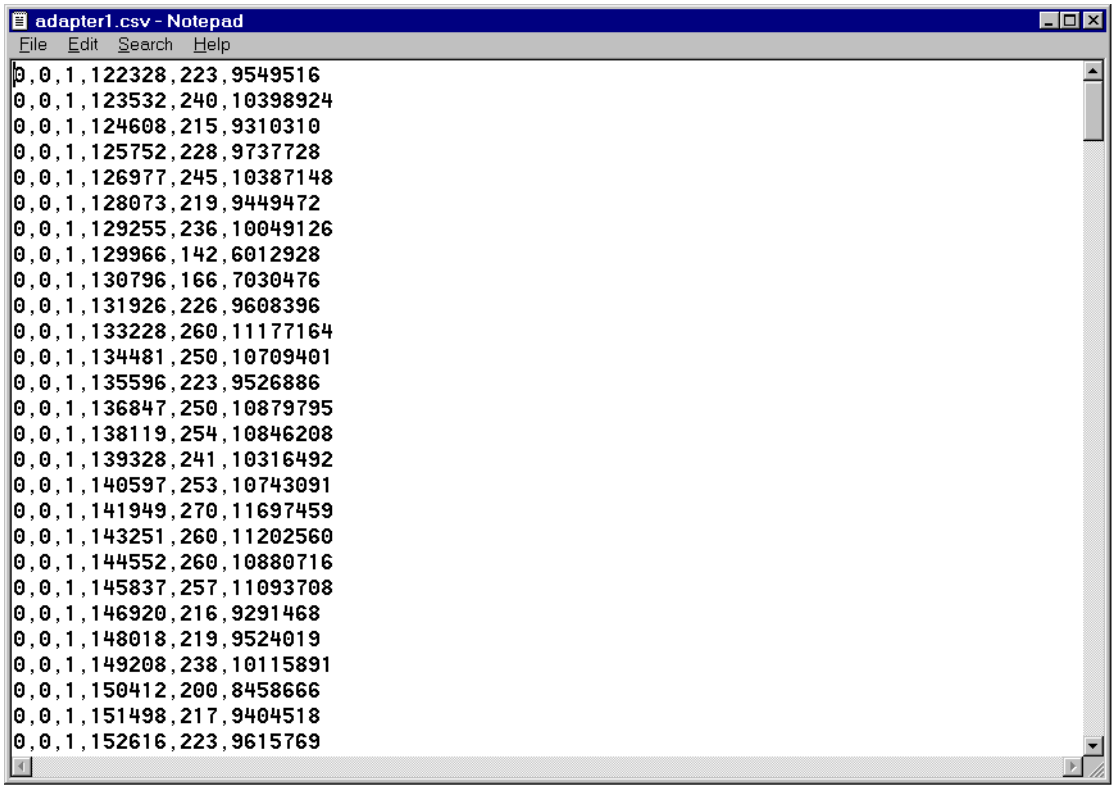



***Figure 9-13. Export Adapter Statistics—Sample Output File***

### *9.2.3*
## Viewing the Device List

Perform the following steps to display information about devices attached to an adapter connected to a host:

1. In the SANblade Manager main window HBA tree, select the adapter.
2. Select the **Device List** tab. The **Device List** tabbed page displays (see figure 9-14).

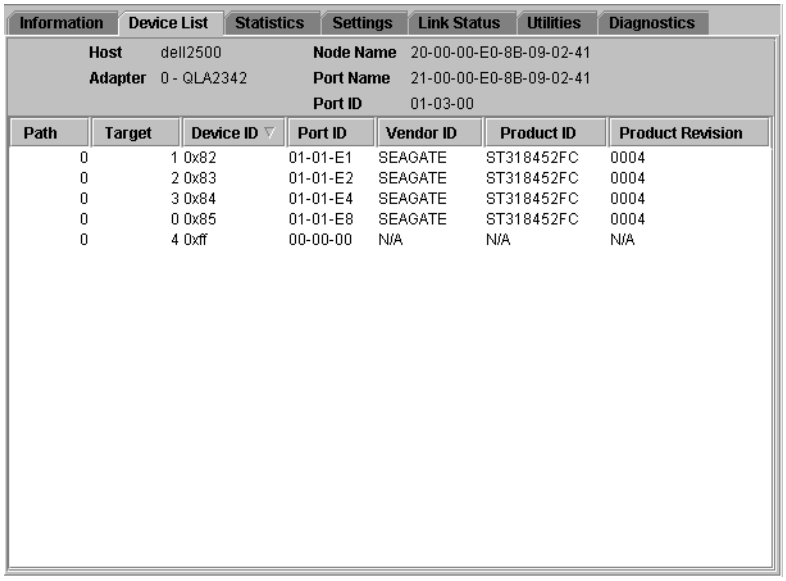



***Figure 9-14. Device List Tabbed Page***

The identifying information displays:

- **Host.** Name of the host connected to the adapter
- **Adapter.** Adapter number and type
- **Node Name.** World wide adapter node name
- **Port Name.** World wide adapter port name
- **Port ID.** Port ID of the adapter

The device list information displays:

- **Path.** Path number
- **Target.** Device ID of the device
- **Device ID.** Complement of the AL_PA
- **Port ID.** Port ID of the device
- **Vendor ID.** Vendor ID of the device
- **Product ID.** Product ID of the device
- **Product Revision.** Product revision level of the device

To sort the device list information, click in the desired column heading. In figure 9-14, the information is sorted by the loop ID.

### *9.2.4*
## Viewing Link Status

Perform the following steps to view the link information for devices attached to an adapter connected to a host:

1. In the SANblade Manager main window HBA tree, select the adapter.
2. Select the **Link Status** tab. The **Link Status** tabbed page displays (see figure 9-15).

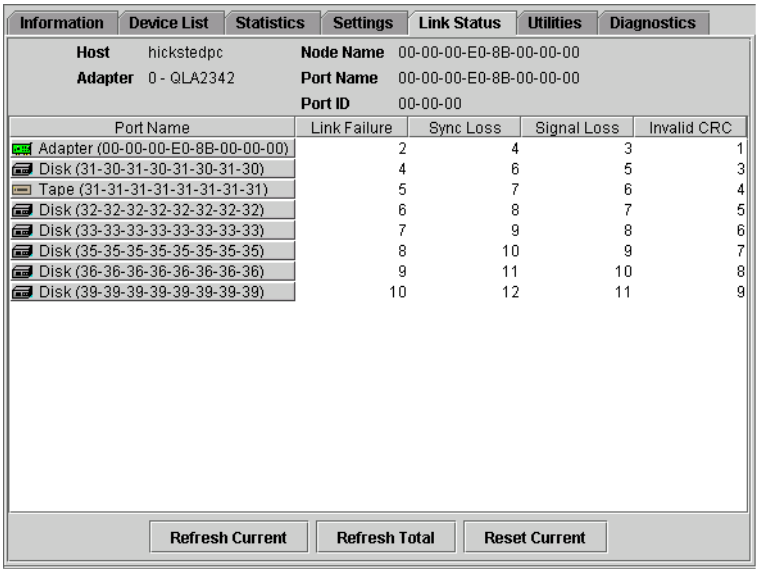



***Figure 9-15. Link Status Tabbed Page***

The identifying information displays:

- **Host.** Name of the host connected to the adapter
- **Adapter.** Adapter number and type
- **Node Name.** World wide adapter node name
- **Port Name.** World wide adapter port name
- **Port ID.** Port ID of the adapter

The link status information displays:

- **Port Name.** For the adapter, the world wide adapter port name displays. For each device, the world wide device port name displays.
- **Diagnostic information.** For the adapter and each device, the number of link failures, loss of sync failures, signal failures, and number of invalid CRCs display.

3. You can do the following:
   - Click **Reset Current** to initialize the link counter values to zero.
   - Click **Refresh Current** to view the link counter values from when you initialized them by clicking **Reset Current**.
   - Click **Refresh Total** to view the link counter values from when the system was last booted.

## *9.3* Displaying Device and Tape Information

You can view the following information about a device or tape:

- General device/tape information (see section 9.3.1)
- LUN list (see section 9.3.2)

### *9.3.1*
## Viewing General Device or Tape Information

Perform the following steps to view general information about a device or tape:

1. In the SANblade Manager main window HBA tree, select the device or tape.
2. Select the **Information** tab. The device or tape **Information** tabbed page displays (see figure 9-16).


***Figure 9-16. Device Information Tabbed Page***

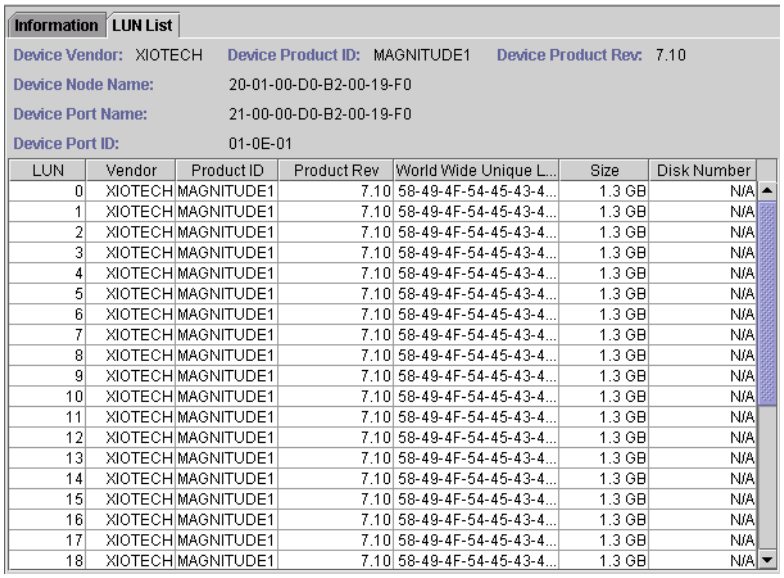
The following information displays:

- **Product Vendor.** Device or tape manufacturer
- **Product ID.** Product ID of the device/tape
- **Product Revision.** Device or tape revision level
- **Node Name.** World wide node name of the device or tape
- **Port Name.** World wide port name of the selected device or tape's port
- **Port ID.** Port ID of the selected device or tape's port

### *9.3.2*
## Viewing the LUN List

Perform the following steps to display information about LUNs:

1. In the SANblade Manager main window HBA tree, select the device or tape.
2. Select the **LUN List** tab. The **LUN List** tabbed page displays (see figure 9-17).




| LUN | Vendor | Product ID | Product Rev | World Wide Unique L... | Size | Disk Number |
|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|
| 0 | XIOTECH | MAGNITUDE1 | 7.10 | 58-49-4F-54-45-43-4... | 1.3 GB | N/A |
| 1 | XIOTECH | MAGNITUDE1 | 7.10 | 58-49-4F-54-45-43-4... | 1.3 GB | N/A |
| 2 | XIOTECH | MAGNITUDE1 | 7.10 | 58-49-4F-54-45-43-4... | 1.3 GB | N/A |
| 3 | XIOTECH | MAGNITUDE1 | 7.10 | 58-49-4F-54-45-43-4... | 1.3 GB | N/A |
| 4 | XIOTECH | MAGNITUDE1 | 7.10 | 58-49-4F-54-45-43-4... | 1.3 GB | N/A |
| 5 | XIOTECH | MAGNITUDE1 | 7.10 | 58-49-4F-54-45-43-4... | 1.3 GB | N/A |
| 6 | XIOTECH | MAGNITUDE1 | 7.10 | 58-49-4F-54-45-43-4... | 1.3 GB | N/A |
| 7 | XIOTECH | MAGNITUDE1 | 7.10 | 58-49-4F-54-45-43-4... | 1.3 GB | N/A |
| 8 | XIOTECH | MAGNITUDE1 | 7.10 | 58-49-4F-54-45-43-4... | 1.3 GB | N/A |
| 9 | XIOTECH | MAGNITUDE1 | 7.10 | 58-49-4F-54-45-43-4... | 1.3 GB | N/A |
| 10 | XIOTECH | MAGNITUDE1 | 7.10 | 58-49-4F-54-45-43-4... | 1.3 GB | N/A |
| 11 | XIOTECH | MAGNITUDE1 | 7.10 | 58-49-4F-54-45-43-4... | 1.3 GB | N/A |
| 12 | XIOTECH | MAGNITUDE1 | 7.10 | 58-49-4F-54-45-43-4... | 1.3 GB | N/A |
| 13 | XIOTECH | MAGNITUDE1 | 7.10 | 58-49-4F-54-45-43-4... | 1.3 GB | N/A |
| 14 | XIOTECH | MAGNITUDE1 | 7.10 | 58-49-4F-54-45-43-4... | 1.3 GB | N/A |
| 15 | XIOTECH | MAGNITUDE1 | 7.10 | 58-49-4F-54-45-43-4... | 1.3 GB | N/A |
| 16 | XIOTECH | MAGNITUDE1 | 7.10 | 58-49-4F-54-45-43-4... | 1.3 GB | N/A |
| 17 | XIOTECH | MAGNITUDE1 | 7.10 | 58-49-4F-54-45-43-4... | 1.3 GB | N/A |
| 18 | XIOTECH | MAGNITUDE1 | 7.10 | 58-49-4F-54-45-43-4... | 1.3 GB | N/A |

***Figure 9-17. LUN List Tabbed Page***

The identifying information displays:

- **Device Vendor.** Device or tape manufacturer
- **Device Product ID.** Product ID of the device or tape
- **Device Product Rev.** Device or tape revision level
- **Device Node Name.** World wide node name of the device or tape
- **Device Port Name.** World wide port name of the selected device or tape's port
- **Device Port ID.** Port ID of the selected device or tape's port

The LUN list information displays:

- **LUN.** LUN number
- **Vendor.** Manufacturer of the LUN
- **Product ID.** Product ID of the LUN
- **Product Revision.** Product revision level of the LUN
- **World Wide Unique LUN Name.** World wide name of the LUN

- **Size.** Capacity of the LUN in megabytes or gigabytes
- **Disk Number.** Disk number of the LUN

## *9.4* Displaying LUN Information

Perform the following steps to view general information about a LUN:

1. In the SANblade Manager main window HBA tree, select the LUN.
2. Select the **Information** tab. The **LUN Information** tabbed page displays (see figure 9-18).


***Figure 9-18. LUN Information Tabbed Page***

The following information displays:

- **Product Vendor.** Manufacturer of the LUN
- **Product ID.** Product ID of the LUN
- **Product Revision.** Revision level of the LUN
- **LUN.** LUN number
- **World Wide Unique LUN Name (WWULN).** World wide name of the LUN
- **Size.** Capacity of the LUN in megabytes or gigabytes

*Section 10*

# Performing Diagnostics

Diagnostic tests interrupt normal adapter operations. The adapter's state before the tests are restored at the completion of the testing. Note the following:

- Run these tests when no other activities are required of the adapter.
- Tests read and write to sensitive areas on the adapter.
- Disruption of some diagnostic tests may require a complete update of the adapter's critical memory areas.

***NOTE:*** Although SANblade Manager protects against normal operation interruption and testing disruption, it is your responsibility to ensure that the diagnostics are run without causing interruptions to other processes and disruptions to the actual testing process.

The following diagnostic tests are available:

- **Loopback Test.** The loopback test is external to the adapter. If the HBA is in loop mode, you will need to install a loopback connector to perform the test. Some driver versions do not require a loopback connector; see section 10.1.2 for information.

  The test evaluates the ports (transmit and receive transceivers) on the adapter. More specifically, the loopback test transmits and receives (loopback) the specified data and checks for the frame CRC, disparity, and length errors.

  Perform the following steps to run a loopback test:

  1. Prepare for the test (see section 10.1).
  2. Set the diagnostic test parameters (see section 10.2).
  3. Run the diagnostic test (see section 10.3).
  4. View the diagnostic test results (see section 10.4).
  5. Prepare for normal adapter operations (see section 10.5).

- **Read/Write Buffer Test.** The read/write buffer test sends specified data through the SCSI Write Buffer command to a target device or tape. It then reads the data back through the SCSI Read Buffer command and compares the data for errors. The test also compares the link status of the device or tape before and after the read/write buffer test. If errors occur, the test indicates a broken or unreliable link between the adapter and the device/tape.

Perform the following steps to run a read/write buffer test:

1. Prepare for the test (see section 10.1).
2. Set the diagnostic test parameters (see section 10.2).
3. Run the diagnostic test (see section 10.3).
4. View the diagnostic test results (see section 10.4).

***NOTE:*** The loopback test must be run with the loopback connector (unless the operating system uses one of the driver versions in table 10-1); the read/write buffer test must be run without the loopback connector on a device or tape that supports the SCSI Read Buffer and SCSI Write Buffer commands.

## *10.1* Preparing for Diagnostic Testing

Preparation for the loopback and read/write buffer tests differs. In addition, you can use SANblade Manager to locate the adapter you want to test. See the following, as appropriate:

- Find the adapter you want to test (see section 10.1.1)
- Loopback test (see section 10.1.2)
- Read/write buffer test (see section 10.1.3)

### *10.1.1* Finding an Adapter

***NOTE:*** This feature is not supported on systems with only QLA231*x* series HBAs or only QLA22*xx* series HBAs.

You can flash the QLA23*xx* HBA's LED to locate the HBA in your computer by following these steps:

1. Right-click an adapter in the HBA tree.
2. Select **Flash Adapter Beacon** (see figure 10-1). The QLA23*xx* HBA's LED begins to flash.

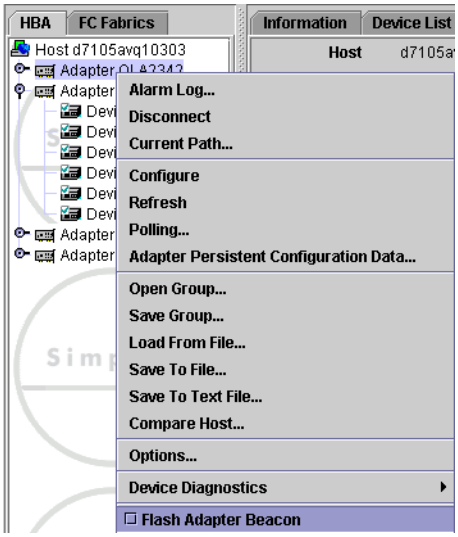



***Figure 10-1. Flash Adapter Beacon***

To stop the LED from flashing, follow these steps:

1. Right-click an adapter in the HBA tree.
2. Deselect **Adapter Beacon**.

### *10.1.2*
## Preparing for the Loopback Test

A loopback connector is not required if your operating system has one of the driver versions listed in table 10-1.

***Table 10-1. Driver Versions that Do Not Require a Loopback Connector***

| Operating System | Driver Version[a] |
|---|---|
| Windows 2000/Server 2003 with SCSI miniport driver | 8.2.3.11 |
| Windows Server 2003 with STORport miniport driver | 8.2.3.16 |
| Red Hat/SuSE Linux | 6.06.00 |
| Solaris SPARC | 4.12 |

Table Notes

[a]All subsequent versions also apply.

Perform the following steps before running the loopback test if the HBA is in loop mode:

1. Modify the adapter settings **Connection Options** setting (see section 10.1.2.1).
2. Attach a loopback connector to the Fibre Channel connector on the adapter (see section 10.1.2.2). Skip this step if your operating system has one of the driver versions in table 10-1.

If the adapter is connected to the fabric through a point-to-point connection (F-port) and is connected to a switch, make sure the **Connection Options** setting is 1—Point-to-Point Only (see section 11.1.1).

### *10.1.2.1*
## Modifying the Adapter Settings Connection Options Setting

Before running the loopback test, the adapter settings **Connection Options** setting must be 0—Loop Only. See section 11.1.1 for information about viewing and modifying the setting. Do the following:

1. Write down the current setting.
2. Change the setting to 0—Loop Only, if not currently set to this option.

After completing the loopback test, change the **Connection Options** setting back to its original value.

### *10.1.2.2*
## Installing a Loopback Connector

Before running the loopback test, you must install a loopback connector on the adapter. Note the following about the loopback connector:

- The loopback connector must be appropriate for the type of Fibre Channel adapter connector.
- Be sure to select the appropriate adapter connector for testing. Each adapter connector displays in the SANblade Manager main window HBA tree as an adapter. For example, assume a host is configured as follows:
  - The first adapter has one connector.
  - The second adapter has two connectors.

  In the HBA tree, these would display as follows:
  - The first adapter's connector would be Adapter 0.
  - The second adapter's first connector would be Adapter 1.
  - The second adapter's second connector would be Adapter 2.

Perform the following steps to install a loopback connector. Installing the connector stops normal adapter operations.

1. Disconnect the cable from the appropriate adapter connector.
2. Install the loopback connector on the adapter connector.

### *10.1.3* Preparing for the Read/Write Buffer Test

The read/write buffer test must be run on a device or tape. Before running the read/write buffer test, from the SANblade Manager main window HBA tree verify that the adapter is connected to at least one device or tape.

***NOTE:*** Some devices may not support Read/Write Buffer commands. Check with your hardware vendors or manufacturer.

You can run the read/write test on all devices or tapes attached to the adapter or to specific devices or tapes attached to the adapter.

To run the read/write test on *all* devices or tapes attached to an adapter, perform the following steps from the SANblade Manager main window:

1. Right-click an adapter in the HBA tree.
2. Select **Device Diagnostics**, then choose **Enable All Devices**. A check mark displays next to all the device and tape icons attached to the selected adapter.

To run the read/write test on *specific* devices attached to an adapter, perform the following steps from the SANblade Manager main window:

1. Right-click a device or tape in the HBA tree.
2. Select **Device Diagnostics**, then choose **Enable on Device**. A check mark displays next to the device or tape icon.
3. Repeat steps 1 and 2 for each device you want to test.

## *10.2*
# Setting the Diagnostic Test Parameters

Perform the following steps to set the loopback or read/write buffer test parameters:

1. From the SANblade Manager main window HBA tree, select the adapter.
2. Click the **Diagnostics** tab. The **Diagnostics** tabbed page displays (see figure 10-2). The diagnostic test parameters are in the Test Configuration section.

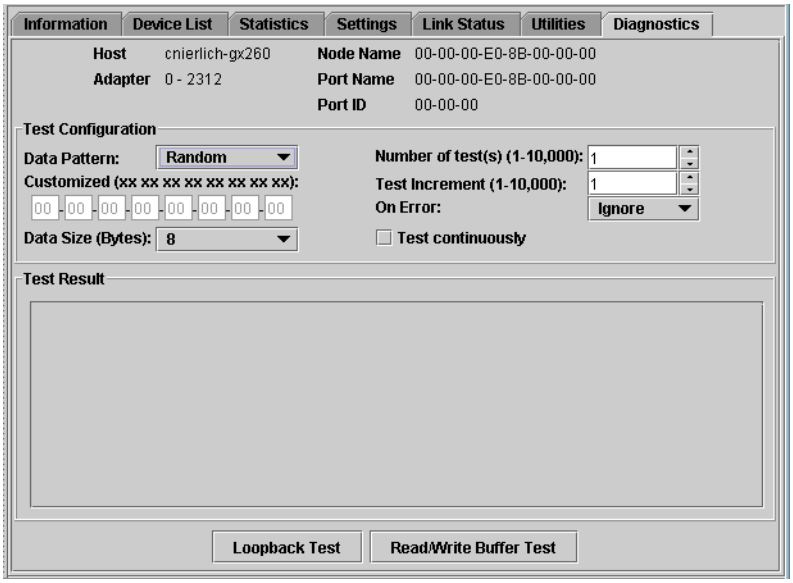



***Figure 10-2. Diagnostics Tabbed Page***

3. The data pattern sets the test pattern. In the **Data Pattern** box, do one of the following:
   - Select a data byte.
   - Select **Customized** to specify your own eight-byte pattern; then enter the data in hexadecimal format (0–FF) into the eight **Customized** boxes.
   - Select **Random** to randomly generate an eight-byte data pattern.
4. The data size sets the number of bytes transferred when the test is run. In the **Data Size** box, select the number of bytes to transfer. Valid values are 8, 16, 32, and 64.

   ***NOTE:*** Novell NetWare does not support the values 16, 32, or 64.

5. Do one of the following to set the test frequency:
   - ❑ In the **Number of Tests** box, type or select the number of tests you want to run. Testing stops when the passes complete. The valid range is between 1 and 10,000.
   - ❑ Select the **Test Continuously** check box. You determine when testing stops.
6. In the **On Error** box, select one of the following to determine how errors are handled. This selection applies whether you entered the number of tests or selected test continuously.
   - ❑ Ignore on Error
   - ❑ Stop on Error
   - ❑ Loop on Error. This selection uses the same data pattern and test until the failure is cleared.
7. In the **Test Increment** box, type or select the number of passes you want to run before the test stops. The valid range is between 1 and 10,000, and must be less than or equal to the value in the **Number of Tests** box (see step 5). For example, if the **Number of Tests** box contains 100 and the **Test Increment** box contains 15, 100 tests are run in seven passes. The first six passes run 15 tests each; the seventh pass runs 10 tests ($6 \times 15 + 10 = 100$).

   ***NOTE:*** The test runs this number of passes before it stops on an error (if **Stop on Error** was selected in step 6) or stops when you select to stop testing (if **Test Continuously** was selected in step 5).

## *10.3* Running Diagnostic Tests

Once you have set the test parameters as described in section 10.2, perform the following steps to run the loopback or read/write buffer test:

1. Click the **Loopback Test** or **Read/Write Buffer Test** button.
2. The diagnostic tests warning displays. Do one of the following:
   - ❑ Click **Yes** if there are no I/Os active and you want to proceed with the test.
   - ❑ Click **No** to cancel the diagnostic test.
3. If you selected **Yes** in step 2, a dialog box displays with the data pattern generated. Click **Stop** when you want to end the test.

***NOTE:*** An echo test is run instead of a loopback test under the following conditions:

- You have a QLA23*xx* adapter that is connected to the fabric through a point-to-point connection (F-port).
- Your operating system has one of the driver versions listed in table 10-1.

## *10.4* Viewing the Diagnostic Test Results

The test results section of the **Diagnostics** tabbed page displays the results of a test run (see figure 10-3). The **Test Status** column indicates whether the test passed or failed. The remaining information pertains to error counters.

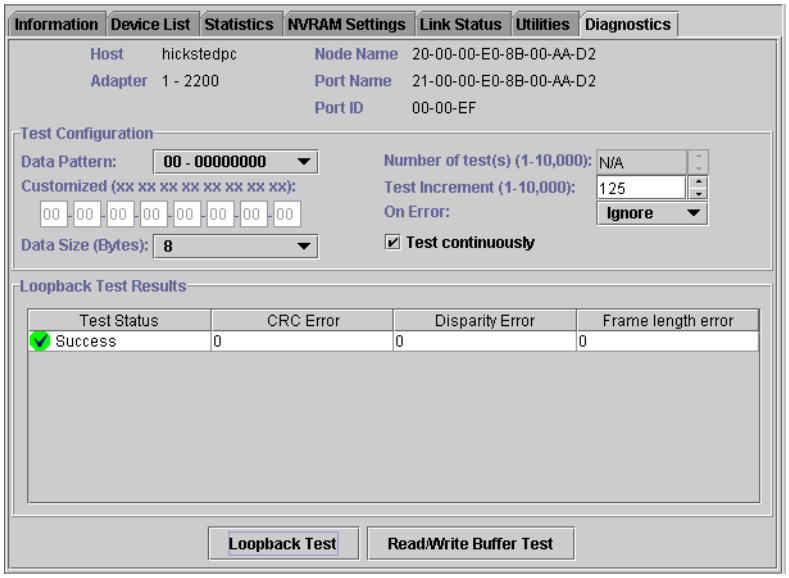



***Figure 10-3. Diagnostic Test Results Section***

This section discusses:

- Loopback test results (see section 10.4.1)
- Read/write buffer test results (see section 10.4.2)

### *10.4.1*
## Loopback Test Results

The Loopback Test Results section provides the following information:

- **Tests Status.** Whether the test passed or failed. The possible values:
  - **Success.** The test passed.
  - **Error.** CRC, disparity, or frame length errors occurred.
  - **Failed.** An error occurred when attempting to issue a command.
  - **Loop down.** The loop is down.
- **CRC Error.** Number of CRC errors
- **Disparity Error.** Number of disparity errors
- **Frame Length Error.** Number of frame length errors

Figure 10-3 shows a successful test. The **Test Status** column in figure 10-4 shows that the loopback test failed.

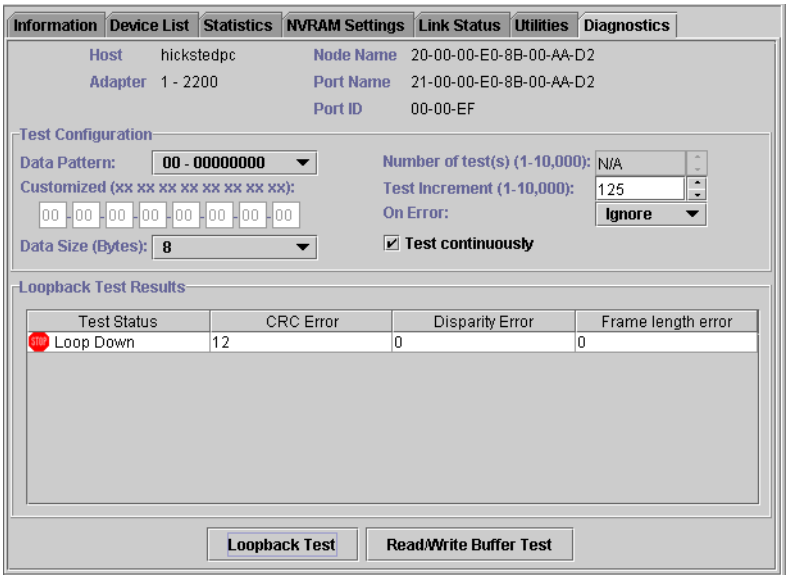



***Figure 10-4. Diagnostic Test Results—Loopback Test Failed***

### *10.4.2*
## Read/Write Buffer Test Results

The Read/Write Buffer Test Results section provides the following information, as shown in figure 10-5.

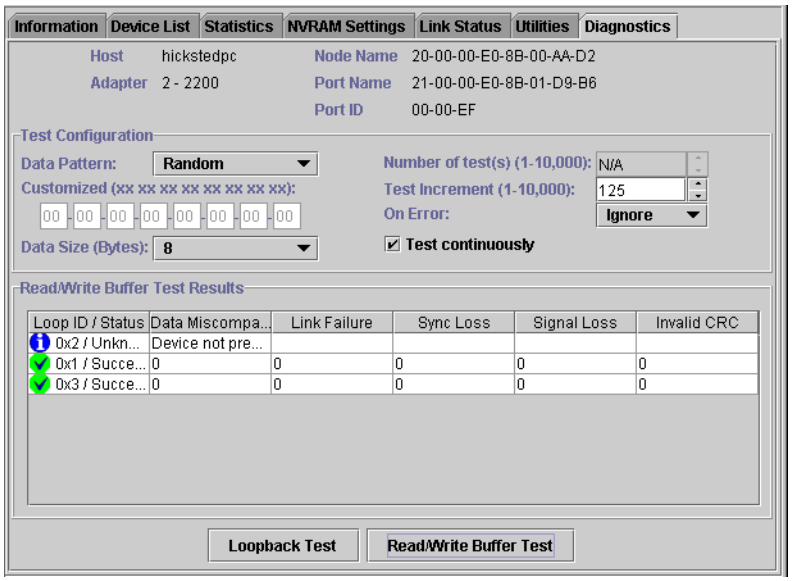



***Figure 10-5. Diagnostic Test Results—Read/Write Buffer Test***

- **Loop ID/Status**
  - The loop ID of the adapter when operating in loop mode.
  - The status of the test—whether the test passed or failed. The possible values:
    - **Success.** The test passed.
    - **Error.** A data miscompare or link status firmware error occurred.
    - **Failed.** A link status error, SCSI write buffer error, or SCSI read buffer error occurred.
    - **Unknown.** The target was not present.
    - **Unsupported.** The device or tape does not support this test.
- **Data Miscompare.** The possible values:
  - 0 (no data miscompares)
  - Get link status failed
  - Read buffer failed
  - R/W buffer not supported
  - Write buffer failed
  - Device not present

- **Link Failure.** Number of link failures
- **Sync Loss.** Number of sync loss errors
- **Signal Loss.** Number of signal loss errors
- **Invalid CRC.** Number of invalid CRCs

If the value in the **Data Miscompare** column is nonzero, you can view the miscompare information by double-clicking any column. The **Diagnostic Details** dialog box displays (see figure 10-6).

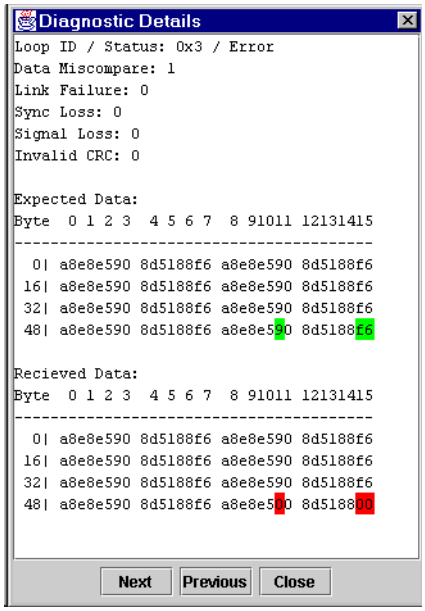



***Figure 10-6. Data Miscompare Results***

Do the following as appropriate:

- Click **Next** to view the details of the next miscompare.
- Click **Previous** to view the details of the previous miscompare.
- Click **Close** to return to the **Diagnostics** tabbed page.

*10.5*

## Preparing for Normal Adapter Operations

When loopback testing is complete, do the following to resume normal adapter operations:

1. Do the following to remove the loopback connector:

   a. Remove the loopback connector from the adapter connector.
   b. Reconnect the cable that you disconnected in section 10.1.2.2.

2. Modify the adapter settings **Connection Options** back to its previous setting (see section 10.1.2.1).

*Section 11*

# Updating the Adapter

You can update an adapter's nonvolatile RAM (NVRAM) settings and flash BIOS. You can also save these settings to a file. This section discusses:

- Updating adapter settings (see section 11.1)
- Restoring default NVRAM settings from a file (see section 11.2)
- Updating the flash BIOS from a file (see section 11.3)
- Updating the FCode (see section 11.4)
- Saving NVRAM, flash BIOS, and FCode (see section 11.5)

***NOTE:*** Flash BIOS applies only to Windows 2000/Server 2003 and Red Hat/SuSE Linux systems. FCode applies only to Solaris SPARC systems. Refer to the appropriate QLA2*xxx* adapter software installation guide for information about adapter configuration settings (see section 1.1).

## *11.1* Updating Adapter Settings

This section provides detailed configuration information for advanced users who want to customize the configuration of the QLA2*xxx* adapter and the connected devices.

***WARNING!!*** Changing adapter settings incorrectly can cause serious damage to your system.

The **Settings** tabbed page displays parameters that are saved in NVRAM. These settings configure Fibre Channel devices and the QLA2*xxx* adapter to which they are attached (see figure 11-1).

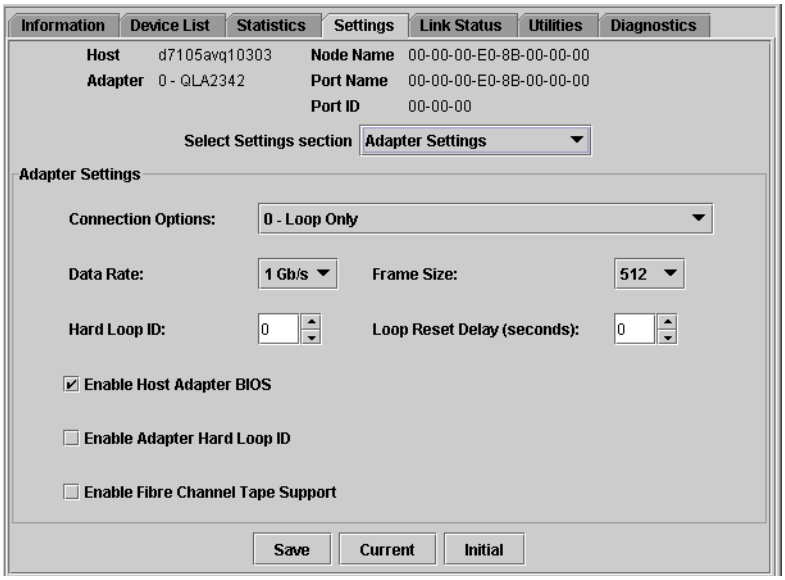



***Figure 11-1. Settings Tabbed Page (Adapter Settings)***

The identifying information displays:

- **Host.** Name of the host connected to the adapter
- **Adapter.** Adapter number and type
- **Node Name.** World wide adapter node name
- **Port Name.** World wide adapter port name
- **Port ID.** Port ID of the adapter

The bottom section displays one of three panels:

- Adapter Settings
- Advanced Adapter Settings
- Boot Device Selection

Perform the following steps to modify the settings for the selected adapters:

1. In the SANblade Manager main window HBA tree, select the adapter.

   If you want to configure multiple adapters with the same settings, hold the CTRL key while selecting multiple adapters. The adapters must be in the same series (QLA23*xx* HBAs or QLA22*xx* HBAs). When you select multiple adapters, the **Adapter Selection** drop-down box is displayed (see figure 11-2).

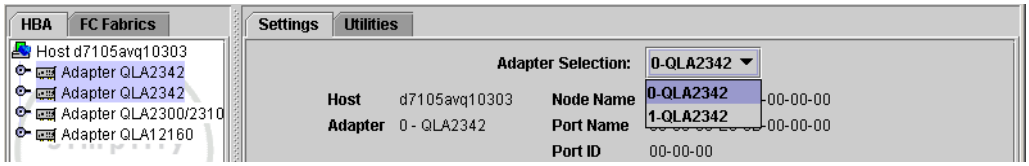



***Figure 11-2. Settings Tabbed Page—Multiple Adapters Selected***

***NOTE:*** Only the **Settings** (Adapter Settings and Advanced Adapter Settings) and **Utilities** tabbed pages can be configured for multiple adapters; therefore, the remaining tabbed pages do not display when multiple adapters are selected.

2. Select the **Settings** tab.
3. In the **Select Settings section** box, select the type of settings that you want to modify.
   - **Adapter Settings.** See section 11.1.1 for details.
   - **Advanced Adapter Settings**. See section 11.1.2 for details.
   - **Boot Device Selection.** See section 11.1.3 for details.
4. As appropriate, modify the settings. In the list boxes, type or select the setting. Select or clear the check boxes.
5. When finished modifying the adapter settings, do one of the following:
   - Click **Save** to save the updated settings to the adapter.

     The **Security Check** dialog box displays. In the **Enter Password** box, type the password. Click **OK**.

     The save message displays when the changes have been saved to the adapter.

     ***NOTE:***

     - You must reboot the adapter for the changes to take effect.
     - If you selected multiple adapters (Adapter Settings and Advanced Adapter Settings), the values are saved for all selected adapters.

- Click **Current** to restore the adapter settings that you previously saved.
- Click **Initial** to restore the adapter settings to their values when the system was first booted.

### *11.1.1* Adapter Settings

To view or modify the host adapter NVRAM settings, on the **Settings** tabbed page **Select Settings section** box, select **Adapter Settings**. The Adapter Settings section displays the current settings (see figure 11-3).

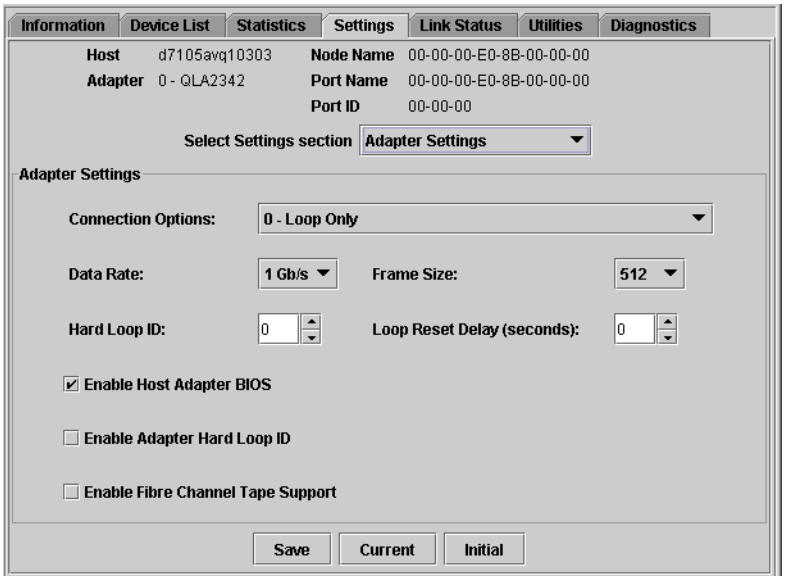



***Figure 11-3. Settings Tabbed Page (Adapter Settings)***

The default settings for the QLA2*xxx* adapter are listed in table 11-1 and described in the following paragraphs.

***Table 11-1. Adapter Settings***

| Setting | Options | Default |
|---|---|---|
| **Connection Options** | 0—Loop Only<br>1—Point-to-Point Only<br>2—Loop Preferred, Otherwise Point-to-Point<br>3—Point-to-Point, Otherwise Loop (QLA22*xx* adapter) | 3—Point-to-Point, Otherwise Loop (QLA22*xx* adapter)<br>2—Loop Preferred, Otherwise Point-to-Point (QLA23*xx* adapter) |
| **Data Rate** (QLA23*xx* adapter) | 1 Gbs, 2 Gbs, Auto | Auto |
| **Frame Size** | 512, 1024, 2048 | 1024 (QLA22*xx* adapter)<br>2048 (QLA23*xx* adapter) |
| **Hard Loop ID** | 0–125 | 0 |
| **Loop Reset Delay** | 0–60 seconds | 5 seconds |
| **Enable Host Adapter BIOS** | Enabled, Disabled | Disabled |
| **Enable Adapter Hard Loop ID** | Enabled, Disabled | Disabled |
| **Enable Fibre Channel Tape Support** | Enabled, Disabled | Disabled |

- **Connection Options.** This setting defines the type of connection (loop or point-to-point) or connection preference. For the QLA22*xx* adapter, the default is 3—Point-to-Point, Otherwise Loop. For the QLA23*xx* adapter, the default is 2—Loop Preferred, Otherwise Point-to-Point.
- **Data Rate.** This setting determines the QLA23*xx* adapter data rate. When this setting is 2 Gb, the QLA23*xx* adapter runs at 2 Gbps. When this setting is Auto, SANblade Manager determines what rate your system can accommodate and sets the rate accordingly. The default is 1 Gb (the QLA23*xx* adapter runs at 1 Gbps). This setting does not apply to the QLA22*xx* adapter.
- **Frame Size.** This setting specifies the maximum frame length supported by the QLA2*xxx* adapter. For the QLA22*xx* adapter, the default size is 1024. If using F-Port (point-to-point) connections, change this setting to 2048 for maximum performance.

  For the QLA23*xx* adapter, the default size is 2048, which provides maximum performance for F-Port (point-to-point) connections.

- **Hard Loop ID.** If the **Enable Adapter Hard Loop ID** setting is enabled, the adapter attempts to use the ID specified in this setting. The default ID is 0.
- **Loop Reset Delay.** After resetting the loop, the firmware refrains from initiating any loop activity for the number of seconds specified in this setting. The default is 5 seconds.
- **Enable Host Adapter BIOS.** When this setting is disabled, the ROM BIOS on the adapter is disabled, freeing space in upper memory. This setting must be enabled if you are booting from a Fibre Channel hard disk attached to the adapter. The default is disabled.
- **Enable Adapter Hard Loop ID.** This setting forces the adapter to attempt to use the ID specified in the **Hard Loop ID** setting. The default is disabled.
- **Enable Fibre Channel Tape Support.** This setting enables FCP-2 recovery. The default is disabled. This setting applies to the QLA23*xx* adapter.

### *11.1.2* Advanced Adapter Settings

To view or modify the advanced NVRAM settings, on the **Settings** tabbed page **Select Settings section** box select **Advanced Adapter Settings**. The Advanced Adapter Settings section displays the current settings (see figure 11-4).

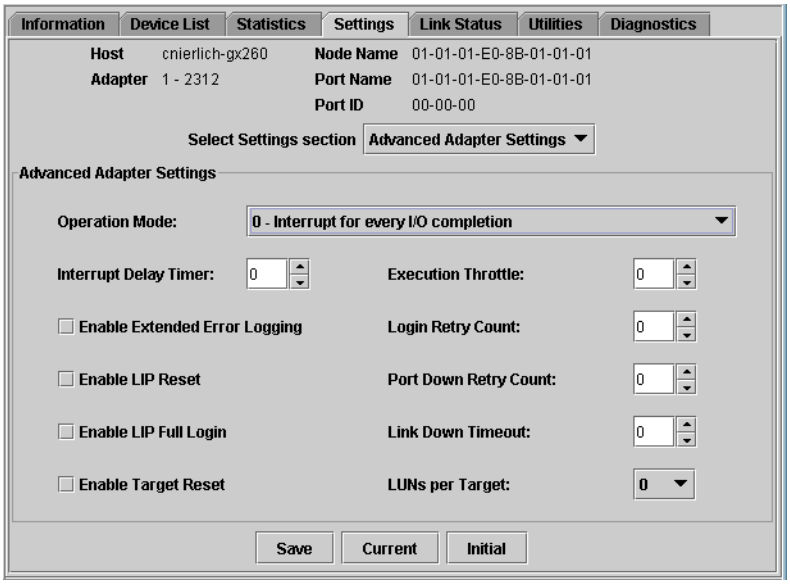



***Figure 11-4. Settings Tabbed Page (Advanced Adapter Settings)***

***NOTE:*** You must reboot the adapter for the changes to take effect.

The default settings for the QLA2*xxx* adapter are listed in table 11-2 and described in the following paragraphs.

***Table 11-2. Advanced Adapter Settings***

| Setting | Options | Default |
|---|---|---|
| **Operation Mode** | 0—Interrupt for every I/O completion<br>5—Interrupt when interrupt delay timer expires<br>6—Interrupt when interrupt delay timer expires or no active I/O | 0—Interrupt for every I/O completion |
| **Interrupt Delay Timer** | 0–255 | 0 |
| **Execution Throttle** | 1–256 | 16 |
| **Enable Extended Error Logging** | Enabled, Disabled | Disabled |
| **Login Retry Count** | 0–255 | 8 |
| **Enable LIP Reset** | Enabled, Disabled | Disabled |
| **Port Down Retry Count** | 0–255 | 8 |
| **Enable LIP Full Login** | Enabled, Disabled | Enabled |
| **Link Down Timeout** | 0–255 | 15 |
| **Enable Target Reset** | Enabled, Disabled | Disabled |
| **Fast Error Reporting** | Enabled, Disabled | Disabled |
| **Link Down Error** | Enabled, Disabled | Enabled |
| **LUNS per Target** | 0, 8, 16, 32, 64, 128, 256 | 8 |

- **Operation Mode** (Windows 2000/Server 2003 and Red Hat/SuSE Linux)**.** This setting specifies the reduced interrupt operation (RIO) modes, if supported by the software driver. RIO modes allow posting multiple command completions in a single interrupt. The default is 0—Interrupt for every I/O operation. This setting applies to the QLA23*xx* adapter. When this setting is 0, the **Interrupt Delay Timer** setting is disabled.
- **Interrupt Delay Timer** (Windows 2000/Server 2003 and Red Hat/SuSE Linux)**.** This setting contains the value (in 100-microsecond increments) used by a timer to set the wait time between accessing (DMA) a set of handles and generating an interrupt. The default is 0. This setting applies to the QLA23*xx* adapter and is enabled only when the **Operation Mode** setting is 5 or 6. When the **Operation Mode** setting is 0, this setting is disabled.
- **Execution Throttle.** This setting specifies the maximum number of commands executing on any one port. When a port's execution throttle is reached, no new commands are executed until the current command finishes executing. The valid options for this setting are 1–256. The default is 16.

- **Enable Extended Error Logging.** This setting provides additional error and debug information to the operating system. The default is disabled.

  When enabled in Windows 2000/Server 2003, events are logged into the Event Viewer.

  When enabled in Solaris SPARC, events are logged into the /var/adm/messages file.

  When enabled in Red Hat/SuSE Linux, events are logged into the /var/log/messages file.

- **Login Retry Count.** This setting specifies the number of times the software tries to log in to a device. The default is 8 retries.
- **Enable LIP Reset.** This setting determines the type of LIP reset that is used when the operating system initiates a bus reset routine. When this setting is enabled, the driver initiates a global LIP reset to clear the target device reservations. When this setting is disabled, the driver initiates a global LIP reset with full login. The default is disabled.
- **Port Down Retry Count.** This setting specifies the number of times the software retries a command to a port returning port down status. The default is 8 retries.
- **Enable LIP Full Login.** This setting instructs the ISP chip to re-login to all ports after any loop initialization process (LIP). The default is enabled.
- **Link Down Timeout** (not supported in Novell NetWare)**.** This setting specifies the time the driver waits for the link to come up after link down before returning the I/Os. This is analogous to the **Port Down Retry Count** setting, which is used when the port is down. Valid values for the **Link Down Timeout** setting are in the range 0–255. A value of 0 indicates that the previous algorithm is used. A value in the range 1–255 indicates the number of seconds that the driver waits for link to come up before returning the I/Os.
- **Enable Target Reset.** This setting enables the drivers to issue a Target Reset command to all devices on the loop when a SCSI Bus Reset command is issued. The default is disabled.
- **Fast Error Reporting** (Solaris SPARC)**.** This setting instructs the driver to remove the delay between I/O command errors sent during a loop down condition. This delay is not necessary when failover is used. The default is disabled.

- **Link Down Error** (Solaris SPARC)**.** This setting enables/disables error reporting to the operating system during a loop down condition. If this setting is disabled during a loop down condition, the driver holds the I/O commands until the loop is back up, then re-issues the commands. The default is enabled.
- **LUNs per Target.** This setting specifies the number of LUNs per target. Multiple LUN support is typically for RAID boxes that use LUNs to map drives. The default is 8. If you do not need multiple LUN support, set the number of LUNs to 0.

### *11.1.3*
## Boot Device Selection

***NOTE:***

- This option is not available on Novell NetWare.
- This option cannot be set for multiple adapters (only the Adapter Settings and Advanced Adapter Settings options apply to multiple adapters).

To view or select a target device as a boot device for an adapter, on the **Settings** tabbed page **Select Settings section** box, select **Boot Device Selection**. The Boot Device Selection section displays the current settings (see figure 11-5).

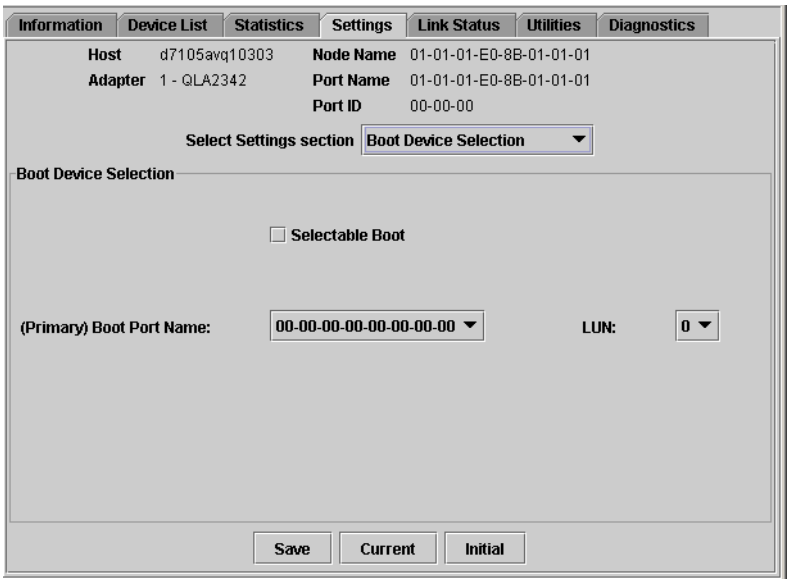



***Figure 11-5. Settings Tabbed Page (Boot Device Selection)***

- **Selectable Boot** (Windows 2000/Server 2003)**.** At the time of publication, this feature was not yet implemented.
- (**Primary) Boot Port Name.** Select the word wide port name of the target from which you want to boot. When a valid target word wide port name is selected, the operating system boots from that target.

  In Windows 2000/Server 2003, when "00-00.....00-00" is selected in the **Primary Boot Port Name** drop-down menu, the operating system boots from the first target it finds with LUN 0.

  In Solaris SPARC, when "00-00.....00-00" is selected in the **Primary Boot Port Name** drop-down menu, all boot device information is cleared.

- **LUN.** Select the LUN of the target from which you want to boot. This option is used with the **(Primary) Boot Port Name** to verify the boot device.
- **Target ID** (Solaris SPARC)**.** This read-only field designates the target ID of the device from which the operating system will boot.

***NOTE:*** When performing boot device selection and target persistent binding on Solaris SPARC, note the following:

If a target device is selected as the boot device, the **Bind** check box and the **Target ID** field in the **Target Persistent Binding** tabbed page are disabled for the corresponding target. In addition, the **Bind** check box is checked, indicating that the target is already persistently bound with the given target ID (in the NVRAM). The corresponding target ID is taken; you cannot assign the same target ID to another other target on the same HBA.

## *11.2* Restoring Default NVRAM Settings from a File

***WARNING!!*** Changing NVRAM incorrectly can cause serious damage to your system.

Perform the following steps to restore the default NVRAM settings from a file:

1. In the SANblade Manager main window HBA tree, select the adapter.

   If you want to configure multiple adapters with the same settings, hold the CTRL key while selecting multiple adapters. The adapters must be the same model, for example, all QLA2340 HBAs.

   ***NOTE:*** Only the **Settings** (Adapter Settings and Advanced Adapter Settings) and **Utilities** tabbed pages can be configured for multiple adapters; therefore, the remaining tabbed pages do not display when multiple adapters are selected.

2. Click the **Utilities** tab. The **Utilities** tabbed page displays (see figure 11-6).

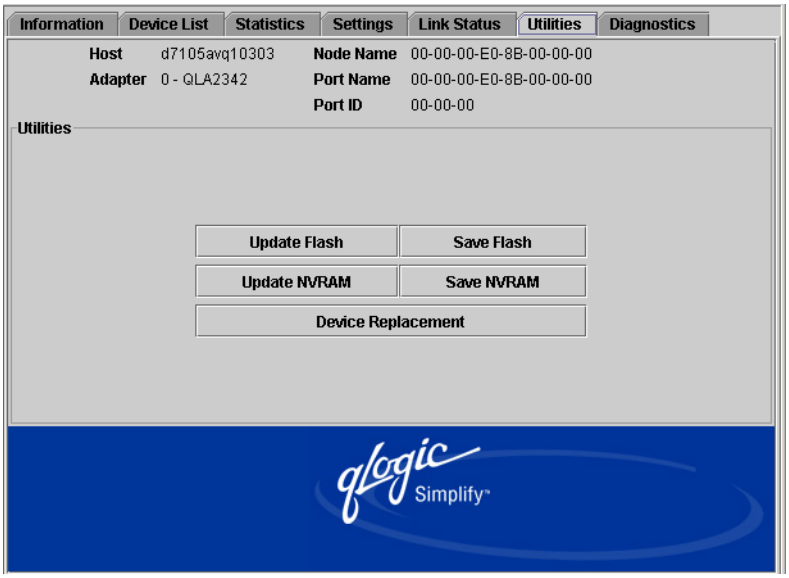



***Figure 11-6. Utilities Tabbed Page***

***NOTE:*** If you selected multiple adapters, the **Save NVRAM**, **Save BIOS** (Windows 2000/Server 2003 and Red Hat/SuSE Linux), and **Save Fcode** (Solaris SPARC) radio buttons do not display. These options cannot be performed with multiple adapters.

The identifying information displays:

- **Host.** Name of the host connected to the adapter
- **Adapter.** Adapter number and type
- **Node Name.** World wide adapter node name
- **Port Name.** World wide adapter port name
- **Port ID.** Port ID of the adapter

3. Click the **Update NVRAM** button.
4. Select the file that contains the default NVRAM settings. You can obtain this file from service personnel. The file typically ends with .dat, such as nvram22.dat.

   If the file you select is not an acceptable NVRAM data file for the adapter, the not an acceptable NVRAM data file message displays. Select a valid file, then click **OK**.
5. The **Security Check** dialog box displays. In the **Enter Password** box, type the password. Click **OK**.

6. The tabbed page appears dimmed during the update. When complete, the NVRAM save complete message displays.
7. Reboot the system.

## *11.3* Updating the Flash BIOS from a File

***NOTE:*** The SANblade Manager flash BIOS update feature is available only on Windows 2000/Server 2003 and Red Hat/SuSE Linux systems. It is not available on NetWare (the **Update Flash** button appears dimmed on the **Utilities** tabbed page). This feature is also not available on Solaris SPARC systems (the **Update Flash** button is replaced with the **Update FCode** button, which appears dimmed on the **Utilities** tabbed page).

***WARNING!!*** Changing flash BIOS incorrectly can cause serious damage to your system.

Perform the following steps to update the flash BIOS:

1. In the SANblade Manager main menu HBA tree, select the adapter.

   If you want to configure multiple adapters with the same settings, hold the CTRL key while selecting multiple adapters. The adapters must be in the same series: QLA231*x* HBAs, QLA234*x* HBAs, or QLA22*xx* HBAs.

   ***NOTE:*** Only the **Settings** (Adapter Settings and Advanced Adapter Settings) and **Utilities** tabbed pages can be configured for multiple adapters; therefore, the remaining tabbed pages do not display when multiple adapters are selected.

2. Click the **Utilities** tab. The **Utilities** tabbed page displays (see figure 11-7).


***Figure 11-7. Utilities Tabbed Page***

***NOTE:*** If you selected multiple adapters, the **Save NVRAM**, **Save BIOS** (Windows 2000/Server 2003 and Red Hat/SuSE Linux), and **Save Fcode** (Solaris SPARC) radio buttons do not display. These options cannot be performed with multiple adapters.

The identifying information displays:

- **Host.** Name of the host connected to the adapter
- **Adapter.** Adapter number and type
- **Node Name.** World wide adapter node name
- **Port Name.** World wide adapter port name
- **Port ID.** Port ID of the adapter

3. Click the **Update Flash** button.
4. Select the file that contains the flash BIOS. You can obtain this file from the QLogic Web site or service personnel. The file typically ends with .bin, such as ql22rom.bin.

   If you select a file that is not an acceptable flash BIOS file for the adapter, the not an acceptable flash BIOS data file message displays. Select a valid file, then click **OK**.
5. The **Security Check** dialog box displays. In the **Enter Password** box, type the password. Click **OK**.

6. The tabbed page appears dimmed during the update. When complete, the flash BIOS update complete message displays.
7. Reboot the system.

## *11.4* Updating the FCode

***NOTE:*** The SANblade Manager update FCode feature is available only on Solaris SPARC systems. It is not available on Windows 2000/Server 2003, NetWare, or Red Hat/SuSE Linux (the **Update FCode** button does not display on the **Utilities** tabbed page).

Perform the following steps to update the FCode:

1. In the SANblade Manager main menu HBA tree, select the adapter.

   If you want to configure multiple adapters with the same settings, hold the CTRL key while selecting multiple adapters. The adapters must be in the same series (QLA23*xx* HBAs or QLA22*xx* HBAs).

   ***NOTE:*** Only the **Settings** (Adapter Settings and Advanced Adapter Settings) and **Utilities** tabbed pages can be configured for multiple adapters; therefore, the remaining tabbed pages do not display when multiple adapters are selected.

2. Click the **Utilities** tab. The **Utilities** tabbed page displays (see figure 11-8).

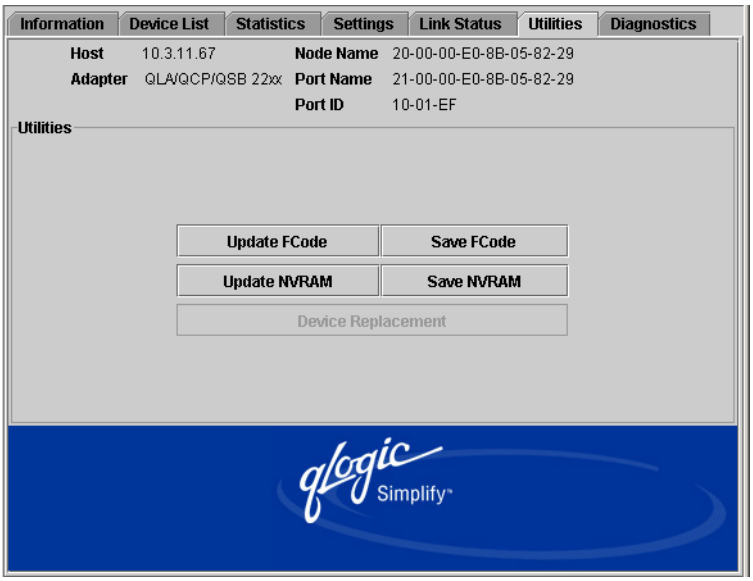



***Figure 11-8. Utilities Tabbed Page (Solaris SPARC)***

***NOTE:*** If you selected multiple adapters, the **Save NVRAM**, **Save BIOS** (Windows 2000/Server 2003 and Red Hat/SuSE Linux), and **Save Fcode** (Solaris SPARC) radio buttons do not display. These options cannot be performed with multiple adapters.

3. Click the **Update FCode** button.
4. Click the **Select Input File** button to select the file from which to update. Make sure you select the correct file. It must end with a .prom extension. Note that FCode files are unique to each HBA model.

   If you select a file that is not an acceptable FCode file for the adapter, the not an acceptable FCode data file message displays. Select a valid file, then click **OK**.

   ***CAUTION!*** Using the wrong file can render the HBA and the OS unusable.

5. After selecting the file, click the **Update** button to update the FCode.

Once the FCode is updated, the status is displayed in the Update Status box at the bottom of the page.

## *11.5* Save the NVRAM, Flash BIOS, and FCode

The NVRAM, Flash BIOS, and FCode are saved from the **Utilities** tabbed page (see figure 11-9).


***Figure 11-9. Utilities Tabbed Page (Save NVRAM, Flash BIOS, and FCode)***

In Solaris SPARC, the **Save Flash** button is replaced by the **Save FCode** button. The **Device Replacement** button is dimmed; this option is not available.

***NOTE:*** You cannot save the NVRAM, flash BIOS, or FCode for multiple HBAs.

Perform the following steps to save the current NVRAM, flash BIOS, or FCode to a file:

1. Click the appropriate button:
   - **Save NVRAM**
   - **Save Flash** (Windows 2000/Server 2003 and Red Hat/SuSE Linux)
   - **Save FCode** (Solaris SPARC)
2. Click the **Select Output File** button to select the file where the configuration will be saved.
3. The **Save As** dialog box displays. Select a file or type a file name in the **File Name** box.
4. Click **Save**.
5. The configuration is saved to the appropriate file and the File Save Successful dialog box displays. Click **OK**.

# *Section 12*
# Troubleshooting

Problems can occur when installing and using the SANblade Manager application.

This section discusses:

- Troubleshooting problems and solutions (see section 12.1)
- Tracing SANblade Manager GUI and agent activity (debug), as directed by technical support (see section 12.2)

## *12.1* Troubleshooting Problems and Solutions

Table 12-1 lists problems that can occur when using the SANblade Manager application, including their causes and solutions.

***Table 12-1. Troubleshooting Problems and Solutions***

| Problem | Cause and Solution |
|---|---|
| **SANblade Manager Installation** | |
| *Installation does not run* | **Cause:** You are not using the correct installation program or the downloaded installation file is corrupted.<br>**Solution:**<br>■ If running from CD-ROM, verify that the installation is run from the start page. If javascript is turned on in the browser, the CD-ROM automatically detects the operating system and presents the appropriate installation program.<br>■ If the installation program was downloaded, it may be corrupted. Download the program again, this time to a different directory; perform the installation. |
| *Installation does not complete or terminates before completion* | **Cause:** There is insufficient disk space or not enough available memory.<br>**Solution:** The installation detects when there is insufficient disk space. Once sufficient disk space is available, continue the installation. For disk space requirements, see section 4.1 or the readme.txt file. |
| *Installation does not copy files* | **Cause:** There is insufficient disk space or not enough available memory.<br>**Solution:** The installation detects when there is insufficient disk space. Once sufficient disk space is available, continue the installation. For disk space requirements, see section 4.1 or the readme.txt file. |

***Table 12-1. Troubleshooting Problems and Solutions (Continued)***

| Problem | Cause and Solution |
|---|---|
| *Installation reports that there is no space available* | **Cause:** There is insufficient disk space or not enough available memory.<br>**Solution:** The installation detects when there is insufficient disk space. Once sufficient disk space is available, continue the installation. For disk space requirements, see section 4.1 or the readme.txt file. |
| **SANblade Manager GUI/Remote Agent** | |
| *Unable to start the SANblade Manager GUI using the desktop shortcut (**SANsurfer** icon)* | **Cause:** The desktop shortcut has an invalid path or SANblade Manager was not completely installed.<br>**Solution:** Verify that the desktop shortcut points to the SANsurfer.exe file. This program is installed by default in the C:\Program Files\QLogic Corporation\SANsurfer directory for Windows 2000/Server 2003 and NetWare (GUI only). |
| *SANblade Manager GUI starts then hangs indefinitely.* | **Cause:** There is insufficient memory.<br>**Solution:** For physical RAM requirements, see section 4.1 or the readme.txt file. |
| *SANblade Manager GUI cannot connect to the local host* | **Cause:** The qlremote agent is not running or an incorrect system name was entered.<br>**Solution:**<br>■ Verify that the qlremote agent is installed and running:<br>  ■ For Windows 2000/Server 2003, open the Services window and verify that the QLogic Management Suite Java agent service is running.<br>  ■ For NetWare, at the server command prompt type the following and then press ENTER. Verify that qlremote.nlm is loaded.<br>  `modules q*`<br>  ■ For Red Hat/SuSE Linux, type the following command and then press ENTER. If entries display, qlremote is running.<br>  `ps ax \| grep qlremote`<br>  ■ For Solaris SPARC, type the following command and then press ENTER. If entries display, qlremote is running.<br>  `ps -e \| grep qlremote`<br>■ If typing the host name in the **Connect to Host** dialog box, verify that you are typing the correct name. Refer to the system server information to check the system name. From the **Connect to Host** dialog box, select **localhost**.<br>■ The DNS or the local host file may contain an incorrect IP address for the host name. Use the Ping command to ping the host name; verify that the correct IP address is translated from the name. |

***Table 12-1. Troubleshooting Problems and Solutions (Continued)***

| Problem | Cause and Solution |
|---|---|
| *SANblade Manager GUI cannot disconnect from the local host* | **Cause:** The qlremote agent or the SANblade Manager GUI is not responding.<br>**Solution:** Verify that the qlremote agent is installed and running:<br>■ For Windows 2000/Server 2003, open the Services window and verify that the QLogic Management Suite Java agent service is running.<br>■ For NetWare, at the server command prompt type the following and then press ENTER. Verify that qlremote.nlm is loaded.<br>`modules q*`<br>■ For Red Hat/SuSE Linux, type the following command and then press ENTER. If entries display, qlremote is running.<br>`ps -ax \| grep qlremote`<br>■ For Solaris SPARC, type the following command and then press ENTER. If entries display, qlremote is running.<br>`ps -e \| grep qlremote` |
| *SANblade Manager GUI cannot connect to a remote host* | **Cause:** The qlremote agent is not installed on the remote system or the network protocol is not properly configured.<br>**Solution:**<br>■ Verify that the qlremote agent is installed on the remote host. See sections 4 and 5.1 for network requirements. See section 7.1 for instructions on how to configure and manage remote hosts. Verify that the appropriate network protocol is running.<br>■ The DNS or the local host file may contain an incorrect IP address for the host name. Use the Ping command to ping the host name; verify that the correct IP address is translated from the name. |

***Table 12-1. Troubleshooting Problems and Solutions (Continued)***

| Problem | Cause and Solution |
|---|---|
| *SANblade Manager GUI cannot disconnect from a remote host* | **Cause:** The qlremote agent service has stopped or is unable to establish a network link.<br>**Solution:**<br>■ Verify that the remote host is running the qlremote agent:<br>■ For Windows 2000/Server 2003, open the Services window and verify that the QLogic Management Suite Java agent service is running.<br>■ For NetWare, at the server command prompt type the following and then press ENTER. Verify that qlremote.nlm is loaded.<br>`modules q*`<br>■ For Red Hat/SuSE Linux, type the following command and then press ENTER. If entries display, qlremote is running.<br>`ps -ax \| grep qlremote`<br>■ For Solaris SPARC, type the following command and then press ENTER. If entries display, qlremote is running.<br>`ps -e \| grep qlremote`<br>■ Verify that the remote host can be accessed through the network. Use the Ping command to verify communication with the remote host name and IP address. |
| *SANblade Manager GUI does not find/display any adapters* | **Cause:** An incorrect operating system driver is loaded or the qlremote agent is not installed.<br>**Solution:**<br>■ Verify that the appropriate operating system driver is loaded. Refer to the readme.txt file for supported operating system drivers.<br>■ Verify that the qlremote agent is running on the local or remote host. Check agent logs for any problems while querying information (see section 12.2.2). |
| *SANblade Manager GUI does not find/display any devices* | **Cause:** The operating system driver did not find devices during the initial load.<br>**Solution:** Verify that the operating system driver detects the devices. If the operating driver does not detect devices, neither does SANblade Manager. Check agent logs for any problems while querying information (see section 12.2.2). |
| *SANblade Manager GUI reports that the adapter device driver is invalid or incorrect* | **Cause:** An incorrect or unsupported operating system driver is installed.<br>**Solution:** Refer to the readme.txt file for a list of supported operating system drivers. |

***Table 12-1. Troubleshooting Problems and Solutions (Continued)***

| Problem | Cause and Solution |
|---|---|
| *Unable to find SANblade Manager GUI online help* | **Cause:** The path to the browser is not correctly specified.<br>**Solution:** In the SANblade Manager main window **Help** menu, select **Set Browser Location** to specify the path (see section 6.4.2). See section 4.2 for supported browsers. |
| *SANblade Manager GUI does not automatically refresh* | **Cause:** There is a disconnect with the qlremote agent or network communication has stopped.<br>**Solution:**<br>■ Verify that the qlremote agent is installed and running:<br>■ For Windows 2000/Server 2003, open the Services window and verify that the QLogic Management Suite Java agent service is running.<br>■ For NetWare, at the server command prompt type the following and then press ENTER. Verify that qlremote.nlm is loaded.<br>`modules q*`<br>■ For Red Hat/SuSE Linux and Solaris SPARC, change to the following directory:<br>`cd /usr/local/bin`<br>Type the following command and then press ENTER. Verify that the appropriate network protocol is running.<br>`./qlremote -v`<br>■ For network requirements, see sections 4 and 5.1. |
| *SANblade Manager GUI loses the connection to a host* | **Cause:** There is a disconnect with the qlremote agent or network communication has stopped.<br>**Solution:**<br>■ Verify that qlremote is installed and running:<br>■ For Windows 2000/Server 2003, open the Services window and verify that the QLogic Management Suite Java agent service is running.<br>■ For NetWare, at the server command prompt type the following and then press ENTER. Verify that qlremote.nlm is loaded.<br>`modules q*`<br>■ For Red Hat/SuSE Linux, type the following command and then press ENTER. If entries display, qlremote is loaded.<br>`ps -ax \| grep qlremote`<br>■ For Solaris SPARC, type the following command and then press ENTER. If entries display, qlremote is running.<br>`ps -e \| grep qlremote`<br>■ Verify that the appropriate network protocol is running. |

***Table 12-1. Troubleshooting Problems and Solutions (Continued)***

| Problem | Cause and Solution |
|---|---|
| *SANblade Manager GUI loses the connection to an adapter or a device* | **Cause:** There is a disconnect with the qlremote agent or the operating system driver has lost communication with the adapter or device.<br>**Solution:**<br>■ Verify that qlremote is installed and running:<br>■ For Windows 2000/Server 2003, open the Services window and verify that the QLogic Management Suite Java agent service is running.<br>■ For NetWare, at the server command prompt type the following and then press ENTER. Verify that qlremote.nlm is loaded.<br>`modules q*`<br>■ For Red Hat/SuSE Linux, type the following command and then press ENTER. If entries display, qlremote is loaded.<br>`ps -ax \| grep qlremote`<br>■ For Solaris SPARC, type the following command and then press ENTER. If entries display, qlremote is running.<br>`ps -e \| grep qlremote`<br>■ Verify that the operating system driver detects the adapter or device. |

***Table 12-1. Troubleshooting Problems and Solutions (Continued)***

| Problem | Cause and Solution |
|---|---|
| *SANblade Manager GUI crashes* | **Cause:** SANblade Manager GUI lost communication with the qlremote agent, another application caused a conflict with SANblade Manager, or an operating system driver lost communication with the adapter or device.<br>**Solution:**<br>■ Verify that the qlremote agent is installed and running:<br>■ For Windows 2000/Server 2003, open the Services window and verify that the QLogic Management Suite Java agent service is running.<br>■ For NetWare, at the server command prompt type the following and then press ENTER. Verify that qlremote.nlm is loaded.<br>`modules q*`<br>■ For Red Hat/SuSE Linux and Solaris SPARC, change to the following directory:<br>`cd /usr/local/bin`<br>Type the following command and then press ENTER. Verify that the appropriate network protocol is running.<br>`./qlremote -v`<br>■ Verify that no other application is causing SANblade Manager to crash.<br>■ Verify that the operating system driver detects the adapter or device. |
| *Host keeps disconnecting from and connecting to the HBA tree* | **Cause:** Fibre Channel protocol activity caused the qlremote agent to rescan the configuration.<br>**Solution:** If SANblade Manager is managing several hosts and a remote host reboots or there is activity in the SAN, the qlremote agent and SANblade Manager refresh the configuration to make certain that no adapter or device was disconnected. |
| **Functional** | |
| *Unable to create failover configuration* | **Cause:** An incorrect version of SANblade Manager is installed or SANblade Manager detected an invalid configuration.<br>**Solution:** To create a failover configuration, the following criteria must be met:<br>■ The host system must contain two or more adapters.<br>■ The storage subsystem must report the same device node name and separate device port names for each port.<br>■ The storage subsystem must report the same total number of LUNs down each path.<br>■ The storage subsystem must report the same LUN numbers for each port. |

***Table 12-1. Troubleshooting Problems and Solutions (Continued)***

| Problem | Cause and Solution |
|---|---|
| *Unable to create load balance configuration* | **Cause:** SANblade Manager detected an invalid configuration.<br>**Solution:** In order to enable load balancing, each storage subsystem must report multiple LUNs. If a JBOD (just a bunch of disks) is used, each device must be individually configured and manually balanced. |
| *Unable to mask LUNs* | **Cause:** The LUN path is unconfigured.<br>**Solution:** In the **Fibre Channel Configuration** dialog box, set the device path to visible (or hidden, if a failover configuration will be saved). |
| *Unable to set device path as visible, hidden, or unconfigured* | **Cause:** The SANblade Manager GUI or qlremote agent did not detect any devices.<br>**Solution:** Verify that the SANblade Manager GUI displays the devices under their adapters in the HBA tree. Each device should display its device port name and its connected LUNs. |
| *Unable to set LUN path as preferred or alternate* | **Cause:** The LUN path is not configured or the devices were not detected by the SANblade Manager GUI or qlremote agent.<br>**Solution:** Verify that the SANblade Manager GUI displays the devices under their adapters in the HBA tree. Each device should display its Device Port Name and its connected LUNs. |
| *Unable to get host Information* | **Cause:** The qlremote agent is not running or installed.<br>**Solution:** Verify that the qlremote agent is installed and running:<br>■ For Windows 2000/Server 2003, open the Services window and verify that the QLogic Management Suite Java agent service is running.<br>■ For NetWare, at the server command prompt type the following and then press ENTER. Verify that qlremote.nlm is loaded.<br>`modules q*`<br>■ For Red Hat/SuSE Linux, type the following command and then press ENTER. If entries display, qlremote is running.<br>`ps -ax \| grep qlremote`<br>■ For Solaris SPARC, type the following command and then press ENTER. If entries display, qlremote is running.<br>`ps -e \| grep qlremote` |
| *Unable to display the Host Statistics tabbed page* | **Cause:** QLdirect is not installed.<br>**Solution:** The **Host Statistics** tab displays only when the QLdirect driver is installed. This option is available only for Windows 2000/Server 2003. |

***Table 12-1. Troubleshooting Problems and Solutions (Continued)***

| Problem | Cause and Solution |
|---|---|
| *Unable to display Adapter Information, Adapter Statistics, Device List, or Link Status* | **Cause:** The qlremote agent is not running or is not installed.<br>**Solution:** Verify that the qlremote agent is installed and running:<br>■ For Windows 2000/Server 2003, open the Services window and verify that the QLogic Management Suite Java agent service is running.<br>■ For NetWare, at the server command prompt type the following and then press ENTER. Verify that qlremote.nlm is loaded.<br>`modules q*`<br>■ For Red Hat/SuSE Linux, type the following command and then press ENTER. If entries display, qlremote is running.<br>`ps -ax \| grep qlremote`<br>■ For Solaris SPARC, type the following command and then press ENTER. If entries display, qlremote is running.<br>`ps -e \| grep qlremote` |
| *Unable to display or modify the NVRAM settings* | **Cause:** An unsupported BIOS version is installed or no NVRAM content is detected in the adapter.<br>**Solution:** For the minimum BIOS version supported, see the readme.txt file. |
| *Unable to run update NVRAM* | **Cause:** This feature is not supported for all operating systems or no NVRAM content is detected in the adapter.<br>**Solution:** This utility is available only for Windows 2000/Server 2003, Red Hat/SuSE Linux, and Novell NetWare. |
| *Unable to run update flash BIOS* | **Cause:** This feature is not supported for all operating systems.<br>**Solution:** The Update Flash utility is available only for Windows 2000/Server 2003 and Red Hat/SuSE Linux. |
| *Unable to run device replacement* | **Cause:** Device removal is not detected or a new device was not inserted.<br>**Solution:** Device replacement requires that the device to be replaced be removed and that the new device be inserted before running the Device Replacement utility. |
| *Unable to run the loopback test* | **Cause:** A loopback connector was not attached to the Fibre Channel connector on the adapter.<br>**Solution:** A loopback connector must be attached to the Fibre Channel connector on adapter. The NVRAM extended firmware setting **Connection Options** must be set to 0—Loop Only. See section 10.1.2.2 for details. |

***Table 12-1. Troubleshooting Problems and Solutions (Continued)***

| Problem | Cause and Solution |
|---|---|
| *Unable to run the read/write buffer test* | **Cause:** The device does not support SCSI Read/Write Buffer commands.<br>**Solution:** Not all devices support the SCSI Read/Write Buffer commands. The read/write buffer test reports *Unsupported* if the device does not support these commands. |
| ***Current Path** dialog box does not display my saved configuration* | **Cause:** The saved configuration is not detected by the qlremote agent.<br>**Solution:** The **Current Path** dialog box displays the current configuration detected by the qlremote agent. Click the **Refresh** button to force a manual refresh. Verify that the configuration saved is the current configuration. This includes the following: no failover occurred, no device was removed, and the HBA tree displays the appropriate device port name and LUN information. |
| ***Current Path** dialog box does not display my storage device port names and LUNs* | **Cause:** The qlremote agent is unable to detect or communicate with the devices.<br>**Solution:** Verify that the devices are online and operational. Verify that the operating system driver detects and communicates with the devices. Click the **Refresh** button to force a manual refresh. Verify that the HBA tree displays the appropriate device port name and LUN information. |
| *When I change the current path in the **Current Path** dialog box, the HBA tree does not update* | **Cause:** The qlremote agent is unable to detect or communicate with the devices.<br>**Solution:**<br>■ Verify that the devices are online and operational. Verify that the operating system driver detects and communicates with the devices. Click the **Refresh** button to force a manual refresh. Verify that the HBA tree displays the appropriate device port name and LUN information.<br>■ The DNS or the local host file may contain an incorrect IP address for the host name. Use the Ping command to ping the host name; verify that the correct IP address is translated from the name. |

***12.2***

## Tracing SANblade Manager GUI and Agent Activity (Debug)

Additional information may be required to help troubleshoot SANblade Manager application problems. Once debug has been enabled following the steps in this section, attempt to reproduce the problem so that SANblade Manager GUI and agent activity can be captured.

Use the following procedures to trace SANblade Manager GUI and agent activity (debug), as directed by technical support.

This section discusses:

- Tracing SANblade Manager GUI activity (see section 12.2.1)
- Exporting or saving agent activity logs (see section 12.2.2)

### *12.2.1*
## Tracing SANblade Manager GUI Activity

To trace SANblade Manager GUI activity, do the following:

1. Edit the local.properties file, which is located where SANsurfer is installed. Change the following two properties:

   ```
   node.trace.level=900
   node.trace.output.setlevelonly=false
   ```

   See figure 12-1 for an example.

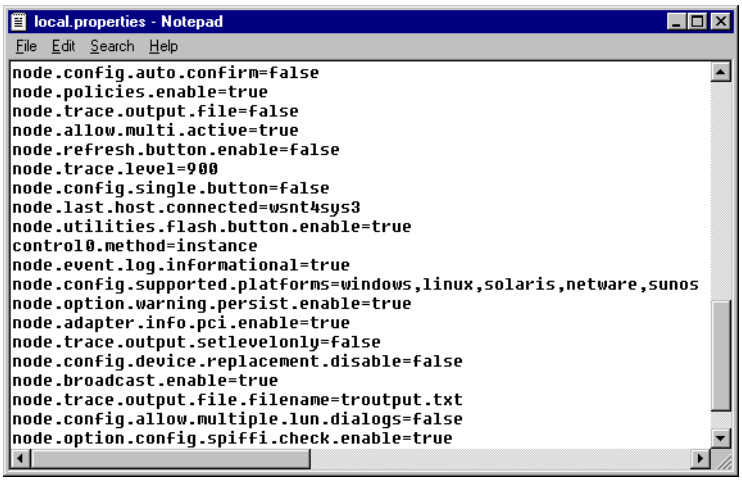



***Figure 12-1. local.properties File (Example)***

2. Edit the SANsurfer.lax file, which is located where SANblade Manager is installed. Do one of the following:

   - Edit the file so that the information displays on the console. Change the following properties:

     ```
     lax.stderr.redirect=console
     lax.stdout.redirect=console
     lax.stdin.redirect=console
     ```

   - Edit the file so that the information is saved to a file. For a Windows 2000/Server 2003 system, the location could be:

     ```
     lax.stderr.redirect=c:\\trace.txt
     lax.stdout.redirect=c:\\trace.txt
     lax.stdin.redirect=c:\\trace.txt
     ```

For a Red Hat/SuSE Linux or Solaris SPARC system, the location could be:

```
lax.stderr.redirect=/trace.txt
lax.stdout.redirect=/trace.txt
lax.stdin.redirect=/trace.txt
```

See figure 12-2 for an example.

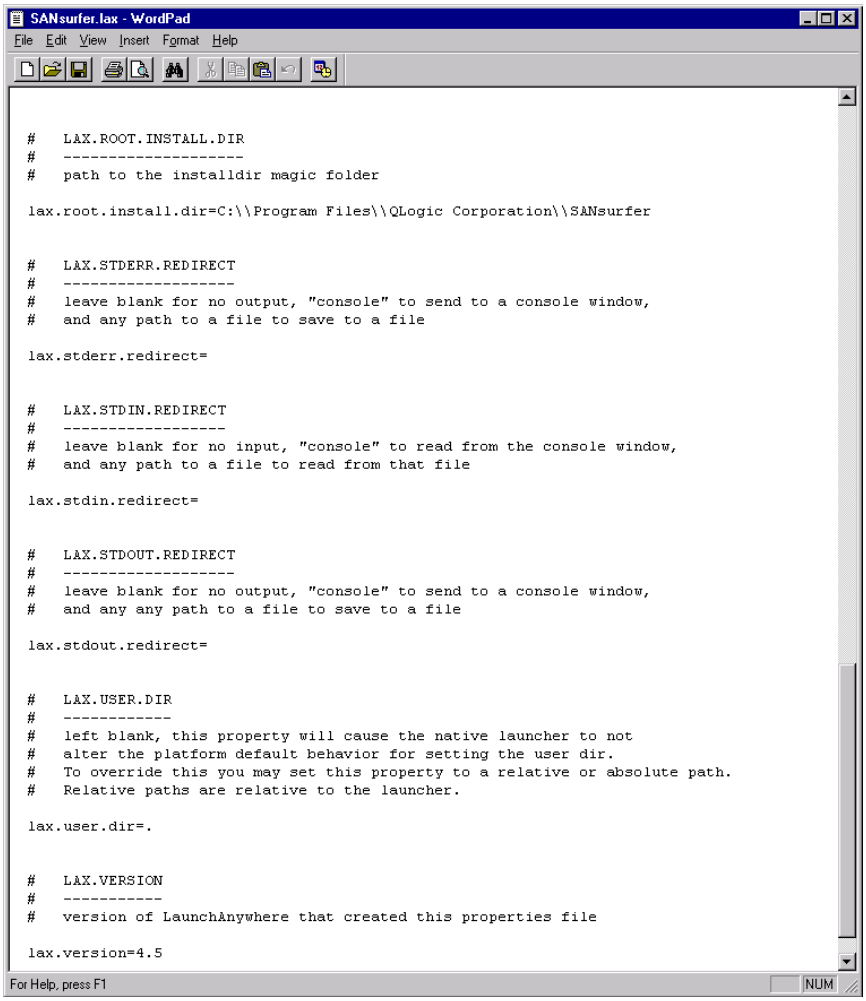



***Figure 12-2. SANsurfer.lax File (Example)***

3. If you are using a Windows 2000/Server 2003 system, do the following to change the height of the screen buffer:
   a. Click the **Start** button, point to **Programs**, point to **Accessories**, and select **Command Prompt**.
   b. The **Command Prompt** window displays. Click the upper left corner of the title bar.
   c. From the pop-up menu, select **Properties**.
   d. The **"Command Prompt" Properties** dialog box displays (see figure 12-3).

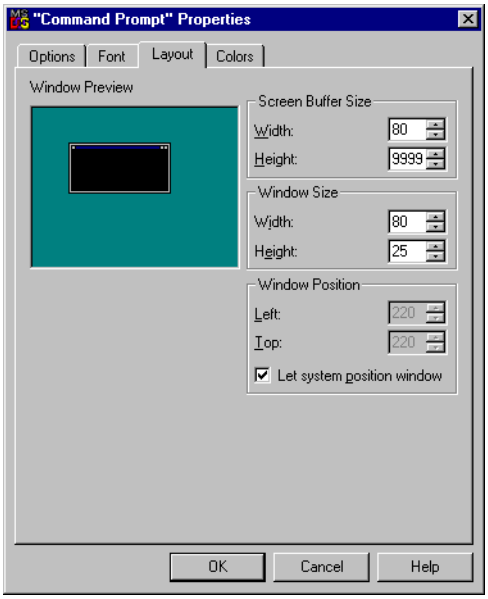



***Figure 12-3. "Command Prompt" Properties Dialog Box***

   e. Select the **Layout** tab.
   f. In the **Screen Buffer Size Height** box, type 9999. Click **OK**.
   g. The **Apply Properties to Shortcut** dialog box displays. Select **Modify shortcut that started this window**. Click **OK**.

4. Start the SANblade Manager application; a new console window that displays SANblade Manager GUI activity opens.

### *12.2.2*
## Exporting or Saving Agent Activity Logs

This section discusses:

- The agent logs (see section 12.2.2.1)
- Exporting or saving the agent logs (see section 12.2.2.2)

### *12.2.2.1*
## The Agent Logs

Agent activity automatically logs to one of the following. The name and location of the log differs, depending on the type of system.

- **Windows 2000/Server 2003.** Event Viewer
- **Red Hat/SuSE Linux.** /var/log/messages
- **Solaris SPARC.** /var/log/syslog
- **NetWare.** sys:\\etc\qlremote.log

### *12.2.2.2*
## Exporting or Saving the Agent Logs

From a Windows 2000/Server 2003 system, do the following to save the current application log from the **Event Viewer**:

1. Click the **Start** button, point to **Programs**, point to **Administrative Tools**, and click **Event Viewer**.
2. From the **Log** menu, select **Save As**. Save the file using an appropriate name.

From a Red Hat/SuSE Linux system, do the following to export agent activity:

1. Open a terminal (for example, xterm or eterm).
2. Stop the currently running qlremote agent:

   ```
   # killall -TERM qlremote
   ```

3. Start the agent, again, without forking into the background. Redirect the stdout and stderr properties to a file (see section 12.2.1, step 2). Send the file to technical support.

   ```
   # /usr/local/bin/qlremote > /AgentOutput.txt 2>&1
   ```

4. Open a second terminal to start the SANblade Manager GUI. Connect to the host with the SANblade Manager GUI.
5. From the terminal you opened in step 1, press CTRL+C to stop the qlremote agent. This causes the agent to clean up and terminate.

From a Solaris SPARC system, do the following to export agent activity:

1. Open a terminal (for example, xterm or eterm).
2. Do the following to stop the currently running qlremote agent:
   a. Type the following and then press ENTER to determine the process identifier (pid) of qlremote:

      ```
      # ps -ef | grep qlremote
      ```

      The pid displays, as in the following example. Note that in the example, the pid is 227.

```
root   227  1    0 15:59:55  ?     0:00  /user/local/bin/qlremote
root   410  409  0 16:01:46  pts/6 0:00  grep qlremote
```

   b. Type the following and then press ENTER. *pid* is the identifier returned in step a.

      ```
      # kill -TERM pid
      ```

3. Start the agent, again, without forking into the background. Redirect the stdout and stderr properties to a file (see section 12.2.1, step 2). Send the file to technical support.

   ```
   # /usr/local/bin/qlremote > /AgentOutput.txt 2>&1
   ```

4. Open a second terminal to start the SANblade Manager GUI. Connect to the host with the SANblade Manager GUI.
5. From the terminal you opened in step 1, press CTRL+C to stop the qlremote agent. This causes the agent to clean up and terminate.

For a NetWare system, the qlremote.log is already exported.

## Notes

## *Section 13*
# Frequently Asked Questions

Table 13-1 lists some frequently asked questions (FAQs) about the SANblade Manager application.

***Table 13-1. Frequently Asked Questions***

| *Question* | Answer |
|---|---|
| *On what platforms does SANblade Manager run?* | The SANblade Manager GUI runs on any platform that supports the Java JVM 1.3 specification. The agent runs only on Windows 2000/Server 2003, Solaris SPARC, Red Hat/SuSE Linux, and NetWare. |
| *Can a SANblade Manager GUI running on Red Hat/SuSE Linux talk to a Windows host running the agent?* | The SANblade Manager GUI running on any platform can talk to any other platform running the agent. The SANblade Manager GUI allows connections to different platforms at the same time. |
| *What does the blinking heart on the connected host mean?* | SANblade Manager actively pings the agent at the specified broadcast interval. This allows SANblade Manager to detect agent presence on all platforms (even if agent shutdown notification is not supported). It also allows the detection of agent crashes as soon as possible. During an agent crash, the notification may not have been sent to all the connected GUIs. |
| *Can the current contents of the alarm and event logs be saved to a file?* | The alarm and event log files are stored in the SANblade Manager install directory as a coma delimited list of entries (one per line). The alarm log file is called alarms.txt and the event log file is called events.txt. |
| *Can SANblade Manager be run as a Java applet?* | No, SANblade Manager currently does not run as a Java applet. |
| *Does SANblade Manager support SNMP?* | No, SANblade Manager currently supports only the RPC communication layer between the GUI and agent. |

## Notes

# *Part II*
# SANblade Control FX

This part of the *SANsurfer Application User's Guide* describes the SANblade Control FX GUI. SANblade Control FX is a stand-alone application for configuring your QLA23*xx* HBAs on the local system.

***NOTE:*** *HBA* and *adapter* are used interchangeably.

This application is available on the following operating systems:

- Windows 2000
- Windows Server 2003
- Solaris SPARC

The SANblade Control FX GUI has two parts, jointly referred to as *SANblade Control FX*:

- **SANblade Control FX Wizard.** This part of the GUI directs you through a standard, minimal configuration of the HBAs and the target devices to which they are attached.
- **SANblade Control FX Application.** This is the standard GUI, which lets you customize the configuration of the HBAs. The SANblade Control FX application contains the same minimal configuration features of SANblade Control FX wizard as well as advanced features such as flashing the NVRAM, performing diagnostics, etc.

Section 14 contains the following information:

- An overview of SANblade Control FX
- Installation instructions
- How to start and exit the SANblade Control FX application
- An overview of the SANblade Control FX application (screens)
- Instructions on using the SANblade Control FX application to configure your HBAs.

Section 15 contains the following information:

- How to start and exit the SANblade Control FX wizard
- Instructions on using the SANblade Control FX wizard to do a standard configuration of the HBAs

## Notes

*Section 14*

# SANblade Control FX

## *14.1* Introduction

The SANblade Control FX (application and wizard) GUI for Solaris SPARC and Windows 2000/Server 2003 allows you to configure HBAs and the target devices attached to them. SANblade Control FX (application and wizard) works only on the local machine; it cannot configure HBAs and target devices on remote machines.

The SANblade Control FX (application and wizard) has the following features:

- HBA parameters configuration, including:
  - HBA alias feature
  - Enable BIOS
  - Boot device selection
- Target persistent binding
- Utilities
  - Update the NVRAM, flash (Windows 2000/Server 2003), and FCode (Solaris SPARC) for multiple HBAs
  - Save the NVRAM, flash (Windows 2000/Server 2003), and FCode (Solaris SPARC) configurations to a file
- Configuration wizard (see section 15)
- Beacon support
- Reporting basic information about the local host, HBAs, targets, and logical unit numbers (LUNs)
- Device replacement (Windows 2000/Server 2003)
- Selective LUNs

***NOTE:*** When the STORport driver (Windows Server 2003) is loaded, QLdirect is not supported. In addition, the following features are disabled in SANblade Control FX:

- LUN masking (see section 14.5.1)
- Target persistent binding (see section 14.5.2)
- Device replacement (see section 14.5.4)

Throughout this section, *HBA* and *adapter* are used interchangeably. Some screens in the GUI use *HBA*, some use *adapter*.

## *14.2* System Requirements

The following requirements must be met before you install SANblade Control FX (application and wizard):

- The HBAs must be installed.
- The HBA drivers must be installed.
- Note that SANblade Control FX (application and wizard) configures HBAs on the local machine; it cannot configure HBAs on remote machines.
- For Solaris SPARC, you must have driver version 4.03 or later installed and running (with system rebooted)
- You need about 45 MB (Windows 2000/Server 2003)/15 MB (Solaris SPARC) on the local machine to install SANblade Control FX (application and wizard).

## *14.3* Installing SANblade Control FX

The following sections contain instructions for installing SANblade Control FX (application and wizard) for Windows 2000/Server 2003 and Solaris SPARC.

### *14.3.1* Windows 2000/Server 2003

Perform the following steps to install SANblade Control FX (application and wizard) on a Windows 2000/Server 2003 operating system:

1. Download the scf*xxyz*.exe file from the QLogic web site to your local machine, or use the scf*xxyz*.exe file in the SANsurfer Management Suite™ CD-ROM.
2. Double-click scf*xxyz*.exe from Windows Explorer, or execute the file from the MS-DOS prompt. The installation wizard will launch.
3. Follow the instructions displayed by the installation wizard to install SANblade Control FX.
4. When installation is complete, you can start the SANblade Control FX application as described in section 14.4.

### *14.3.2*
## Solaris SPARC

Perform the following steps to install SANblade Control FX (application and wizard) on a Solaris SPARC operating system.

***NOTE:*** To install SANblade Control FX, you must have superuser privileges.

1. Download the sanbcfx_*vxyyzz*.Z file from the QLogic web site to your local machine, or use the sanbcfx_*vxyyzz*.Z file on the SANsurfer Management Suite™ CD-ROM.
2. Log on to the system as superuser.
3. Create a temporary directory where you can copy sanbcfx_*vxyyzz*.Z.
4. Change the directory (cd) to the CD-ROM mount point (usually /cdrom, but the location varies. Ask your system administrator for the specific directory).
5. Change the directory (cd) to the Solaris directory.
6. Copy (cp) the sanbcfx_*vxyyzz*.Z file from the CD-ROM to the temporary directory created in step 3.
7. Change the directory (cd) to the temporary directory created in step 3.
8. At the command prompt, type:

   ```
   uncompress ./sanbcfx_vxyyzz.Z
   ```

9. Step 8 produces a file in the same directory called sanbcfx_*vxyyzz*.
10. At the command prompt, type:

    ```
    pkgadd -d ./sanbcfx_vxyyzz
    ```

11. You are prompted to select a SANblade Control FX package. For example:

    ```
    The following packages are available:
    1  scfx2-6        QLogic SANblade Control FX (HBA Configuration
                      Utility (sparc) Solaris 2.6, 7, Rev=X.XX

    2  scfx2-8        QLogic SANblade Control FX (HBA Configuration
                      Utility (sparc) Solaris 8-9, Rev=X.XX

    Select package(s) you wish to process (or 'all'
    to process all packages). (default: all)
    [?,??,q]:
    ```

    ***NOTE:*** Rev=X.XX indicates the SANblade Control FX version.

12. Type the number associated with the Solaris SPARC version on your system.

13. The pkgadd program performs a series of checks, then posts a script warning and asks whether to continue the installation. For example:

```
Processing package instance <scfx2-8> from
</usr/rishi/standalone1/pkgtest/sanbcfx>

QLogic SANblade Control FX (HBA Configuration Utility)
(sparc) Solaris 8-9 Rev=1.23 TEST4
## Executing checkinstall script.
## Processing package information.
## Processing system information.
## Verifying disk space requirements.
## Checking for conflicts with packages already installed.
## Checking for setuid/setgid programs.

This package contains scripts which will be executed with
super-user permission during the process of installing this
package.

Do you want to continue with the installation of <scfx2-8>
[y,n,?] y
```

14. Type `y` and press ENTER to continue the installation.The pkgadd program then installs SANblade Control FX. You are notified when the installation is complete. For example:

```
Installing QLogic SANblade Control FX (HBA Configuration Utility) as <scfx2-8>

## Installing part 1 of 1.
/opt/QLogic_Corporation/SANblade_Control_FX/Help/confirmchanges.html
/opt/QLogic_Corporation/SANblade_Control_FX/Help/exitwizard.html/opt/QLogic
_Corporation/SANblade_Control_FX/Help/hbaconfigstatus.html
/opt/QLogic_Corporation/SANblade_Control_FX/Help/hbaconnectionsettings.html
/opt/QLogic_Corporation/SANblade_Control_FX/Help/hbainfo.html
/opt/QLogic_Corporation/SANblade_Control_FX/Help/hbaoptions.html
/opt/QLogic_Corporation/SANblade_Control_FX/Help/hbaselect.html
/opt/QLogic_Corporation/SANblade_Control_FX/Help/hostasset.html
/opt/QLogic_Corporation/SANblade_Control_FX/Help/index.html
/opt/QLogic_Corporation/SANblade_Control_FX/Help/starting.html
/opt/QLogic_Corporation/SANblade_Control_FX/Help/targetconfig.html
/opt/QLogic_Corporation/SANblade_Control_FX/Help/targetconfigwizard.html
/opt/QLogic_Corporation/SANblade_Control_FX/Help/utilities.html
/opt/QLogic_Corporation/SANblade_Control_FX/Help/wizindex.html
/opt/QLogic_Corporation/SANblade_Control_FX/adapters.properties
/opt/QLogic_Corporation/SANblade_Control_FX/checkbackups
/opt/QLogic_Corporation/SANblade_Control_FX/images/SANbladeFXicon.gif
/opt/QLogic_Corporation/SANblade_Control_FX/images/adapter_good.gif
/opt/QLogic_Corporation/SANblade_Control_FX/images/deviceinfoqlogiclogo.gif
/opt/QLogic_Corporation/SANblade_Control_FX/images/diag_error.gif
/opt/QLogic_Corporation/SANblade_Control_FX/images/diag_info.gif
/opt/QLogic_Corporation/SANblade_Control_FX/images/diag_success.gif
/opt/QLogic_Corporation/SANblade_Control_FX/images/diag_warn.gif
/opt/QLogic_Corporation/SANblade_Control_FX/images/disk_device_inactive.gif
/opt/QLogic_Corporation/SANblade_Control_FX/images/hbaconfigured.gif
/opt/QLogic_Corporation/SANblade_Control_FX/images/hbaconfiguredgray.gif
/opt/QLogic_Corporation/SANblade_Control_FX/images/hbanotconfigured.gif
/opt/QLogic_Corporation/SANblade_Control_FX/images/hbanotconfiguredgray.gif
/opt/QLogic_Corporation/SANblade_Control_FX/images/host.gif
```

```
/opt/QLogic_Corporation/SANblade_Control_FX/images/lun.gif
/opt/QLogic_Corporation/SANblade_Control_FX/images/simplify
backgroundlogo.gif
/opt/QLogic_Corporation/SANblade_Control_FX/images/simplifylogoaboutbox.gif
/opt/QLogic_Corporation/SANblade_Control_FX/images/simplifylogomenubar.gif
/opt/QLogic_Corporation/SANblade_Control_FX/images/simplifysplashscreen.gif
/opt/QLogic_Corporation/SANblade_Control_FX/images/target.gif
/opt/QLogic_Corporation/SANblade_Control_FX/readme.txt
/opt/QLogic_Corporation/SANblade_Control_FX/release.txt
/opt/QLogic_Corporation/SANblade_Control_FX/scfx
[ verifying class <none> ]
## Executing postinstall script.
Installation of <scfx2-8> was successful.
```

15. Type the following text to restart and reconfigure the system:

```
reboot -- -r
```

## *14.4* Getting Started

This section discusses:

- Starting SANblade Control FX (see section 14.4.1)
- SANblade Control FX screens (see section 14.4.2)
- Exiting SANblade Control FX (see section 14.4.3)

### *14.4.1* Starting SANblade Control FX

The SANblade Control FX startup procedures differ depending upon the operating system. This section discusses starting SANblade Control FX on the following systems:

- Windows 2000/Server 2003 (see section 14.4.1.1)
- Solaris SPARC (see section 14.4.1.2)

#### *14.4.1.1* Windows 2000/Server 2003

Perform one of the following steps to start the SANblade Control FX application in Windows 2000/Server 2003:

- From the **Start** menu, select **Programs**, select **QLogic Corporation**, select **SANblade Control FX**, then click **SANblade Control FX**.
- On the desktop, double-click the SANblade Control FX icon (if you selected desktop icon creation during installation of SANblade Control FX).

- From Windows Explorer, double-click the SANblade Control FX executable from the directory where SANblade Control FX was installed (the default is Program Files\QLogic Corporation).
- In an MS-DOS window, change to the install directory (the default is Program Files\QLogic Corporation\SANblade Control FX). Type **SANblade_Control_FX** from the command prompt.

***NOTE:***

- If you have not yet configured any HBAs, the SANblade Control FX Wizard will launch instead (see section 15).
- If SANblade Control FX is already running, an error message is displayed. You cannot run multiple instances of SANblade Control FX on the same computer.

#### *14.4.1.2*
## Solaris SPARC

Start the SANblade Control FX application in Solaris SPARC by performing the following steps:

1. Make sure that you are in a graphical user environment.
2. Open a command terminal.
3. Change the directory to: /opt/QLogic_Corporation/SANblade_Control_FX.
4. Type the following:

```
./scfx
```

***NOTE:*** When installing the SANblade Control FX application in Solaris SPARC, a link is created to the executable scfx in /opt/QLogic_Corporation/SANblade_Control_FX in /usr/bin. Consequently, you can type `scfx` from any location, as long as /usr/bin is in the PATH environment variable.

***NOTE:***

- If you have not yet configured any HBAs, the SANblade Control FX Wizard will launch instead (see section 15).
- If SANblade Control FX is already running, an error message is displayed. You cannot run multiple instances of SANblade Control FX on the same computer.

The SANblade Control FX application starts if it detects that all HBAs on the local host have been configured at least once using the SANblade Control FX wizard (see section 15). You can also start the SANblade Control FX application from the SANblade Control FX wizard (see section 15.9).

### 14.4.2
## SANblade Control FX Main Window and Window Navigation

This section provides an overview of the SANblade Control FX application, including how to navigate through the screens and tabbed pages. The purpose of each screen is described. See sections 14.5 through 14.8 for information on using the SANblade Control FX application to view and configure the HBAs.

When the SANblade Control FX application starts, the first screen is the main window, which defaults to the host **Information** tabbed page (see figures 14-1 and 14-2).

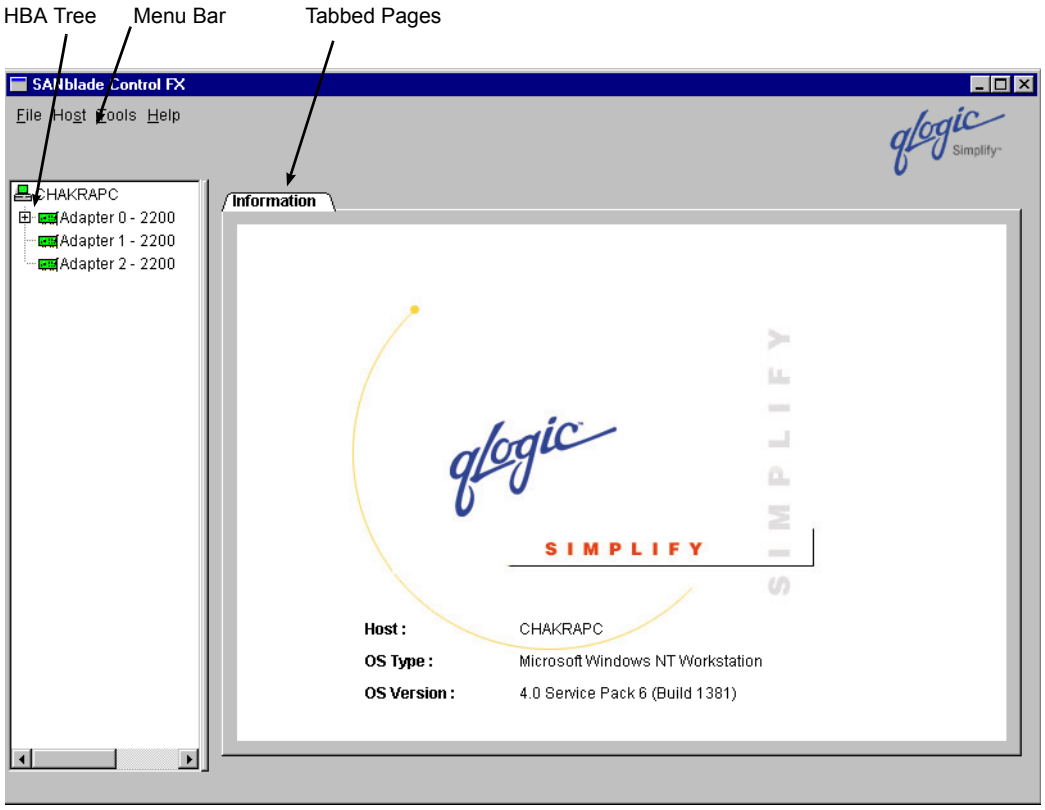



***Figure 14-1. Host Information Tabbed Page (Main Window, Windows 2000/Server 2003)***

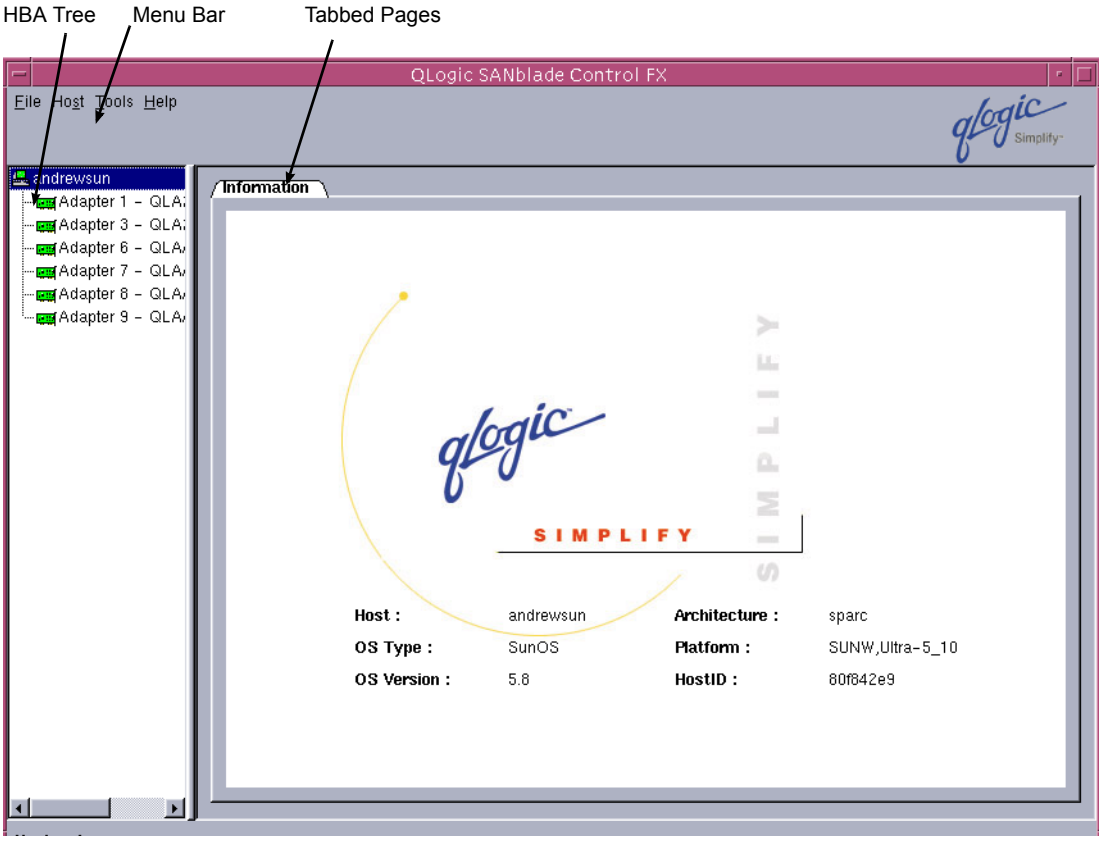



***Figure 14-2. Host Information Tabbed Page (Main Window, Solaris SPARC)***

The window consists of the following sections:

- Menu bar
- HBA tree
- Tabbed pages

The menu bar has four options:

- **File**
  - **Exit.** Select this option to exit the SANblade Control FX application.
- **Host**
  - **Adapter Persistent Configuration Data.** Select this option to remove persistent configuration data for targets attached to HBAs on a per HBA basis (see section 14.5.2 for more information on how to use this feature).
  - **Target Persistent Configuration Data.** Select this option to remove persistent configuration data for targets attached to the HBAs on a per target basis (see section 14.5.2 for more information on how to use this feature).

- **Target Persistent Binding Host View.** Select this option to perform target persistent binding for all targets connected to the local host (see figures 14-11 and 14-12).

- **Tools**
  - **Run Wizard.** Select this option to run the SANblade Control FX wizard.

- **Help**
  - **Contents.** Select this option to pull up a text browser that displays relevant information about the SANblade Control FX application.
  - **About.** Select this option to see the current version of the SANblade Control FX application.

The HBA tree displays the host with its connected adapters, targets, and LUNs. The HBAs (adapters) are displayed with their model name and API instance number (Windows 2000/Server 2003) or OS instance number (Solaris SPARC). For example, if a host contains a QLA2300 HBA on a Solaris SPARC system that has an OS instance of 1, it displays as “HBA 1–2300”.

Each HBA on the host may have targets connected to it. If an HBA is connected to a target, it has a square button attached to the left. The HBA name can be expanded by clicking the button. This lists all the targets connected to that HBA. The targets are listed with their world wide port names (WWPN).

If the target is online, it displays with a square button attached to the left. Online indicates that the target is powered on and responds to a basic set of SCSI requests (TUR, RLC, INQ, RC). The square button to the left of the target acts as a flag indicating when the target is ready.

When the target is offline, there is a red indicator on the icon for the target. There is no square button attached to the left.

Clicking on the button attached to a target further expands the tree and shows all the LUNs in that device. The LUNs are listed with the corresponding LUN IDs.

The right-hand side of the screen contains a series of tabbed pages, which change depending on what is selected in the HBA tree. When the SANblade Control FX application starts, the host **Information** tabbed page displays. This page provides the following information about the local machine (host):

- Host name
- OS type
- OS version
- OS architecture (Solaris SPARC)
- Platform information (Solaris SPARC)
- Host ID (Solaris SPARC)

Different tabbed pages appear when you click on an adapter name, a target, or a LUN in the HBA tree. These pages are described in sections 14.4.2.1 through 14.4.2.3.

### *14.4.2.1*
## HBA Tabbed Pages

When you click an adapter in the HBA tree on the main window, the HBA tabbed pages appear on the right side of the screen. The following tabbed pages are associated with the adapter:

- HBA Information
- HBA Options
- Target Persistent Binding
- Utilities
- Diagnostics

The top of each HBA tabbed page contains the following adapter information:

- Host name
- HBA model, and API instance (Windows 2000/Server 2003) or OS instance (Solaris SPARC)
- World Wide Node Name of HBA
- World Wide Port Name of HBA
- Port ID of HBA

*14.4.2.1.1*

## HBA Information Tabbed Page

By default, the **HBA Information** tabbed page appears when an adapter is selected (see figure 14-3).

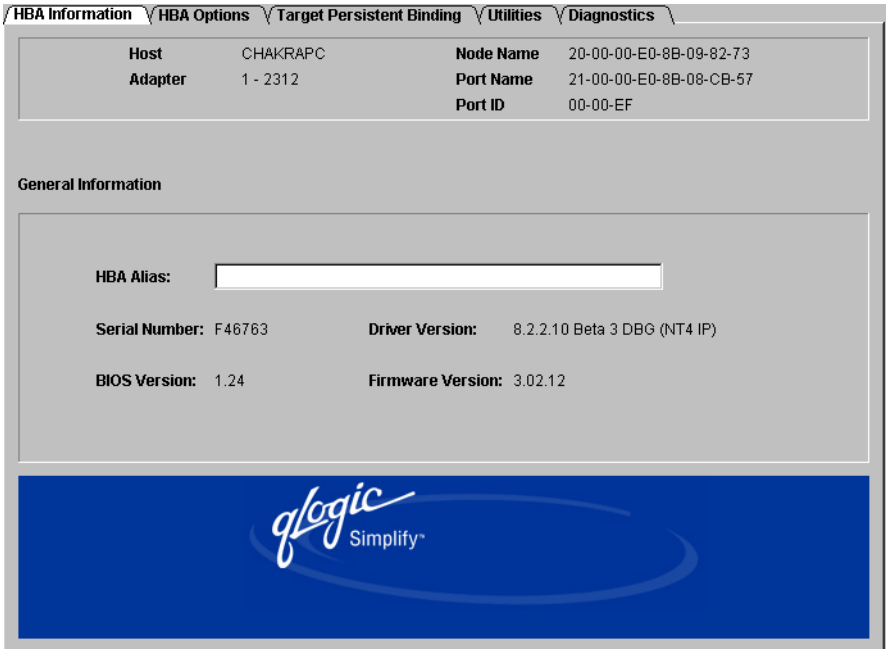



***Figure 14-3. HBA Information Tabbed Page***

This page displays the following information:

- HBA alias
- Serial number
- Driver version
- BIOS version (Windows 2000/Server 2003) or FCode version (Solaris SPARC)
- Firmware version
- Failover driver version (if failover driver QLdirect is installed) (Windows 2000/Server 2003). The failover driver version is only for your information. SANblade Control FX does not support failover; for failover configuration, use SANblade Manager (see part I).

*14.4.2.1.2*

## HBA Options Tabbed Page

The **HBA Options** tabbed page allows you to configure HBA parameters. By selecting from the **Select Parameter Section** drop-down box, you can configure the following parameters, as shown in figures 14-4 through 14-6:

- Adapter Settings
- Advanced Adapter Settings
- Boot Device Selection

For detailed information about these parameters, see section 14.8.1.

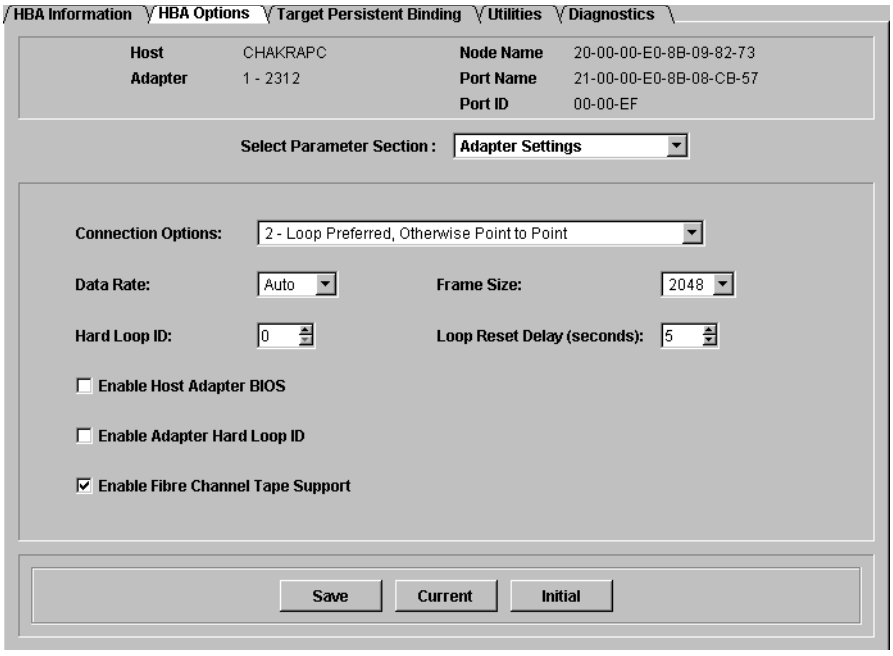



***Figure 14-4. HBA Options Tabbed Page (Adapter Settings, Windows 2000/Server 2003)***

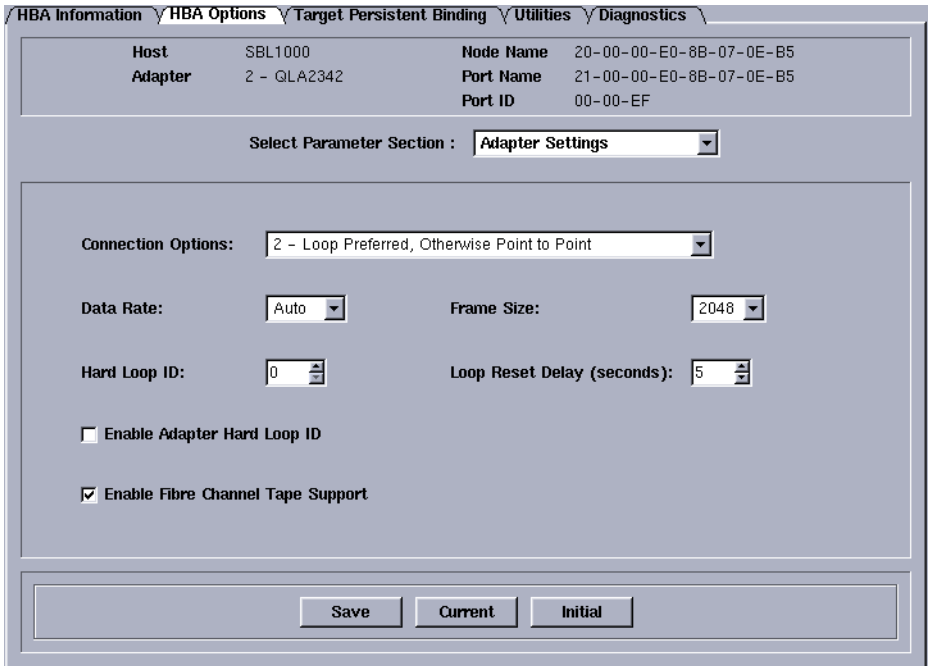



***Figure 14-5. HBA Options Tabbed Page (Adapter Settings, Solaris SPARC)***

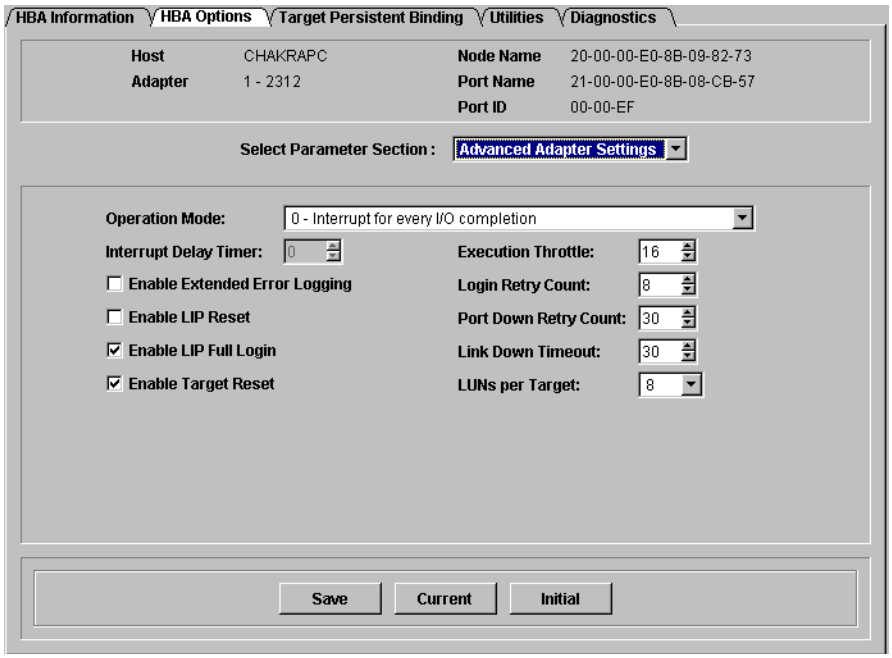



***Figure 14-6. HBA Options Tabbed Page (Advanced Adapter Settings)***

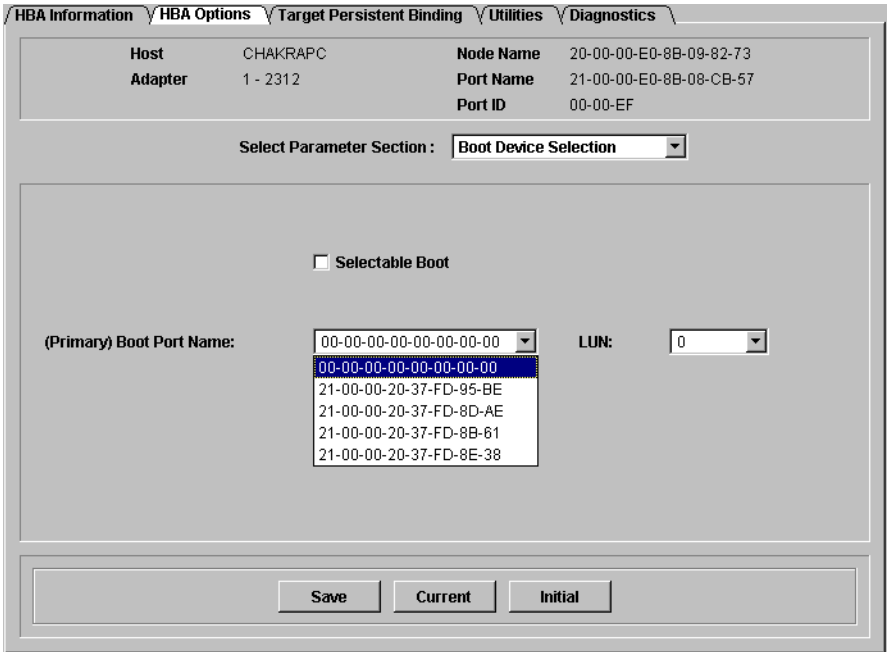



***Figure 14-7. HBA Options Tabbed Page (Boot Device Selection, Windows 2000/Server 2003)***

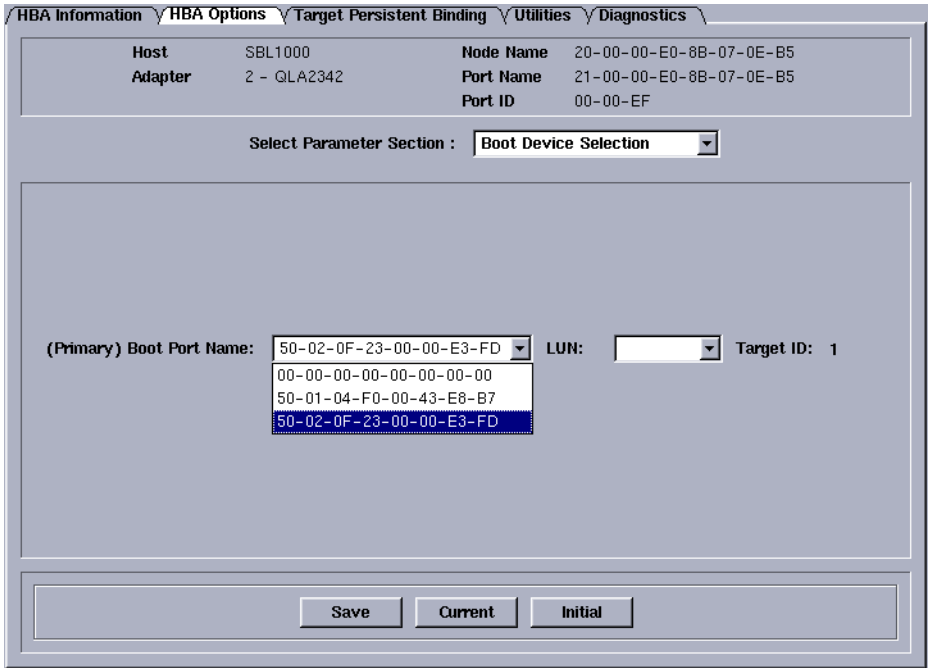



***Figure 14-8. HBA Options Tabbed Page (Boot Device Selection, Solaris SPARC)***

*14.4.2.1.3*

## Target Persistent Binding Tabbed Page

The **Target Persistent Binding** tabbed page displays information about targets and enables you to persistently bind targets connected to the adapter selected in the HBA tree (see figures 14-9 and 14-10).

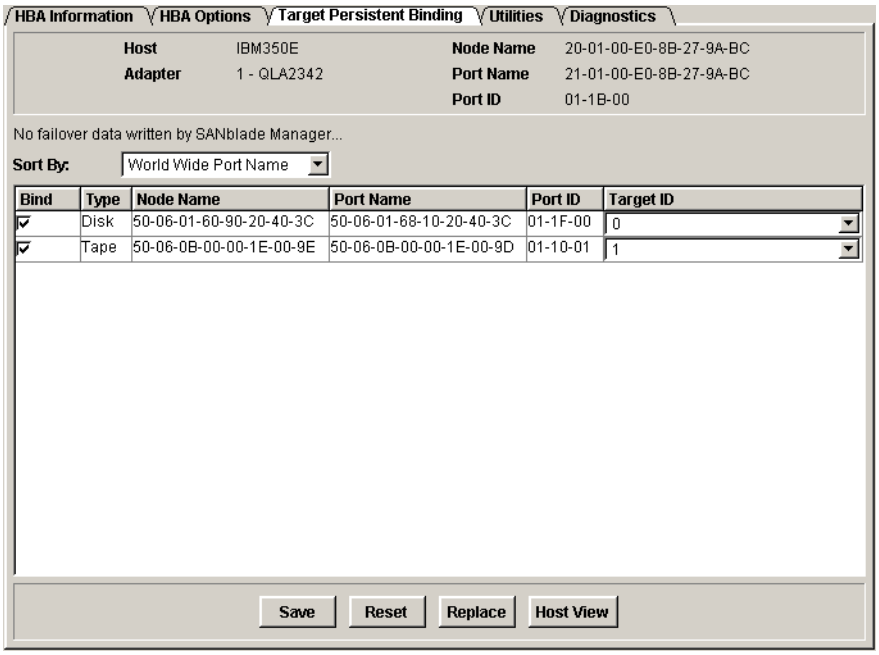



***Figure 14-9. Target Persistent Binding Tabbed Page (Windows 2000/Server 2003)***

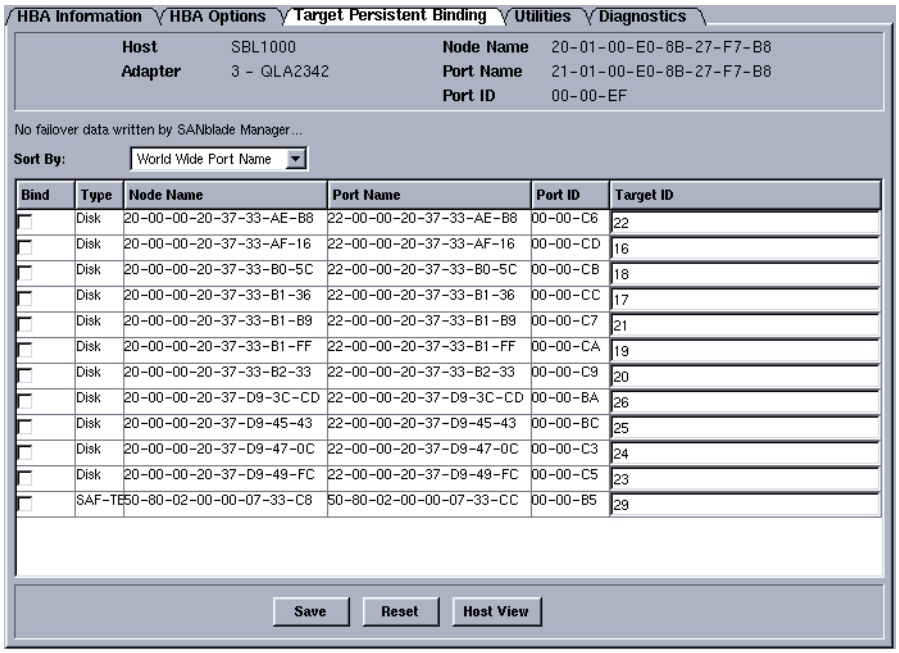



***Figure 14-10. Target Persistent Binding Tabbed Page (Solaris SPARC)***

To view all targets connected to all the HBAs on the local host, click the **Host View** button (see figures 14-11 and 14-12).

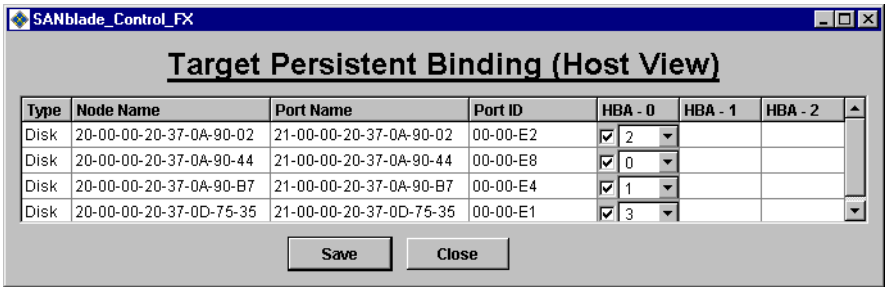



***Figure 14-11. Target Persistent Binding Screen (Host View, Windows 2000/Server 2003)***

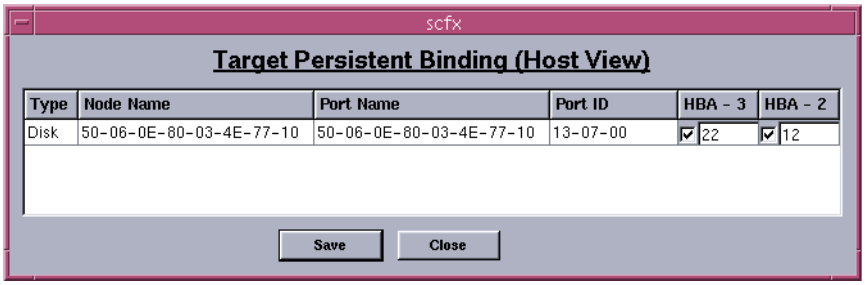



*Figure 14-12. Target Persistent Binding Screen (Host View, Solaris SPARC)*

This screen provides a comprehensive view of all targets connected to the HBAs on the local host and enables you to persistently bind targets (see section 14.5.2).

Persistent binding information can also be deleted; see section 14.5.3 for more information.

*14.4.2.1.4*

## Utilities Tabbed Page

The **Utilities** tabbed page allows you to update the NVRAM, flash (Windows 2000/Server 2003), and FCode (Solaris SPARC), as well as save these configuration to a file (see figures 14-13 and 14-14). For more information, see section 14.8.2.

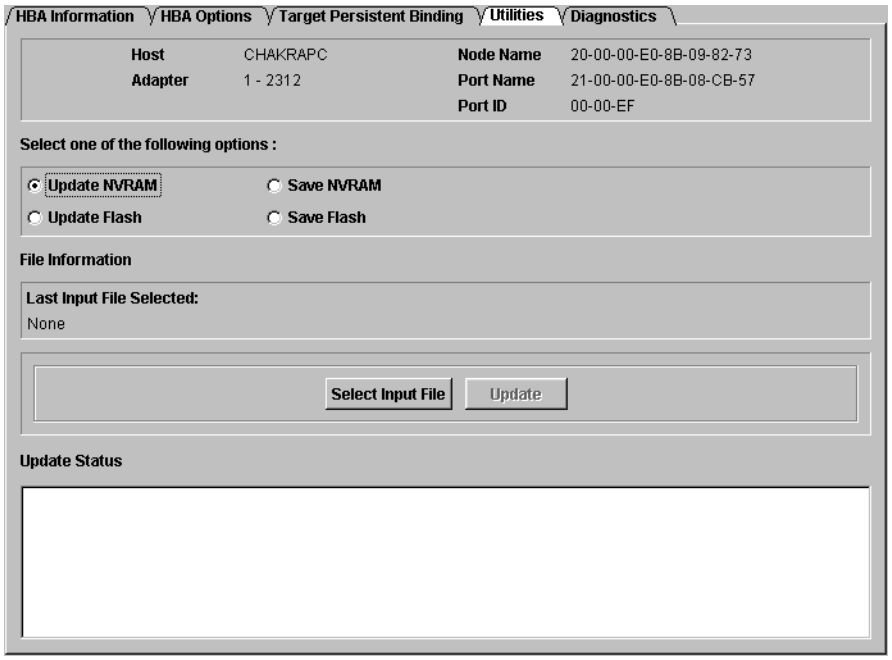



*Figure 14-13. Utilities Tabbed Page (Windows 2000/Server 2003)*

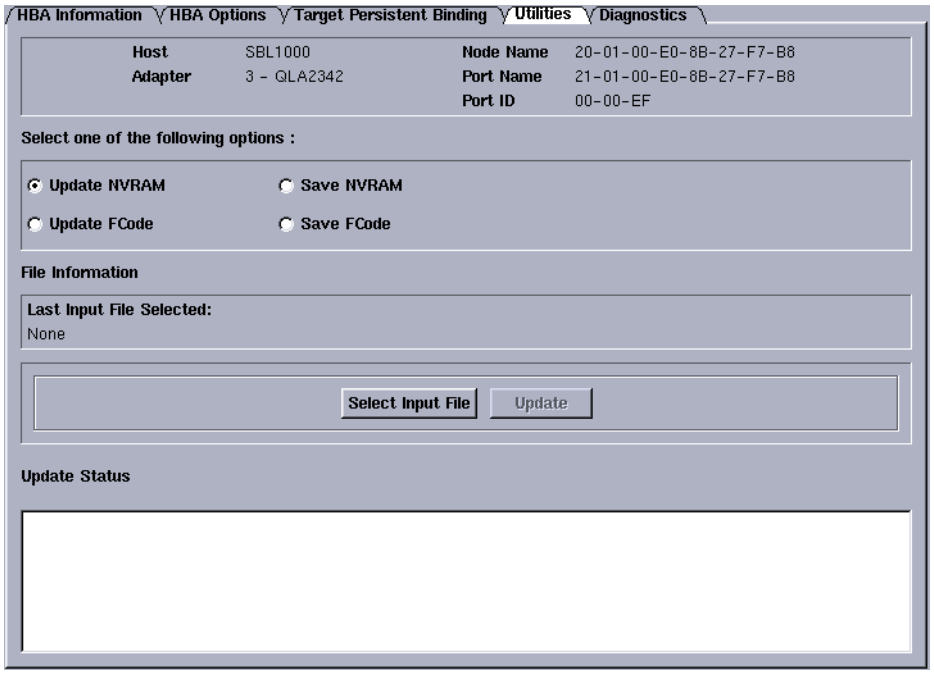



***Figure 14-14. Utilities Tabbed Page (Solaris SPARC)***

#### 14.4.2.1.5
## Diagnostics Tabbed Page

The Diagnostics tabbed page allows you to run loopback tests and read/write buffer tests. For more information, see section 14.7.

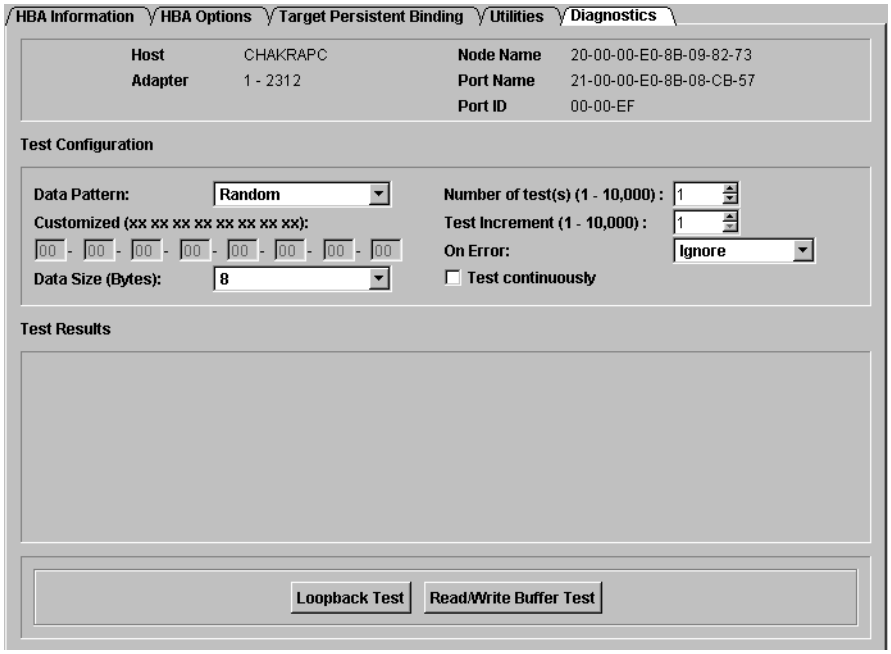



***Figure 14-15. Diagnostics Tabbed Page (Windows 2000/Server 2003)***

#### 14.4.2.2
## Target Tabbed Pages

When you click on a target in the HBA tree, the target **Information** and **LUN List** tabbed pages appear on the right side of the screen.

#### 14.4.2.2.1
## Target Information Tabbed Page

The target **Information** tabbed page is read-only (see figure 14-16). It displays the following information for the selected target in the HBA tree:

- Product vendor
- Product ID
- Product revision
- (World wide) node name
- (World wide) port name
- (Target) port ID

In addition, the top panel provides the following information about the HBA to which the target is connected:

- Host name
- HBA model and API instance
- World Wide Node Name
- World Wide Port Name
- Port ID of HBA


***Figure 14-16. Target Information Tabbed Page***

*14.4.2.2.2*
## LUN List Tabbed Page

The information on the **LUN List** tabbed page is read only (see figure 14-17).

The top of the **LUN List** tabbed page contains the following information about the target to which the LUNs are attached:

- Device vendor
- Device product ID
- Device product revision
- Device (target) node name
- Device (target) port name
- Device (target) port ID

The bottom of the **LUN List** tabbed page lists *all* the LUNs in a target in the form of a table, which contains the following information:

- LUN (ID)
- Vendor
- Product ID
- Product revision
- World wide unique LUN name
- (LUN) size (in GB)

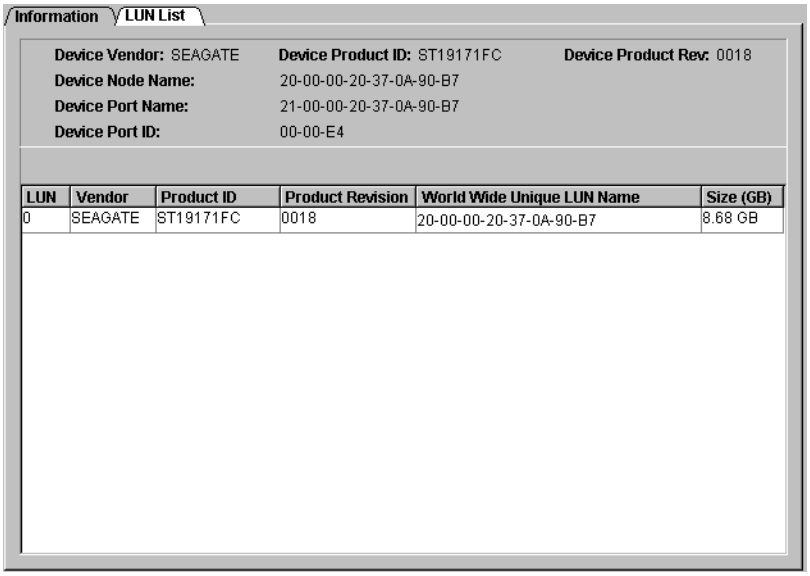



***Figure 14-17. Device LUN List Tabbed Page***

### *14.4.2.3*
## LUN Information Tabbed Page

Clicking on a LUN in the HBA tree displays the read-only LUN **Information** tabbed page (see figure 14-18).

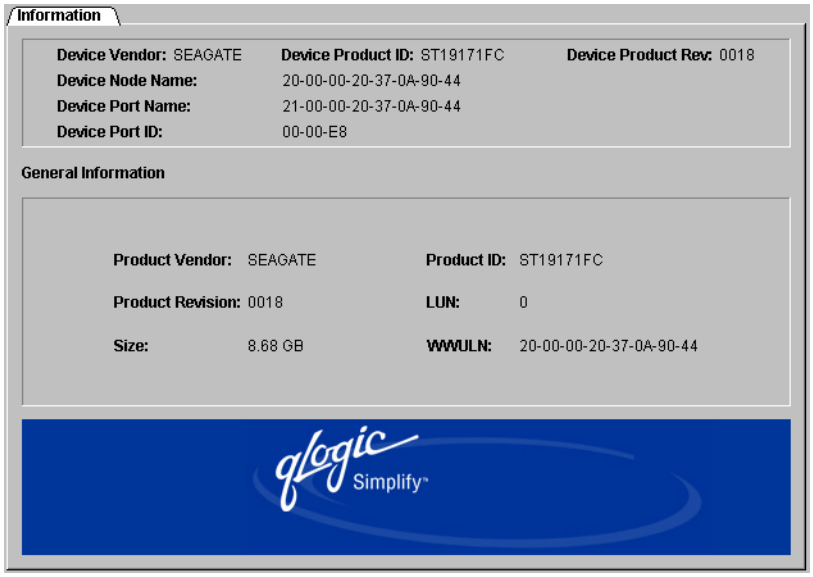



***Figure 14-18. LUN Information Tabbed Page***

### *14.4.3*
## Exiting the SANblade Control FX Application

Perform one of the following steps to exit the SANblade Control FX application:

- From the SANblade Control FX application main window **File** menu, select **Exit**.
- In Windows 2000/Server 2003, click the **Close** button in the upper-right hand corner of the screen.
- In Solaris SPARC, select the **Close** option from the pull-down menu on the upper left corner of the screen.

### *14.5*
## Setting Up Connections

You can configure targets and LUNs connected to HBAs on the local system.

This section discusses:

- Enabling/disabling LUNs for a target (see section 14.5.1)
- Bind target devices attached to the HBAs (see section 14.5.2)
- Delete persistent binding data (see section 14.5.3)
- Replace a device (see section 14.5.4)

### *14.5.1*
## Enabling/Disabling LUNs for a Target

SANblade Control FX allows you to enable or disable LUNs for a specific target through the **Selective LUNs** dialog box (see figure 14-19). To access the **Selective LUNs** dialog box, do the following:

1. From the **Target Persistent Binding** tabbed page, click the **Host View** button.
2. From the **Target Persistent Binding (Host View)** dialog box, right-click a target in the table.
3. Select **Configure LUNs** from the pop-up menu.

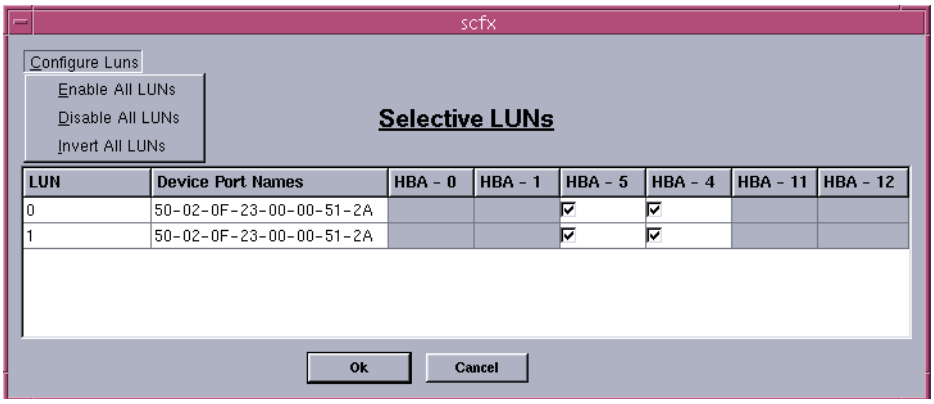



***Figure 14-19. Selective LUNs Dialog Box***

The selective LUNs information is displayed in the form of a table, which has the following entries:

- **LUN.** This column displays the LUN ID of the LUNs for the selected target.
- **Device Port Names.** This column displays the world wide port name of the target ports that have the LUN displayed in the same row in the table. If the LUN is seen on multiple target ports, then each of the target ports that has the LUN is listed for that LUN.
- **HBAs.** These columns list the HBAs (with their OS instance numbers). A check box displays under an HBA if the HBA is connected to the target port listed on the same row in the table. The check box is selected if the LUN listed in the same row of the table is enabled for that HBA. If the LUN is disabled for that HBA, then the check box is cleared.

4. To enable LUNs for a target, do one of the following:
   - ❑ To enable one or more LUNs for a target, select the corresponding check boxes.
   - ❑ To enable all the LUNs for all the HBAs, from the **Configure LUNs** menu, click **Enable All LUNs**.

   To disable LUNs for a target, do one of the following:
   - ❑ To disable one or more LUNs for a target, clear the corresponding check boxes.
   - ❑ To disable all the LUNs for all the HBAs, from the **Configure LUNs** menu, click **Disable All LUNs**.

   To invert the state of all LUNs for all HBAs, from the **Configure LUNs** menu, click **Invert All LUNs**.

   ***NOTE:*** A disabled LUN does not display in the HBA tree in SANblade Control FX after the system is rebooted. However, the LUN is displayed in the **Selective LUNs** screen and in the **LUN List** tabbed page.
5. Click **OK** to accept the changes made in the **Selective LUNs** dialog box.
6. The **Target Persistent Binding (Host View)** dialog box displays. Click **Save** to save the LUN settings.
7. The **Save Configuration** dialog box displays, confirming that the changes have been saved and that the system must be rebooted for the changes to take effect. Click **Ok**.
8. The **Target Persistent Binding (Host View)** dialog box displays. Click **Close**.

### *14.5.2* Bind Target Devices Attached to the HBAs

Target persistent binding is done by associating a target ID with the world wide node name and world wide port name of the target. Persistent binding information for targets is saved to persistent storage:

- QLogic configuration file (Solaris SPARC)
- Registry (Windows 2000/Server 2003)

Bind target devices to the attached HBAs using the **Target Persistent Binding** tabbed page.

***NOTE:*** Target persistent binding is disabled in SANblade Control FX if SANblade Manager has written failover data in persistent storage.

To access the **Target Persistent Binding** tabbed page, perform the following steps:

1. Click an adapter in the HBA tree on the left side of the screen. The HBA tabbed pages are displayed on the right side of the screen.
2. Click the **Target Persistent Binding** tab.

The **Target Persistent Binding** tabbed page is shown in figures 14-20 and 14-21.

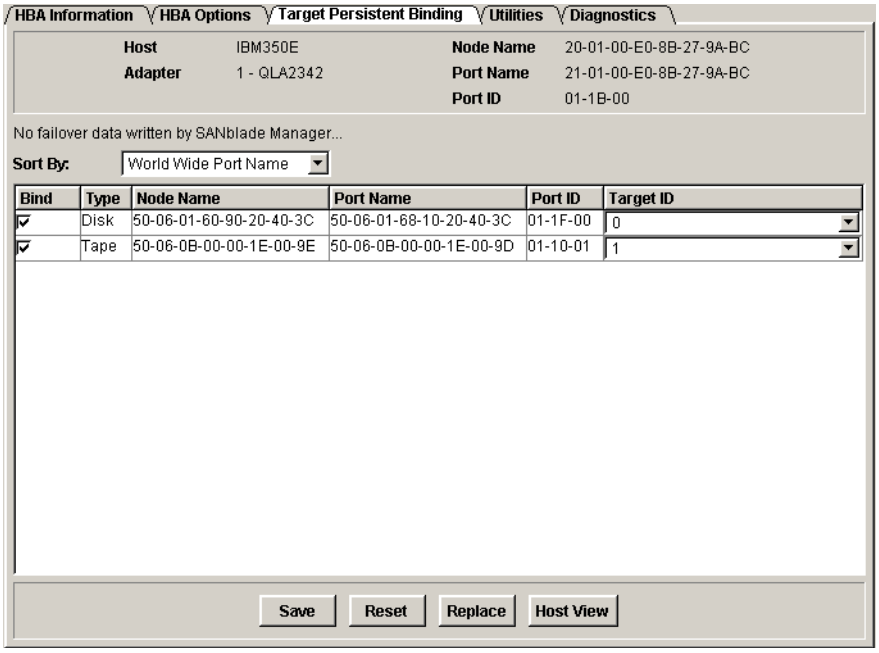



***Figure 14-20. Target Persistent Binding Tabbed Page (Windows 2000/Server 2003)***

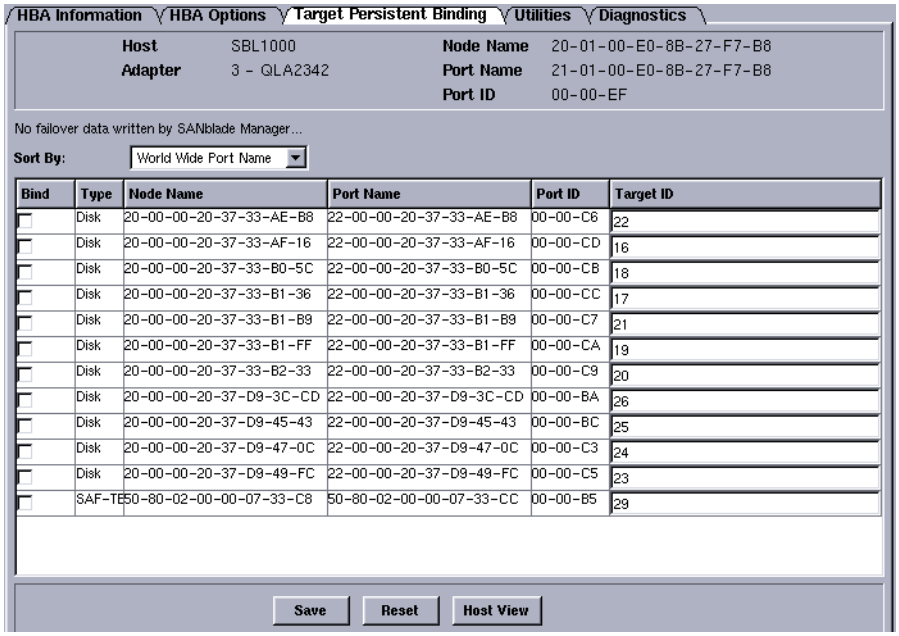



***Figure 14-21. Target Persistent Binding Tabbed Page (Solaris SPARC)***

The binding information for target devices is displayed in a tabular format. Each row in the table corresponds to one port of a target device. The table has the following entries for each target device connected to the current HBA:

- **Bind.** Select this check box if you want to configure the port and bind it to the target ID that you have selected in the **Target ID** column. If you do not want to configure the port, clear the check box. If you clear the check box, the corresponding port will be unconfigured. (Unconfigured entries are not saved in persistent storage).
- **Type.** This column indicates whether the target device is a **Disk** or a **Tape**. If the type of the device cannot be determined, then **N/A** (not available) is displayed.
- **Node Name.** This column lists the world wide node name of the target.
- **Port Name.** This column lists the world wide port name of the target.
- **Port ID.** This column lists the port ID of the target port.
- **Target ID.** This column specifies the port's target ID.

  SANblade Control FX first tries to retrieve target binding information (including target IDs) from persistent storage. In Solaris SPARC, if no persistent binding information was found in persistent storage, SANblade Control FX application reports the target as unbound and its target ID as assigned by the driver. In Windows 2000/Server 2003, no IDs are assigned to targets that are not persistently bound.

In Solaris SPARC, valid target ID values are in the range 0–255. The IDs are validated before they are saved. Duplicate target IDs are not allowed.

In Windows 2000/Server 2003, target IDs can be assigned only to ports that will be configured. Valid targets ID values are in the range 0–(*n*–-1), where *n* is the number of targets attached to the HBA.

Once persistent binding information for the targets is saved, the ports retain the assigned target IDs across reboots.

You can change the sort order of the table by selecting one of the following options from the **Sort By** drop down box:

- World Wide Node Name
- World Wide Port Name
- Port ID
- Target ID

Complete binding the target IDs by clicking one of the buttons at the bottom of the **Target Persistent Binding** tabbed page:

- **Save.** The current configuration is saved in persistent storage. Any previously saved configuration for the current HBA is overwritten.
- **Reset.** This option reverts back to the currently saved configuration in persistent storage. Use this option when you have made multiple changes on the page but have **not** saved them.
- **Host View.** Clicking this button displays a screen that lists all the targets attached to all HBAs on the local host, giving you a host-wide view of all the targets. This screen also allows you to assign target IDs to targets. Any change to target IDs in this screen is reflected in the **Target Persistent Binding** screen for all the HBAs. When the configuration is saved, it is saved for all HBAs.

  In Solaris SPARC, relevant target configuration information is saved in the ql2300.conf, sd.conf, and st.conf files.

***NOTE:*** In Solaris SPARC, previous versions of the SANblade Control FX application (v 1.18) saved persistent target data in an old format. To be compatible with SANblade Manager, subsequent versions of the SANblade Control FX application (v 1.23 and above) store persistent target data in a new format. This format enables persistent target data written by the SANblade Control FX application to be read by SANblade Manager and vice versa.

However, as described earlier, the SANblade Control FX application disables persistent target binding if it detects that SANblade Manager has written failover data in persistent storage.

If you have a previous version of the SANblade Control FX application (v 1.18), you do not need to reconfigure your system to be compatible with the new version of SANblade Control FX. If the current versions of the SANblade Control FX application (v 1.23 and above) do not find any persistent binding data in the new format, the application searches for persistent data in persistent storage saved in the old format. The SANblade Control FX application then displays this data. When you click **Save**, the application transforms the old data to the new format and saves it to persistent storage.

### *14.5.3*
## Delete Persistent Binding Data

You can delete persistent binding data by adapter or by target, as described in the following sections.

#### *14.5.3.1*
### Adapter

To delete persistent binding data from persistent storage for one adapter at a time, from the **Host** menu, select **Adapter Persistent Configuration Data**. The **Fibre Persistent Configuration Editor** dialog box displays (see figure 14-22).

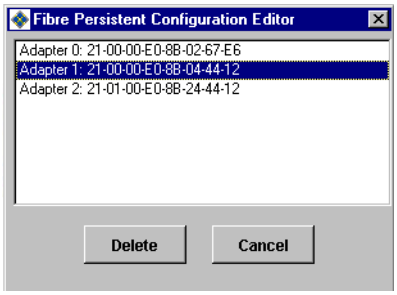



***Figure 14-22. Fibre Persistent Configuration Editor Dialog Box (Adapter)***

This dialog box lists the world wide port names of all the HBAs that currently have persistent data in the registry.

When you select an adapter and click **Delete**, persistent configuration data is removed for targets attached to the selected HBAs. You need to restart your system for the deletion to take effect.

### *14.5.3.2*
## Target

To delete persistent binding data from persistent storage for one target (device) at a time, from the **Host** menu, select **Target Persistent Configuration Data**. The **Fibre Persistent Configuration Editor** dialog box displays (see figure 14-23).

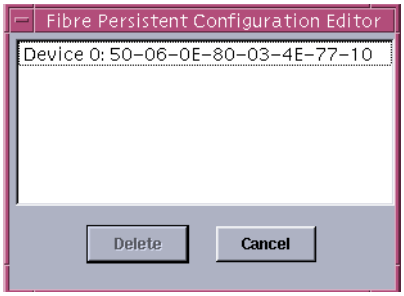



***Figure 14-23. Fibre Persistent Configuration Editor Dialog Box (Target)***

This dialog box lists the world wide node names of all the targets that currently have persistent data in the registry. When you select a target (device) and click **Delete**, persistent configuration data is removed for all the selected targets across all the HBAs. You need to restart your system for the deletion to take effect.

### *14.5.4*
## Replace a Device (Windows 2000/Server 2003 and NetWare)

Perform the following steps to replace an inactive device with a new device. (The new device will be in the same slot as the one it replaces.)

1. From the SANblade Control FX main window HBA tree, select the adapter.
2. Click the **Target Persistent Binding** tab.
3. Click the **Replace** button.

4. The **Warning on Device Replacement** dialog box displays (see figure 14-24).


***Figure 14-24. Warning on Device Replacement Dialog Box***

The dialog box provides:

- Information about the device replacement process
- The world wide adapter node name of the adapter you selected in step 1

Do the following:

a. Read the information.

b. Do one of the following:

   - Click **Next** to proceed.
   - Click **Cancel** to exit the **Device Replacement Wizard** without replacing a device.
   - Click **Help** to display context-sensitive help.

If you chose not to replace a device, click **Cancel** at any time during the replacement process.

5. To continue, click **Next**. The **Select Inactive Device** dialog box displays (see figure 14-25).

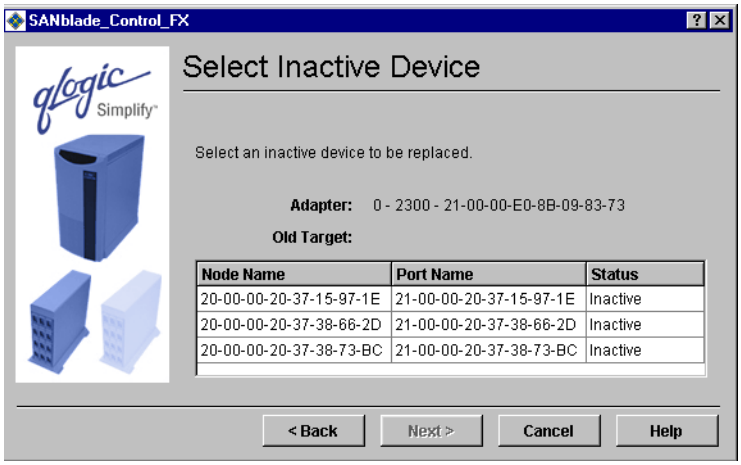



***Figure 14-25. Select Inactive Device Dialog Box***

The **Select Inactive Device** dialog box displays the following information:

- **Adapter.** Adapter number, type, and world wide adapter node name.
- **Old Target.** World wide port name of the device that you want to replace.
- Table listing the inactive targets attached to the adapter. The table contains the targets' world wide node names and world wide port names.

Do the following:

a. From the table, select the inactive device to be replaced. The world wide port name of the target displays in the **Old Target** field.

b. Do one of the following:

   - Click **Back** to return to the previous dialog box.
   - Click **Next** to proceed.
   - Click **Cancel** to exit the **Device Replacement Wizard** without replacing a device.
   - Click **Help** to display context-sensitive help.

6. If you clicked **Next**, the **Select Active Device** dialog box displays (see figure 14-26).

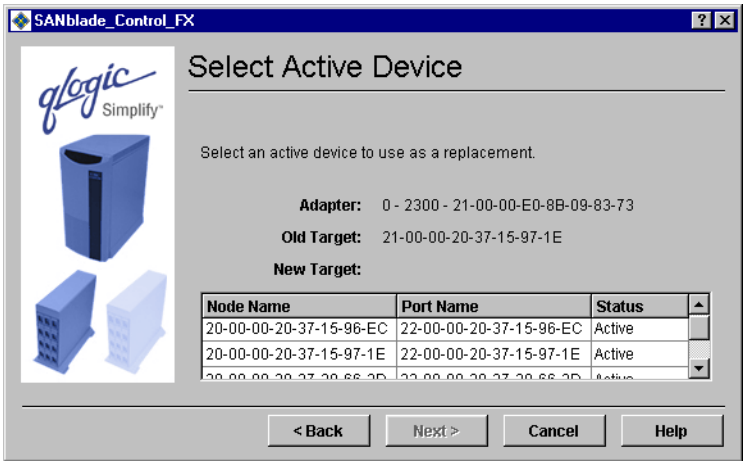



***Figure 14-26. Select Active Device Dialog Box***

The **Select Active Device** dialog box displays the following information:

- **Adapter.** Adapter number, type, and world wide adapter node name.
- **Old Target.** World wide port name of the inactive device that you want to replace.
- **New Target.** World wide port name of the active device to replace the inactive device.
- Table listing the active targets attached to the adapter. The table contains the targets' world wide node names and world wide port names.

Do the following:

a. Select the active device to replace the inactive device from the table. The world wide port name displays in the **New Target** field.

b. Do one of the following:

   - Click **Back** to return to the previous dialog box.
   - Click **Next** to proceed.
   - Click **Cancel** to exit the **Device Replacement Wizard** without replacing a device.
   - Click **Help** to display context-sensitive help.

7. If you clicked **Next**, the **Confirm Device Replacement** dialog box displays (see figure 14-27).

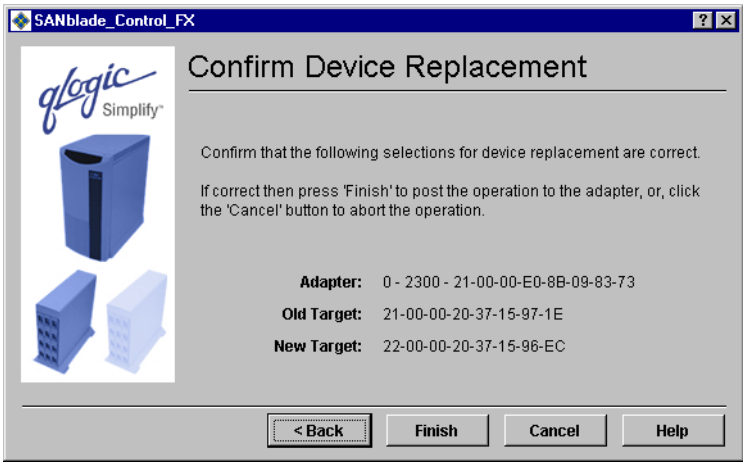



***Figure 14-27. Confirm Device Replacement Dialog Box***

The **Confirm Device Replacement** dialog box displays the following information:

- **Adapter.** Adapter number, type, and world wide adapter node name.
- **Old Target.** World wide port name of the inactive device that you want to replace.
- **New Target**. World wide port name of the active device to replace the inactive device.

Do one of the following:

- Click **Back** to return to the previous dialog box.
- Click **Finish** to confirm that the device replacement selections are correct.
- Click **Cancel** to exit the **Device Replacement Wizard** without replacing a device.
- Click **Help** to display context-sensitive help.

8. After a target has been replaced by another target, the replaced target is disabled and marked as **Removed** in the HBA tree (see figure 14-28).

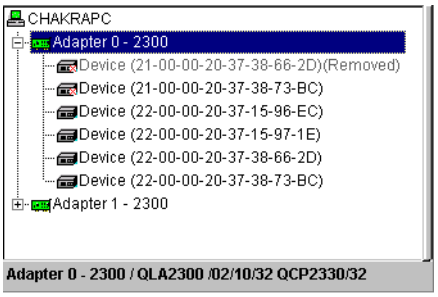



***Figure 14-28. HBA Tree with Old and New (Replacement) Device***

## *14.6* Displaying Host, HBAs, Devices, and LUN Information

You can display information about hosts, adapters, devices, and LUNs. This section discusses viewing information about the following:

- Host (see section 14.6.1)
- HBAs (see section 14.6.2)
- Targets and LUNs (see section 14.6.3)

### *14.6.1* Displaying Host Information

When the SANblade Control FX application is first launched, the host **Information** tabbed page displays (see figure 14-1). This read-only page provides the following information about the host:

- Host name
- OS type
- OS version
- OS architecture (Solaris SPARC)
- Platform information (Solaris SPARC)
- Host ID (Solaris SPARC)

### *14.6.2* Displaying HBA Information

Click an adapter model in the HBA tree on the left side of the screen to display the read-only **HBA Information** tabbed page (see figure 14-3). The page displays basic information about an HBA.

This page displays the following information:

- HBA alias
- Serial number
- Driver version
- BIOS version (Windows 2000/Server 2003) or FCode version (Solaris SPARC)
- Firmware version
- Failover driver version (if failover driver QLdirect is installed) (Windows 2000/Server 2003). The failover driver version is only for your information. SANblade Control FX does not support failover; for failover configuration, use SANblade Manager (see part I).

#### *14.6.2.1*
### Creating an HBA Alias

To create your own name for a particular HBA, select an adapter from the HBA tree, then type in a name in the **HBA Alias** field. You do not have to press ENTER after typing the name; it is saved automatically.

#### *14.6.3*
## Displaying Target and LUN Information

Click on a target device in the HBA tree on the left side of the screen to display the target **Information** tabbed page (see figure 14-16) and the **LUN List** tabbed page (see figure 14-17).

The read-only target **Information** tabbed page displays information for the selected target in the HBA tree, including the vendor, product ID, product revision, target node name, target port name, and target port ID.

The read-only **LUN List** tabbed page contains the same information as the target **Information** tabbed page, as well as a list of all the LUNs attached to the target. The following information is displayed for each LUN:

- LUN ID
- Vendor
- Product ID
- Product revision
- World wide LUN name
- LUN size (in GB)

Another way to display LUN information is to click a LUN in the HBA tree, which displays the LUN **Information** tabbed page (see figure 14-18).

## *14.7* Performing Diagnostics

Diagnostic tests interrupt normal adapter operations. The adapter's state before the tests are restored at the completion of the testing. Note the following:

- Run these tests when no other activities are required of the adapter.
- Tests read and write to sensitive areas on the adapter.
- Disruption of some diagnostic tests may require a complete update of the adapter's critical memory areas.

***NOTE:*** Although SANblade Control FX protects against normal operation interruption and testing disruption, it is your responsibility to ensure that the diagnostics are run without causing interruptions to other processes and disruptions to the actual testing process.

The following diagnostic tests are available:

- **Loopback Test.** The loopback test is external to the adapter; you will need to install a loopback connector to perform the test. Some driver versions do not require a loopback connector; see section 14.7.1.2 for information.

  The test evaluates the ports (transmit and receive transceivers) on the adapter. More specifically, the loopback test transmits and receives (loopback) the specified data and checks for the frame CRC, disparity, and length errors.

  Perform the following steps to run a loopback test:

  1. Prepare for the test (see section 14.7.1).
  2. Set the diagnostic test parameters (see section 14.7.2).
  3. Run the diagnostic test (see section 14.7.3).
  4. View the diagnostic test results (see section 14.7.4).
  5. Prepare for normal adapter operations (see section 14.7.5).

- **Read/Write Buffer Test.** The read/write buffer test sends specified data through the SCSI Write Buffer command to a target device or tape. It then reads the data back through the SCSI Read Buffer command and compares the data for errors. The test also compares the link status of the device or tape before and after the read/write buffer test. If errors occur, the test indicates a broken or unreliable link between the adapter and the device/tape.

  Perform the following steps to run a read/write buffer test:

  1. Prepare for the test (see section 14.7.1).
  2. Set the diagnostic test parameters (see section 14.7.2).
  3. Run the diagnostic test (see section 14.7.3).
  4. View the diagnostic test results (see section 14.7.4).

***NOTE:*** The loopback test must be run with the loopback connector (unless the operating system uses one of the driver versions in table 14-1); the read/write buffer test must be run without the loopback connector on a device or tape that supports the SCSI Read Buffer and SCSI Write Buffer commands.

### *14.7.1*
## Preparing for Diagnostic Testing

Preparation for the loopback and read/write buffer tests differs. In addition, you can use SANblade Control FX to locate the adapter you want to test. See the following, as appropriate:

- Find the adapter you want to test (see section 14.7.1.1)
- Loopback test (see section 14.7.1.2)
- Read/write buffer test (see section 14.7.1.3)

### *14.7.1.1*
## Finding an Adapter

***NOTE:*** This feature is not supported on systems with only QLA231*x* series HBAs or only QLA22*xx* series HBAs.

You can flash the QLA23*xx* HBA's LED to locate the HBA in your computer by following these steps:

1. Right-click an adapter in the HBA tree.
2. Select **Flash Adapter Beacon** (see figure 14-29). The QLA23*xx* HBA's LED begins to flash.

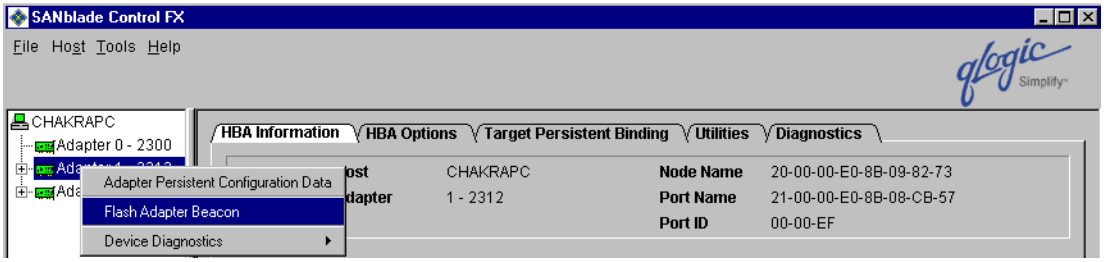



***Figure 14-29. Flash Adapter Beacon***

To stop the LED from flashing, follow these steps:

1. Right-click an adapter in the HBA tree.
2. Select **Stop Adapter Beacon Flashing**.

*14.7.1.2*

## Preparing for the Loopback Test

A loopback connector is not required if your operating system has one of the driver versions listed in table 14-1.

***Table 14-1. Driver Versions that Do Not Require a Loopback Connector***

| Operating System | Driver Version[a] |
|---|---|
| Windows 2000/Server 2003 with SCSI miniport driver | 8.2.3.11 |
| Windows Server 2003 with STORport miniport driver | 8.2.3.16 |
| Solaris SPARC | 4.12 |

Table Notes

[a]All subsequent versions also apply.

Perform the following steps before running the loopback test:

1. Modify the adapter settings **Connection Options** setting (see section 14.8.1.1).
2. Attach a loopback connector to the Fibre Channel connector on the adapter (see section 14.7.1.2.2). Skip this step if your operating system has one of the driver versions in table 14-1.

*14.7.1.2.1*

## Modifying the Adapter Settings Connection Options Setting

Before running the loopback test, the adapter settings **Connection Options** setting must be 0—Loop Only. See section 14.8.1.1 for information about viewing and modifying the setting. Do the following:

1. Write down the current setting.
2. Change the setting to 0—Loop Only, if not currently set to this option.

After completing the loopback test, change the **Connection Options** setting back to its original value.

#### *14.7.1.2.2*
## Installing a Loopback Connector

Before running the loopback test, you must install a loopback connector on the adapter. Note the following about the loopback connector:

- The loopback connector must be appropriate for the type of Fibre Channel adapter connector.
- Be sure to select the appropriate adapter connector for testing. Each adapter connector displays in the SANblade Control FX main window HBA tree as an adapter. For example, assume a host is configured as follows:
  - The first adapter has one connector.
  - The second adapter has two connectors.

  In the HBA tree, these would display as follows:
  - The first adapter's connector would be Adapter 0.
  - The second adapter's first connector would be Adapter 1.
  - The second adapter's second connector would be Adapter 2.

Perform the following steps to install a loopback connector. Installing the connector stops normal adapter operations.

1. Disconnect the cable from the appropriate adapter connector.
2. Install the loopback connector on the adapter connector.

#### *14.7.1.3*
## Preparing for the Read/Write Buffer Test

The read/write buffer test must be run on a device or tape. Before running the read/write buffer test, from the SANblade Control FX main window HBA tree verify that the adapter is connected to at least one device or tape.

***NOTE:*** Some devices may not support Read/Write Buffer commands. Check with your hardware vendors or manufacturer.

You can run the read/write test on all devices or tapes attached to the adapter or to specific devices or tapes attached to the adapter.

To run the read/write test on *all* devices or tapes attached to an adapter, perform the following steps from the SANblade Manager main window:

1. Right-click an adapter in the HBA tree.
2. Select **Device Diagnostics**, then choose **Enable All Devices**. A check mark displays next to all the device and tape icons attached to the selected adapter.

To run the read/write test on *specific* devices attached to an adapter, perform the following steps from the SANblade Manager main window:

1. Right-click a device or tape in the HBA tree.
2. Select **Device Diagnostics**, then choose **Enable on Device**. A check mark displays next to the device or tape icon.
3. Repeat steps 1 and 2 for each device you want to test.

### *14.7.2*
## Setting the Diagnostic Test Parameters

Perform the following steps to set the loopback or read/write buffer test parameters:

1. From the SANblade Control FX main window HBA tree, select the adapter.
2. Click the **Diagnostics** tab. The **Diagnostics** tabbed page displays (see figure 14-30). The diagnostic test parameters are in the Test Configuration section.

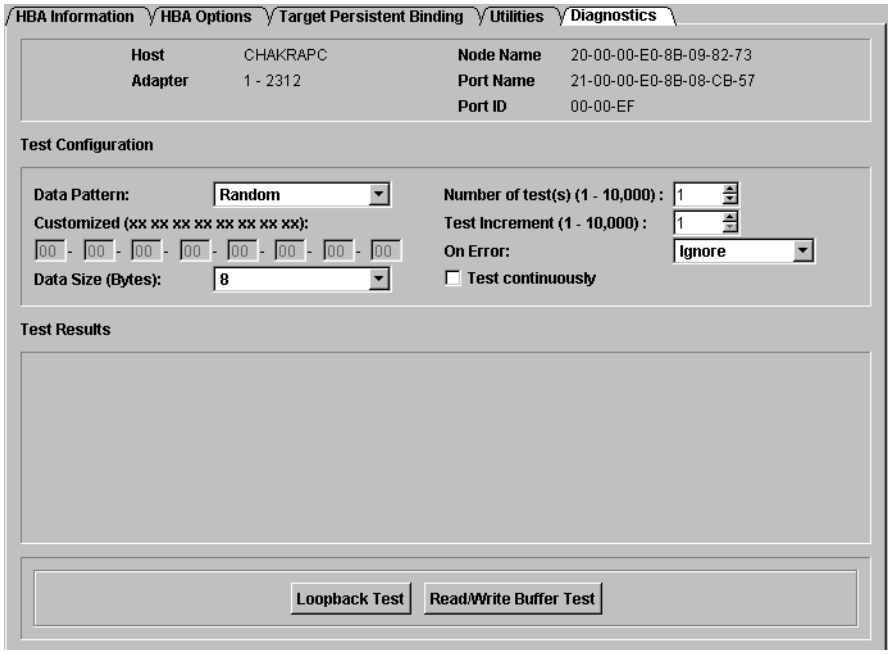



***Figure 14-30. Diagnostics Tabbed Page***

3. The data pattern sets the test pattern. In the **Data Pattern** box, do one of the following:
   - Select a data byte.
   - Select **Customized** to specify your own eight-byte pattern; then enter the data in hexadecimal format (0–FF) into the eight **Customized** boxes.
   - Select **Random** to randomly generate an eight-byte data pattern.
4. The data size sets the number of bytes transferred when the test is run. In the **Data Size** box, select the number of bytes to transfer. Valid values are 8, 16, 32, and 64.
5. Do one of the following to set the test frequency:
   - In the **Number of Tests** box, type or select the number of tests you want to run. The valid range is between 1 and 10,000.
   - Select the **Test Continuously** check box. You determine when testing stops.
6. In the **On Error** box, select one of the following to determine how errors are handled. This selection applies whether you entered the number of tests or selected test continuously.
   - Ignore on Error
   - Stop on Error
   - Loop on Error. This selection uses the same data pattern and test until the failure is cleared.
7. In the **Test Increment** box, type or select the number of tests you want to run for each pass. The valid range is between 1 and 10,000, and must be less than or equal to the value in the **Number of Tests** box (see step 5). For example, if the **Number of Tests** box contains 100 and the **Test Increment** box contains 15, 100 tests are run in seven passes. The first six passes run 15 tests each; the seventh pass runs 10 tests ($6 \times 15 + 10 = 100$).

   ***NOTE:*** The test runs this number of passes before it stops on an error (if **Stop on Error** was selected in step 6) or stops when you select to stop testing (if **Test Continuously** was selected in step 5).

### *14.7.3*
## Running Diagnostic Tests

Once you have set the test parameters as described in section 14.7.2, perform the following steps to run the loopback or read/write buffer test:

1. Click the **Loopback Test** or **Read/Write Buffer Test** button.
2. The diagnostic tests warning displays. Do one of the following:
   - Click **Yes** if there are no I/Os active and you want to proceed with the test.
   - Click **No** to cancel the diagnostic test.
3. If you selected **Yes** in step 2, a dialog box displays with the data pattern generated. Click **Stop** when you want to end the test.

***NOTE:*** An echo test is run instead of a loopback test under the following conditions:

- You have a QLA23*xx* adapter that is connected to the fabric through a point-to-point connection (F-port).
- Your operating system has one of the driver versions listed in table 14-1.

### 14.7.4
## Viewing the Diagnostic Test Results

The test results section of the **Diagnostics** tabbed page displays the results of a test run (see figure 14-31). The **Test Status** column indicates whether the test passed or failed. The remaining information pertains to error counters.

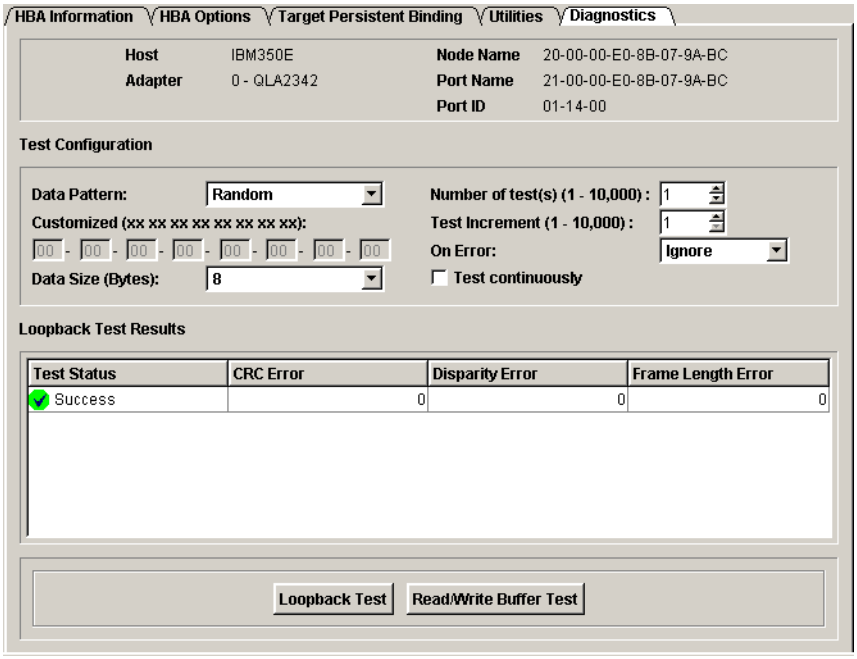



***Figure 14-31. Diagnostic Test Results Section***

This section discusses:

- Loopback test results (see section 14.7.4.1)
- Read/write buffer test results (see section 14.7.4.2)

### 14.7.4.1
## Loopback Test Results

The Loopback Test Results section provides the following information:

- **Tests Status.** Whether the test passed or failed. The possible values:
  - **Success.** The test passed.
  - **Error.** CRC, disparity, or frame length errors occurred.
  - **Failed.** An error occurred when attempting to issue a command.
  - **Loop down.** The loop is down.
- **CRC Error.** Number of CRC errors

- **Disparity Error.** Number of disparity errors
- **Frame Length Error.** Number of frame length errors

Figure 14-31 shows a successful test. The **Test Status** column in figure 14-32 shows that the loopback test failed.

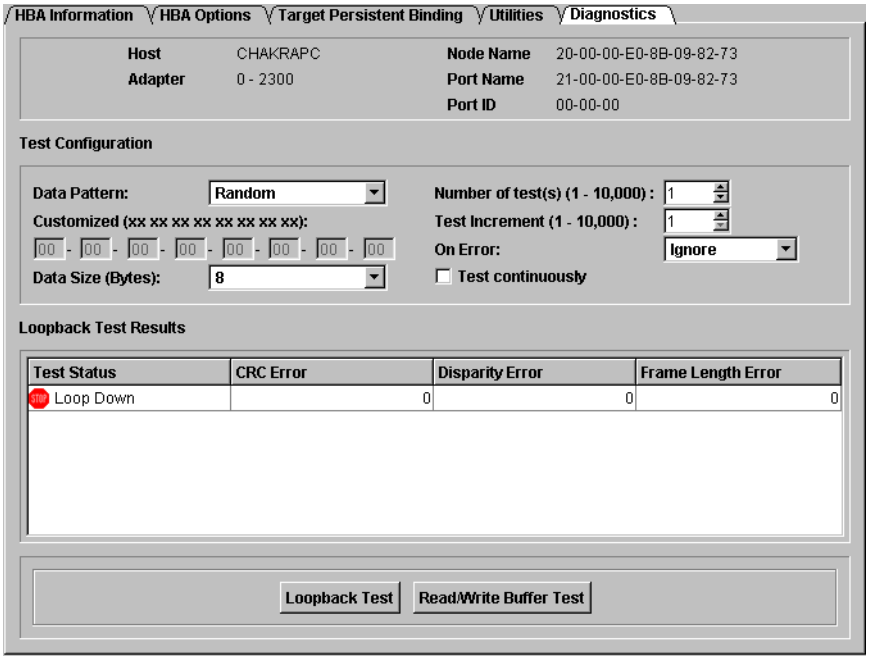



***Figure 14-32. Diagnostic Test Results—Loopback Test Failed***

*14.7.4.2*

## Read/Write Buffer Test Results

The Read/Write Buffer Test Results section provides the following information, as shown in figure 14-33.

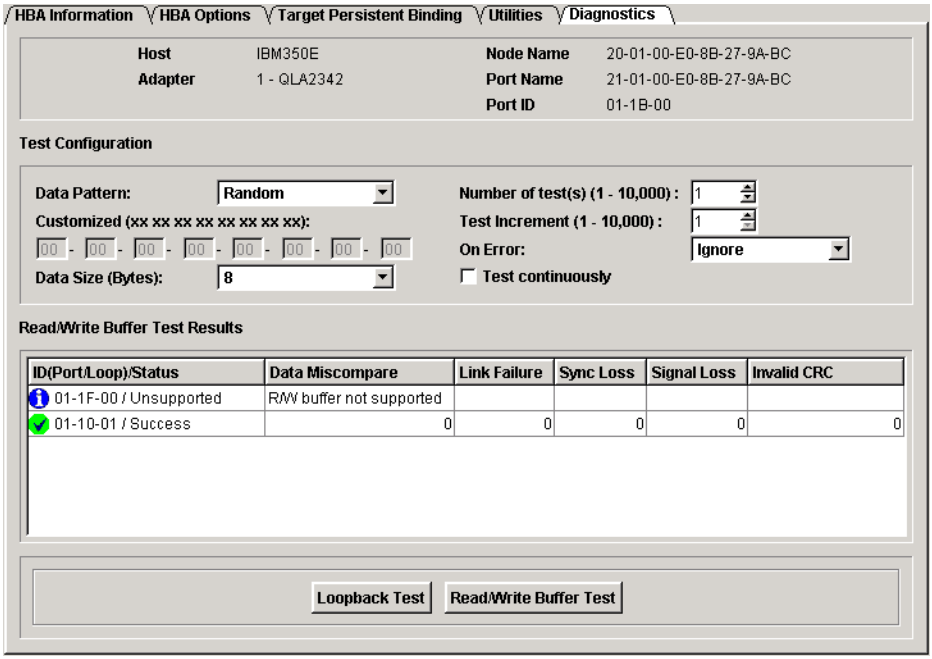



***Figure 14-33. Diagnostic Test Results—Read/Write Buffer Test***

- **Loop ID/Status**
  - The loop ID of the adapter when operating in loop mode.
  - The status of the test—whether the test passed or failed. The possible values:
    - **Success.** The test passed.
    - **Error.** A data miscompare occurred.
    - **Failed.** A link status error, SCSI write buffer error, or SCSI read buffer error occurred.
    - **Unknown.** The target was not present.
    - **Unsupported.** The device or tape does not support this test.
- **Data Miscompare.** The possible values:
  - 0 (no data miscompares)
  - Get link status failed
  - Read buffer failed

- R/W buffer not supported
- Write buffer failed
- Device not present

- **Link Failure.** Number of link failures
- **Sync Loss.** Number of sync loss errors
- **Signal Loss.** Number of signal loss errors
- **Invalid CRC.** Number of invalid CRCs

If the value in the **Data Miscompare** column is nonzero, you can view the miscompare information by double-clicking any column. The **Diagnostic Results** dialog box displays (see figure 14-34).

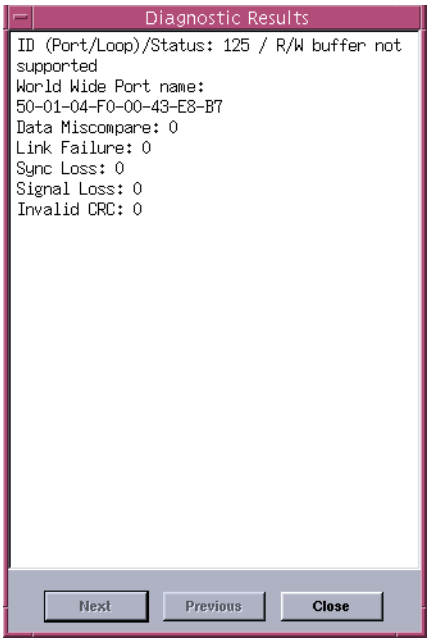



***Figure 14-34. Data Miscompare Results***

Do the following as appropriate:

- Click **Next** to view the details of the next miscompare.
- Click **Previous** to view the details of the previous miscompare.
- Click **Close** to return to the **Diagnostics** tabbed page.

The **Next** and **Previous** buttons are disabled if the read/write buffer test was run on only one target.

### *14.7.5*
## Preparing for Normal Adapter Operations

When loopback testing is complete, do the following to resume normal adapter operations:

1. Do the following to remove the loopback connector:
   a. Remove the loopback connector from the adapter connector.
   b. Reconnect the cable that you disconnected in section 14.7.1.2.2.
2. Modify the adapter settings **Connection Options** back to its previous setting (see section 14.7.1.2.1).

### *14.8*
## Updating the HBA

You can update an adapter's nonvolatile RAM (NVRAM) settings and flash. This section discusses:

- Configuring/updating the HBAs (see section 14.8.1)
- Updating and saving the NVRAM, flash (Windows 2000/Server 2003), and FCode (Solaris SPARC) (see section 14.8.2)

### *14.8.1*
## Configuring/Updating the HBAs

Configure the HBAs using the **HBA Options** tabbed page. To access the **HBA Options** tabbed page, perform the following steps:

1. Click an adapter in the HBA tree on the left side of the screen.

   If you want to configure multiple adapters with the same settings, hold the CTRL key while selecting multiple adapters. The adapters must be in the same series (QLA23*xx* HBAs or QLA22*xx* HBAs).

   The HBA tabbed pages are displayed on the right side of the screen.
2. Click the **HBA Options** tab.

The top of the **HBA Options** tabbed page is read-only; it displays information about the selected adapter.

If you selected multiple adapters, the **Select Adapter** drop-down box is displayed (see figure 14-35).

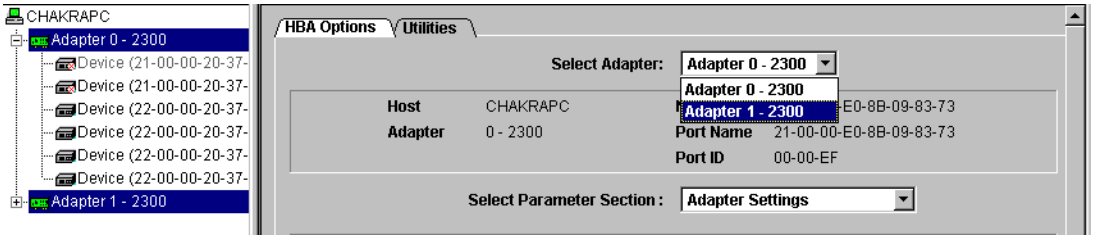



***Figure 14-35. HBA Options Tabbed Page—Multiple Adapters Selected***

***NOTE:*** Only the **HBA Options** (Adapter Settings and Advanced Adapter Settings) and **Utilities** tabbed pages can be configured for multiple adapters; therefore, the remaining tabbed pages do not display when multiple adapters are selected.

Select one of the following options from the **Select Parameter Section** drop-down list:

- Adapter Settings
- Advanced Adapter Settings
- Boot Device Selection

These parameters are described in the following sections.

After configuring the parameters in the **HBA Options** tabbed pages, click one of the following:

- **Save.** Saves the values in all the parameter sections. If you selected multiple adapters (Adapter Settings and Advanced Adapter Settings), the values are saved for all selected adapters.

  In Solaris SPARC, the parameters are saved in the NVRAM and in the QLogic configuration file (qla2*x*00.conf, usually located in /kernel/drv).

  In Windows 2000/Server 2003, the parameters are saved only in the NVRAM.

- **Current.** Restores the sections' settings to the most recently saved values.
- **Initial.** Restores the sections' settings to their values when the SANblade Control FX application was first started.

  ***NOTE:*** When the settings are retrieved in Solaris SPARC, the HBA parameter values stored in the QLogic configuration file take precedence over the values stored in NVRAM.

In the following sections, when referring to options that are selected by a check box, *selected* means enabled; *cleared* means disabled.

*14.8.1.1*

## Adapter Settings

The Adapter Settings are shown in figures 14-36 and 14-37, and described in the following paragraphs.

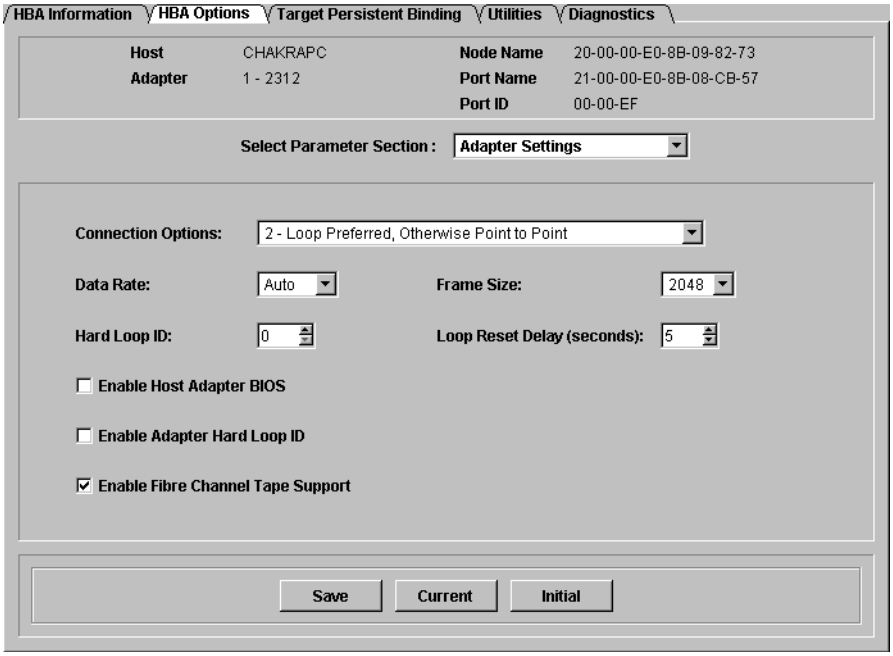



***Figure 14-36. HBA Options Tabbed Page (Adapter Settings, Windows 2000/Server 2003)***

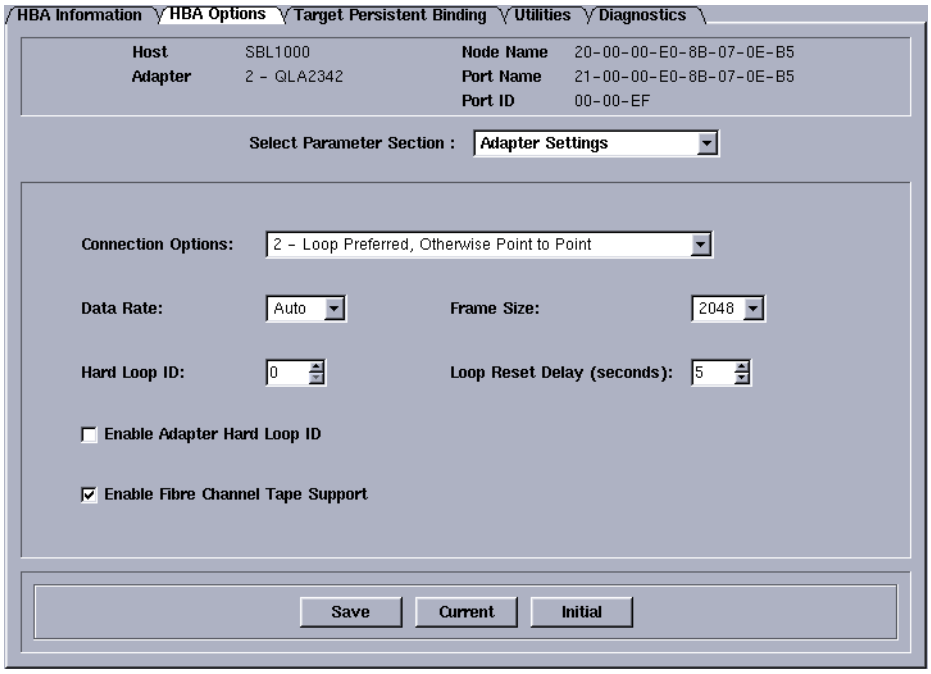



***Figure 14-37. HBA Options Tabbed Page (Adapter Settings, Solaris SPARC)***

This part of the **HBA Options** tabbed page allows you to configure the following host parameters for one or more adapters:

- **Connection Options.** This setting defines the type of connection (loop or point to point). Select one of the following from the drop-down list:
  - **Loop Only**
  - **Point to Point Only**
  - **Point to Point, Otherwise Loop** (QLA22*xx* HBAs)
  - **Loop Preferred, Otherwise Point to Point** (default)

- **Data Rate** (QLA23*xx* HBAs)**.** Select the HBA data rate from the drop down menu:
  - **1 Gbps.** The HBA runs at 1 Gbps.
  - **2 Gbps.** The HBA runs at 2 Gbps.
  - **Auto Negotiate.** The system determines what rate it can accommodate and sets it accordingly. (This is the default setting.)

- **Frame Size.** This setting specifies the maximum frame length supported by the HBAs. Select one of the following frame sizes:
  - 512
  - 1024
  - 2048

For the QLA23*xx* HBA, the default size is 2048, which provides maximum performance for F-Port (point to point) connections.

- **Hard Loop ID.** If you selected **Enable Adapter Hard Loop ID**, the HBA attempts to use the ID specified in this option. The default ID is 0. Enter an ID in the range 0–125.
- **Loop Reset Delay.** After resetting the loop, the firmware refrains from initiating any loop activity for the number of seconds specified in this setting. The default is 5 seconds. Enter a delay in the range of 0 to 60 seconds.
- **Enable Adapter Hard Loop ID.** Select this check box to force the HBA to attempt to use the ID specified in the **Hard Loop ID** option. By default, the **Enable Adapter Hard Loop ID** check box is cleared.
- **Enable Fibre Channel Tape Support.** Select this check box to enable Fibre Channel tape support. By default, this check box is cleared.
- **Enable Host Adapter BIOS** (Windows 2000/Server 2003)**.** Select this check box to enable the operating system to boot from a remote target.

After configuring the Adapter Settings, continue with the Advanced Adapter Settings or Boot Device Selection. Otherwise, click one of the buttons at the bottom of the page to save the new configuration (see section 14.8.1).

*14.8.1.2*

## Advanced Adapter Settings

The Advanced Adapter Settings are shown in figure 14-38 and described in the following paragraphs.

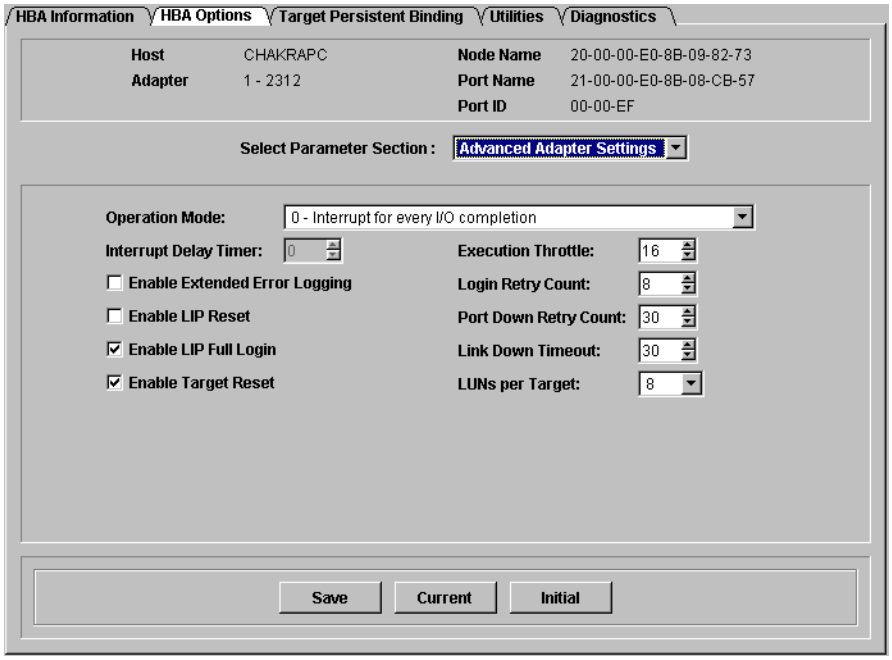



***Figure 14-38. HBA Options Tabbed Page (Advanced Adapter Settings, Windows 2000/Server 2003)***

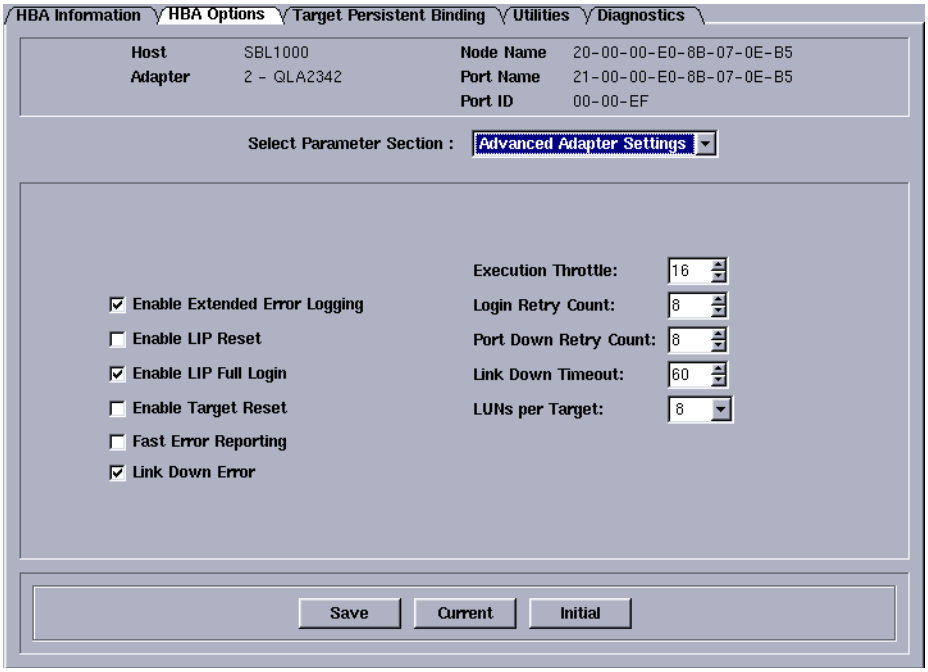



***Figure 14-39. HBA Options Tabbed Page (Advanced Adapter Settings, Solaris SPARC)***

This part of the **HBA Options** tabbed page allows you to configure the following host parameters for one or more adapters:

- **Operation Mode** (Windows 2000/Server 2003; QLA23*xx* HBAs)**.** This setting specifies the reduced interrupt operation (RIO) modes, if supported by the driver. RIO modes allow posting multiple command completions in a single interrupt. Select one of the following options from the drop-down list:
  - 0—Interrupt for every I/O completion, RIO mode is disabled (default)
  - 5—Interrupt when interrupt delay timer expires
  - 6—Interrupt when interrupt delay timer expires or no active I/O
- **Interrupt Delay Timer** (Windows 2000/Server 2003; QLA23*xx* HBAs)**.** This setting contains the value (in 100-microsecond increments) used by a timer to set the wait time between accessing (DMA) a set of handles and generating an interrupt. The default is 0. This setting is enabled only when the **Operation Mode** setting is 5 or 6. When the **Operation Mode** setting is 0, this setting is disabled.
- **Execution Throttle.** This setting specifies the maximum number of commands executing on any one port. When a port's execution throttle is reached, no new commands are executed until the current command finishes executing. Enter a value in the range 1–256. The default is 16.

- **Enable Extended Error Logging.** This setting provides additional error and debug information to the operating system. When selected in Windows 2000/Server 2003, events are logged into the Event Viewer. When selected in Solaris SPARC, diagnostic/event messages are logged into the system messages file. The default is disabled.
- **Login Retry Count.** This setting specifies the number of times the software tries to log in to a device. The default is 8 retries. Enter a value in the range 0–255.
- **Enable LIP Reset.** This setting determines the type of LIP reset used when the operating system initiates a bus reset routine. When this setting is selected, the driver initiates a global LIP reset to clear the target device reservations. When this setting is cleared, the driver initiates a global LIP reset with full login. The default is disabled.
- **Port Down Retry Count.** This setting specifies the number of times the software retries a command to a port returning port down status. The default is 8 retries. Enter a value in the range 0–255.
- **Enable LIP Full Login.** Select this check box for the ISP chip to re-login to all ports after any loop initialization process (LIP). By default, this check box is cleared.
- **Link Down Timeout.** This setting specifies the time the driver waits for the link to come up after link down before returning the I/Os. Valid values for the **Link Down Timeout** setting are in the range 0–255. A value of 0 indicates that the previous algorithm is used. A value in the range 1–255 indicates the number of seconds that the driver waits for link to come up before returning the I/Os. Entering a small value may report transient errors that should be ignored. The default value is 60 seconds.
- **Enable Target Reset.** When you select this check box, the drivers issue a Target Reset command to all devices on the loop when a SCSI Bus Reset command is issued. By default, this check box is cleared.
- **LUNs per Target.** This setting specifies the number of LUNs per target. Multiple LUN support is typically for RAID boxes that use LUNs to map drives. The default is 8. If you do not need multiple LUN support, set the number of LUNs to 0. This setting is effective only when the target does not support the Report LUNs command.
- **Fast Error Reporting** (Solaris SPARC)**.** This setting enables/disables the capacity of the OS to handle the rate at which an error is returned. Selecting this check box sets the value of the **fast-error-reporting** parameter in the configuration file to 1 (enabled); clearing this check box sets the **fast-error-reporting** parameter to 0 (disabled). By default, this check box is cleared.
- **Link Down Error** (Solaris SPARC)**.** Select this check box to disable driver error reporting during link down conditions (default).

After configuring the Advanced Adapter Settings, continue with Boot Device Selection. Otherwise, click one of the buttons at the bottom of the page to save the new configuration (see section 14.8.1).

*14.8.1.3*

## Boot Device Selection

The Boot Device Selection settings are shown in figures 14-40 and 14-41 and described in the following paragraphs.

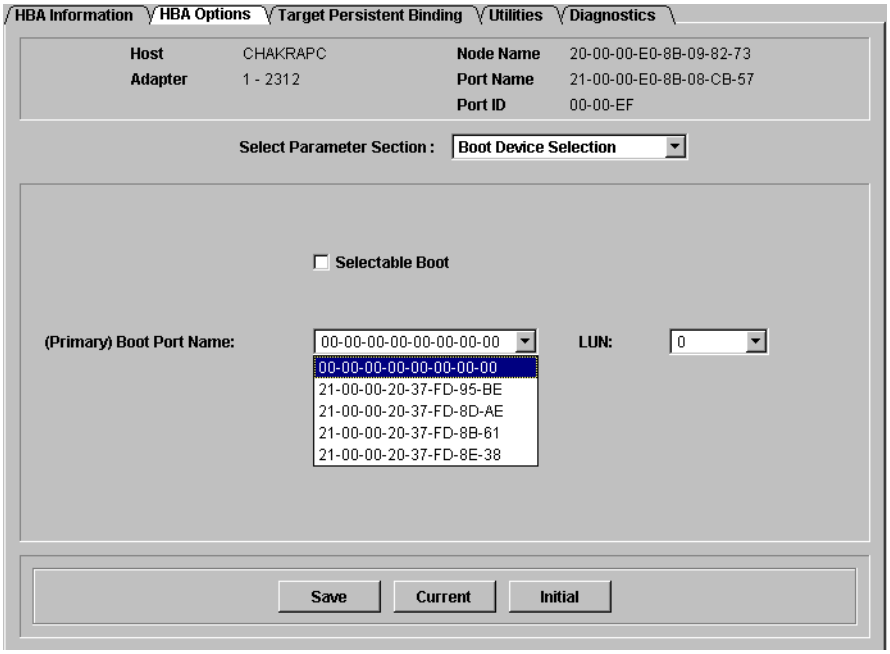



***Figure 14-40. HBA Options Tabbed Page (Boot Device Selection, Windows 2000/Server 2003)***

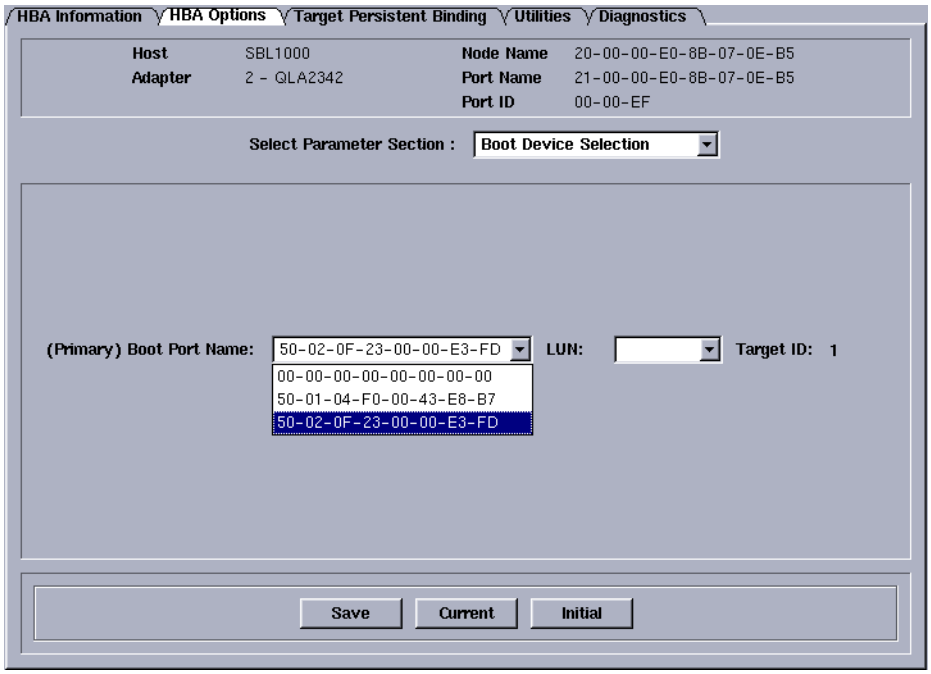



***Figure 14-41. HBA Options Tabbed Page (Boot Device Selection, Solaris SPARC)***

This part of the **HBA Options** tabbed page allows you to select a target device as a boot device for one adapter (only the Adapter Settings and Advanced Adapter Settings options apply to multiple adapters).

- **Selectable Boot** (Windows 2000/Server 2003)**.** At the time of publication, this feature was not yet implemented.
- (**Primary) Boot Port Name.** Select the world wide port name of the target from which you want to boot. When a valid target world wide port name is selected, the operating system boots from that target. (In Windows 2000/Server 2003, the **Enable BIOS** check box (Advanced Adapter Settings) must be selected for the operating system to be able to boot from the target specified).

  In Windows 2000/Server 2003, when the **Enable BIOS** check box is selected in the Advanced Adapter Settings and "00-00.....00-00" is selected in the **Primary Boot Port Name** drop-down menu, the operating system boots from the first target it finds with LUN 0.

  In Solaris SPARC, when "00-00.....00-00" is selected in the **Primary Boot Port Name** drop-down menu, all boot device information is cleared.

- **LUN.** Select the LUN of the target from which you want to boot. This option is used with the **(Primary) Boot Port Name** to designate the boot device.
- **Target ID** (Solaris SPARC)**.** This read-only field designates the target ID of the device from which the operating system will boot.

***NOTE:*** When performing boot device selection and target persistent binding on Solaris SPARC, note the following:

If a target device is selected as the boot device, the **Bind** check box and the **Target ID** field in the **Target Persistent Binding** tabbed page are disabled for the corresponding target. In addition, the **Bind** check box is checked, indicating that the target is already persistently bound with the given target ID (in the NVRAM). The corresponding target ID is taken; you cannot assign the same target ID to another other target on the same HBA.

If you clear the boot device settings on the Boot Device Selection part of the **HBA Options** tabbed page, the **Bind** check box and the **Target ID** field in the **Target Persistent Binding** tabbed page are re-enabled for the target that was previously selected as the boot device. The **Bind** check box is either selected or cleared, depending on whether the target is persistently bound in the configuration file (qla2*x*00.conf).

After configuring the Boot Device Selection, click one of the buttons at the bottom of the page to save the new configuration (see section 14.8.1).

### *14.8.2* Update and Save the NVRAM, Flash (Windows 2000/Server 2003), and FCode (Solaris SPARC)

You can update the NVRAM, flash (Windows 2000/Server 2003), and FCode (Solaris SPARC) and save the configurations to a file using the **Utilities** tabbed page. To access the **Utilities** tabbed page, perform the following steps:

1. Click an adapter in the HBA tree on the left side of the screen.

   If you want to update multiple adapters with the same NVRAM, flash, or FCode, hold the CTRL key while selecting multiple adapters. The adapters must be in the same series (QLA23*xx* HBAs or QLA22*xx* HBAs).

   The HBA tabbed pages are displayed on the right side of the screen.

   ***NOTE:*** Only the **HBA Options** (Adapter Settings and Advanced Adapter Settings) and **Utilities** tabbed pages can be configured for multiple adapters; therefore, the remaining tabbed pages do not display when multiple adapters are selected.

2. Click the **Utilities** tab.

### *14.8.2.1*
## Update the NVRAM

When you click the **Utilities** tabbed page, the **Update NVRAM** radio button is selected (see figure 14-42).

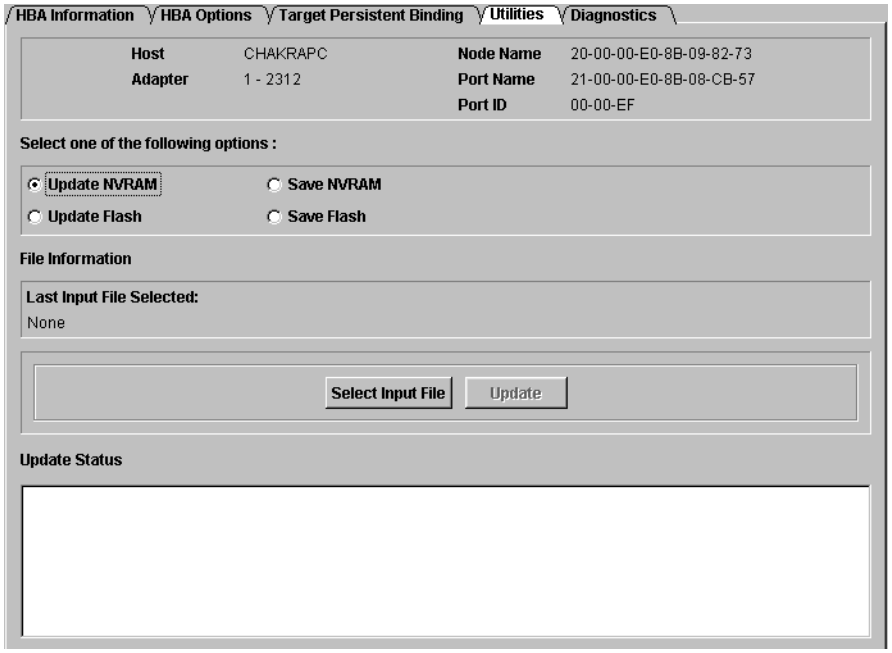



***Figure 14-42. Utilities Tabbed Page (Update NVRAM, Windows 2000/Server 2003)***

***NOTE:*** If you selected multiple adapters, the **Save NVRAM**, **Save Flash** (Windows 2000/Server 2003), and **Save Fcode** (Solaris SPARC) radio buttons do not display. These options cannot be performed with multiple adapters.

Perform the following steps to update the NVRAM:

1. Click **Select Input File** to select the file from which to update. Make sure you select the correct file. It must end with a .dat extension and have 256 bytes of data. You can get the file from the QLogic web site (www.qlogic.com) or QLogic service personnel. Note that NVRAM files are different for different HBAs: for example, the NVRAM file for the QLA22*xx* HBAs is different from the NVRAM file for the QLA23*xx* HBAs).

   ***CAUTION!*** Using the wrong file can render the HBA unusable.

2. Once you select the correct file, the **Update** button is active. Click **Update** to flash the NVRAM.

Once the NVRAM is updated, the status of the update is displayed in the **Update Status** box at the bottom of the page.

The SANblade Control FX application checks for the following conditions before updating the NVRAM:

- The NVRAM file must have a .dat extension.
- The NVRAM file must be for the proper HBA type. For example, the update is cancelled if you are trying to update the NVRAM of a QLA22*xx* HBA with a file that is meant for a QLA23*xx* HBA.
- The NVRAM file must have 256 bytes of data.
- The system device ID and vendor ID in the file must match those of the HBA being updated.

If one of these conditions is not met, the update process stops and a message is displayed that explains why the NVRAM update was aborted.

### *14.8.2.2*
## Update the Flash (Windows 2000/Server 2003)

When you click the **Utilities** tabbed page, the **Update NVRAM** radio button is selected (see figure 14-43).

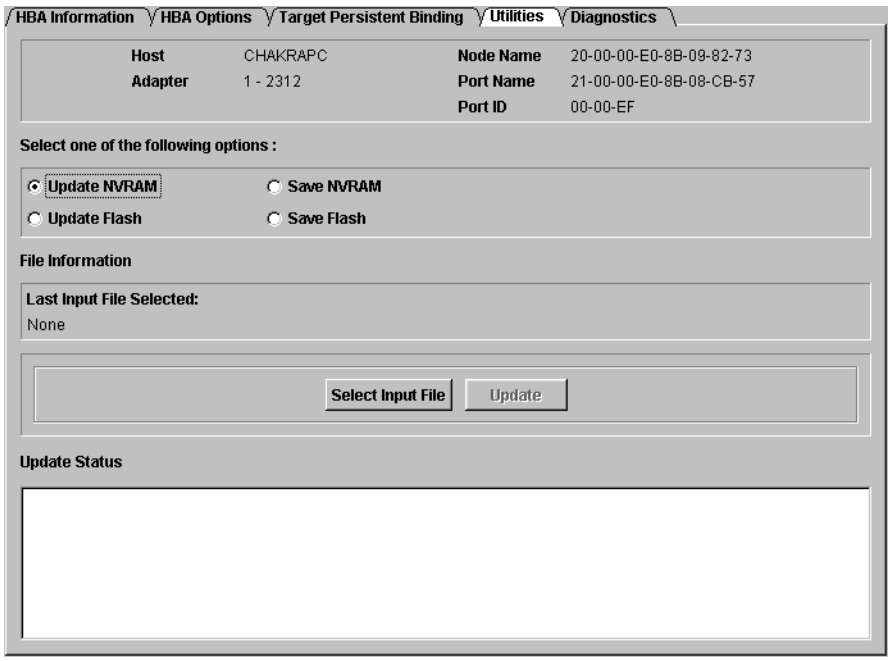



***Figure 14-43. Utilities Tabbed Page (Update Flash)***

***NOTE:*** If you selected multiple adapters, the **Save NVRAM** and **Save Flash** radio buttons do not display. These options cannot be performed with multiple adapters.

Perform the following steps to update the flash:

1. Click the **Update Flash** radio button.
2. Click **Select Input File** to select the file from which to update. Make sure you select the correct file. It must end with a .bin extension and have 131072 bytes of data.

   ***CAUTION!*** Using the wrong file can render the HBA and the operating system unusable.

3. Once you select the correct file, the **Update** button is active. Click **Update** to update the flash.

Once the flash is updated, the status of the update is displayed in the **Update Status** box at the bottom of the page.

The SANblade Control FX application checks for the following conditions before updating the flash:

- The flash file must have a .bin extension.
- The flash file must have 131072 bytes of data.
- The system device ID and vendor ID in the file must match those of the HBA being flashed.

If one of these conditions is not met, the update process stops and a message is displayed that explains why the flash update was aborted.

### *14.8.2.3*
## Update the FCode (Solaris SPARC)

When you click the **Utilities** tabbed page, the **Update NVRAM** option button is selected (see figure 14-44).

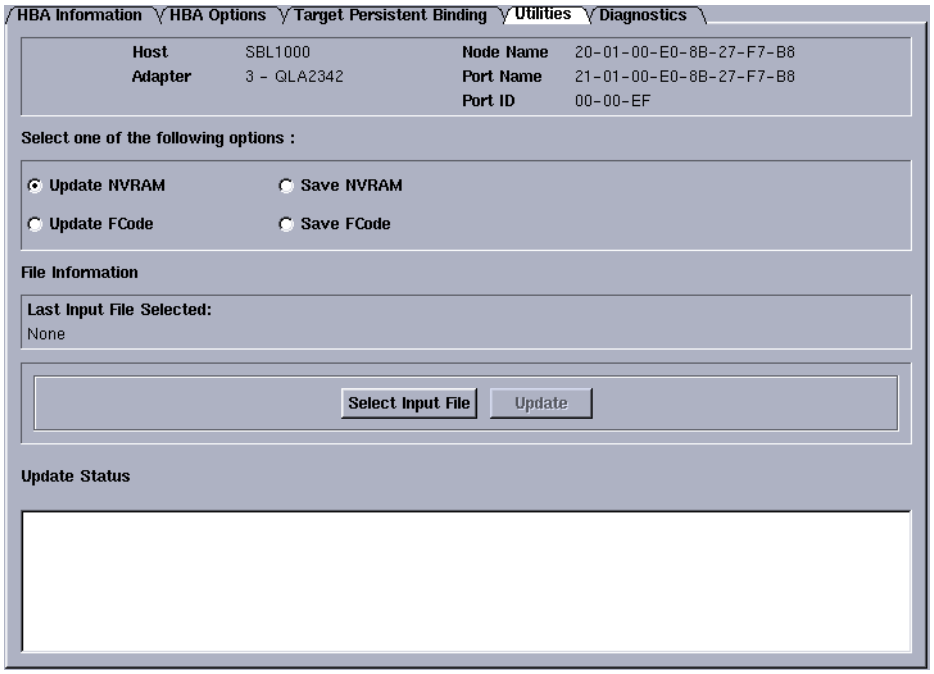



***Figure 14-44. Utilities Tabbed Page (Update FCode)***

***NOTE:*** If you selected multiple adapters, the **Save NVRAM** and **Save FCode** radio buttons do not display. These options cannot be performed with multiple adapters.

Perform the following steps to update the FCode:

1. Click the **Update FCode** button.
2. Click the **Select Input File** button to select the file from which to update. Make sure you select the correct file. It must end with a .prom extension. Note that FCode files are different for different HBAs. The FCode file for the QCP2*xxx* HBAs is different from the FCode file for the QLA2*xxx* HBAs. In addition, the files are different for different HBA types (22*xx*, 23*xx*, etc).

   ***CAUTION!*** Using the wrong file can render the HBA and the OS unusable.

3. After selecting the file, click the **Update** button to update the FCode.

Once the FCode is updated, the status is displayed in the Update Status box at the bottom of the page.

The SANblade Control FX application checks for the following conditions before updating the FCode:

- The FCode file must have a .prom extension.
- For PCI, the FCode file must be 0x20000 bytes. For SBus, the FCode file must be 0x30000 bytes.
- The subsystem device ID and vendor ID in the file must match those of the HBA being flashed.

### *14.8.2.4*
## Save the NVRAM, Flash (Windows 2000/Server 2003), and FCode (Solaris SPARC)

When you click the **Utilities** tabbed page, the **Update NVRAM** button is selected (see figure 14-45). In Solaris SPARC, the **Save Flash** button is replaced by the **Save FCode** button (see figure 14-44).

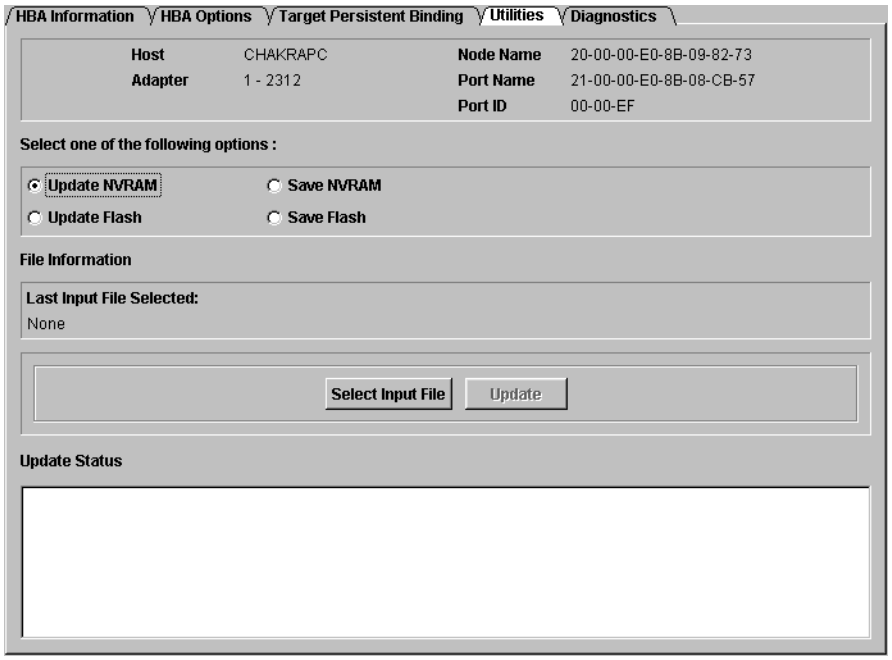



***Figure 14-45. Utilities Tabbed Page (Save NVRAM, Flash, and FCode)***

***NOTE:*** You cannot save the NVRAM, flash, or FCode for multiple HBAs.

Perform the following steps to save the current NVRAM, flash, or FCode to a file:

1. Click the appropriate button:
   - **Save NVRAM**
   - **Save Flash** (Windows 2000/Server 2003 and Red Hat/SuSE Linux)
   - **Save FCode** (Solaris SPARC)
2. Click the **Select Output File** button to select the file where the configuration will be saved.
3. The **Save As** dialog box displays. Select a file or type a file name in the **File Name** box.
4. Click **Save**. The configuration is saved to the appropriate file. The file name is displayed in the **Last Output File Selected** section of the **Utilities** tabbed page. The status of the save operation is displayed in the **Save Status** portion of the **Utilities** tabbed page (see figure 14-46).

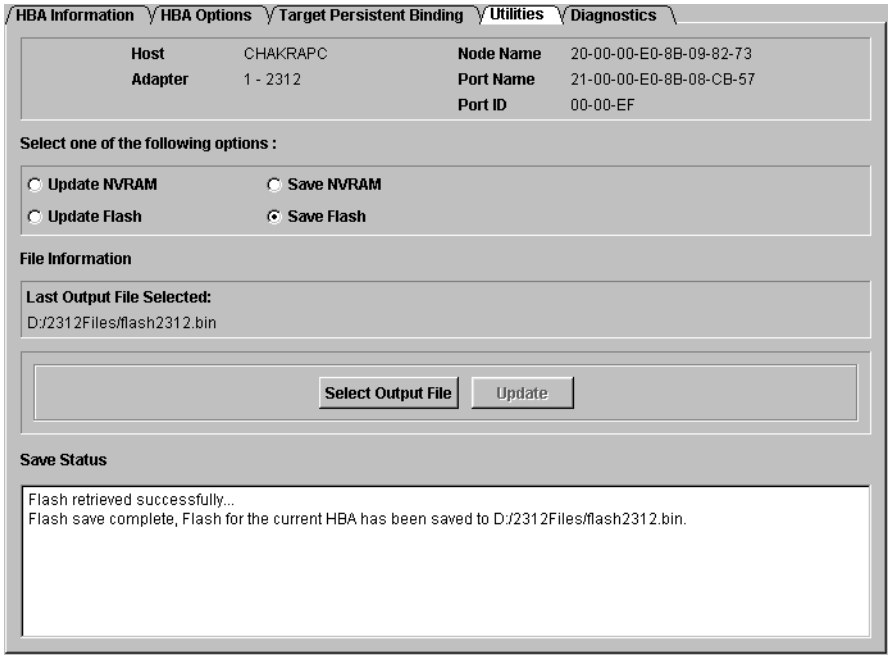



***Figure 14-46. Utilities Tabbed Page (Saved NVRAM, Flash, or FCode)***

*Section 15*

# SANblade Control FX Wizard

## *15.1* Introduction

The SANblade Control FX wizard provides step-by-step procedures to configure a common set of HBA options for all the QLA22*xx* and QLA23*xx* HBAs installed on the local machine.

Throughout this section, *HBA* and *adapter* are used interchangeably. Some screens in the GUI use *HBA*, some use *adapter*. Both refer to the QLA22*xx* and QLA23*xx* HBAs.

## *15.2* Getting Started

If all the HBAs on the local machine have not been configured using the SANblade Control FX wizard, the wizard starts. You can also access the SANblade Control FX wizard from the SANblade Control FX utility. From the **Tools** menu, click **Run Wizard**.

The following sections describe, step by step, how to configure your HBAs with SANblade Control FX wizard.

## 15.3 Select an HBA to Configure

The first screen that displays is the **HBA Selection** screen (see figure 15-1).

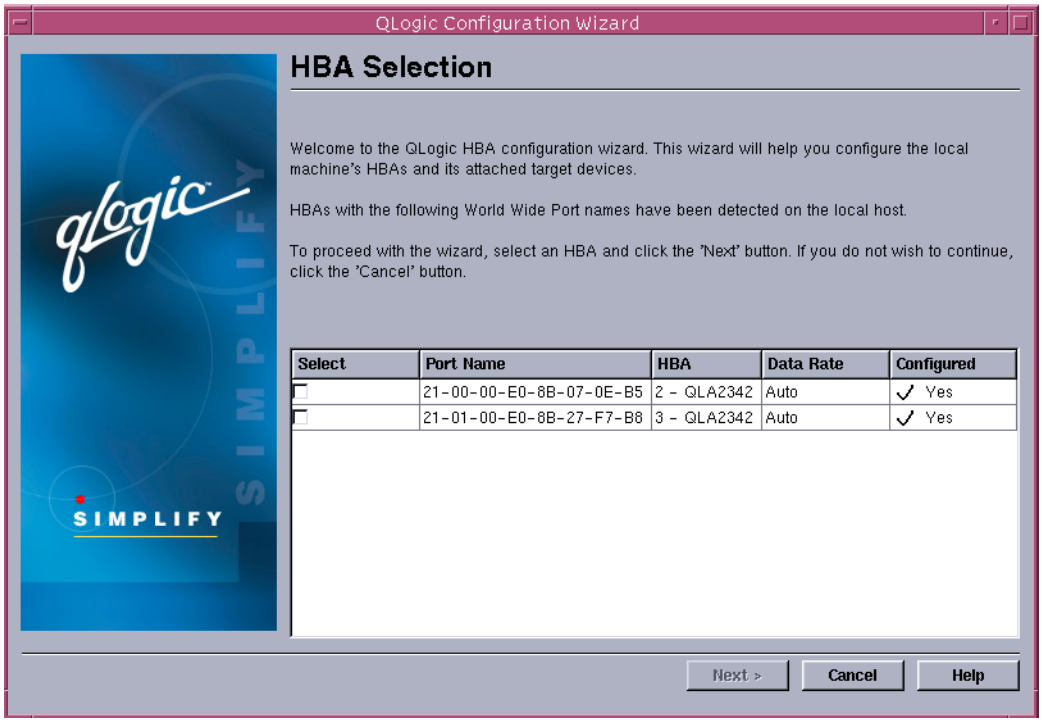



***Figure 15-1. HBA Selection Screen***

The following information is shown for each HBA:

- Select. A check box to select an HBA.
- Port name. World wide port name of the HBA.
- HBA model
- Data Rate. Data rate currently supported by the HBA.
- Configured. If this HBA has been configured using the SANblade Control FX wizard, this column displays **Yes**. If this HBA has not been configured, this column displays **No**.

From this screen, select the HBA you want to configure:

- Double-click the port name in the Port Name column. Or
- Click the row containing the HBA, then click **Next**. (You can also use the TAB key to scroll through the rows. Use the SPACEBAR key to select an HBA.)

You can configure only one HBA at a time. If you have more than one HBA in the system, the SANblade Control FX wizard will prompt you to configure additional HBAs once you have completed configuring the HBA selected in this screen.

## *15.4* Verify HBA and Driver Information

After selecting an HBA, the **HBA Information** screen displays (see figures 15-2 and 15-3).

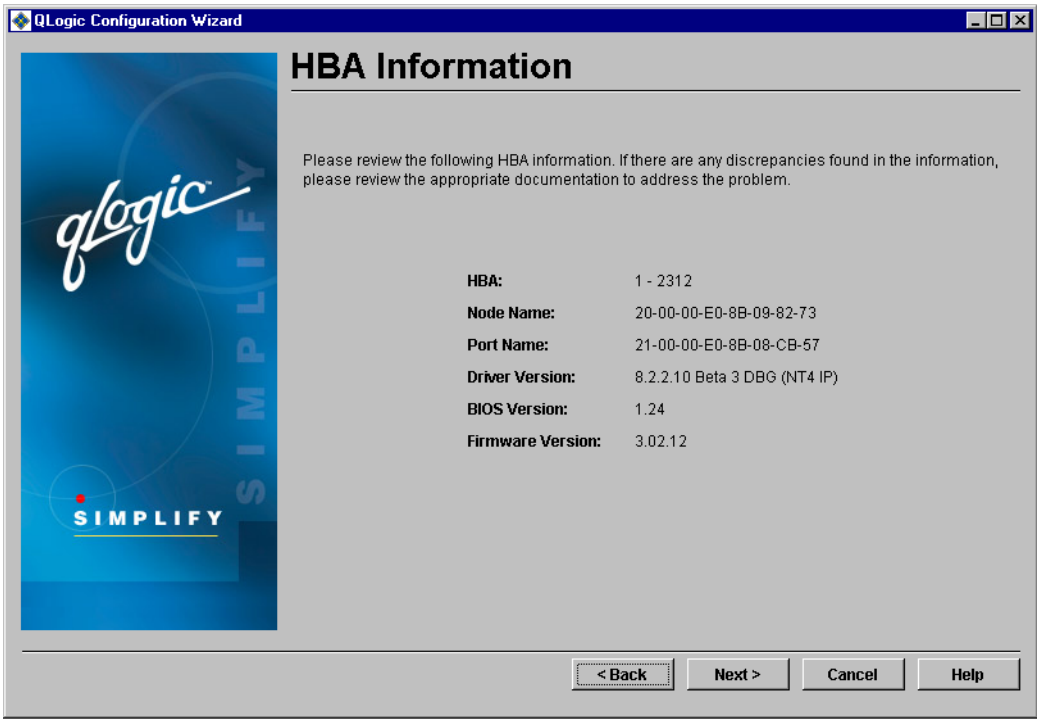



***Figure 15-2. HBA Information Screen (Windows 2000/Server 2003)***

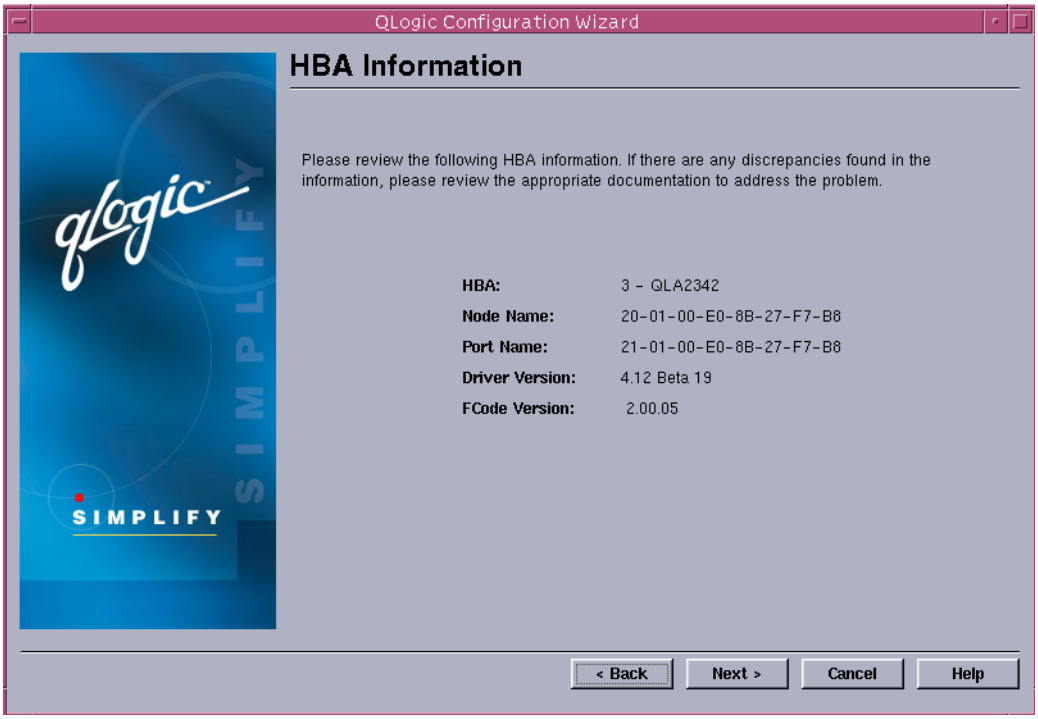



***Figure 15-3. HBA Information Screen (Solaris SPARC)***

The **HBA Information** screen displays the following information about the selected HBA:

- HBA type
- API instance number (Windows 2000/Server 2003)/OS instance number (Solaris SPARC)
- Node name
- Port name
- Driver version
- BIOS version (Windows 2000/Server 2003)/FCode version (Solaris SPARC)
- Firmware version (Windows 2000/Server 2003)
- Failover driver version (Windows 2000/Server 2003; if failover driver QLdirect is installed)

After verifying the HBA and driver information, click **Next**.

## 15.5 Update the HBA Connection Settings

After verifying the HBA and driver information, the **HBA Connection Settings** screen displays (see figure 15-4).


***Figure 15-4. HBA Connection Settings Screen***

Define the type of connection you want to use when the system boots. The following options are available:

- **Loop Only**
- **Point to Point Only**
- **Point to Point, Otherwise Loop** (QLA22*xx* HBAs)
- **Loop Preferred, Otherwise Point to Point** (default)

Select the data rate (QLA23*xx* HBAs). The following options are available:

- **1 Gbps.** The HBA runs at 1 Gbps.
- **2 Gbps.** The HBA runs at 2 Gbps.
- **Auto negotiate.** The system determines what rate it can accommodate and sets it accordingly. (This is the default setting.)

After making selecting the HBA connections settings, click **Next**.

## *15.6* Perform Target Persistent Binding

After selecting the HBA connection settings, the **Target Persistent Binding** screen displays (see figures 15-5 and 15-6).

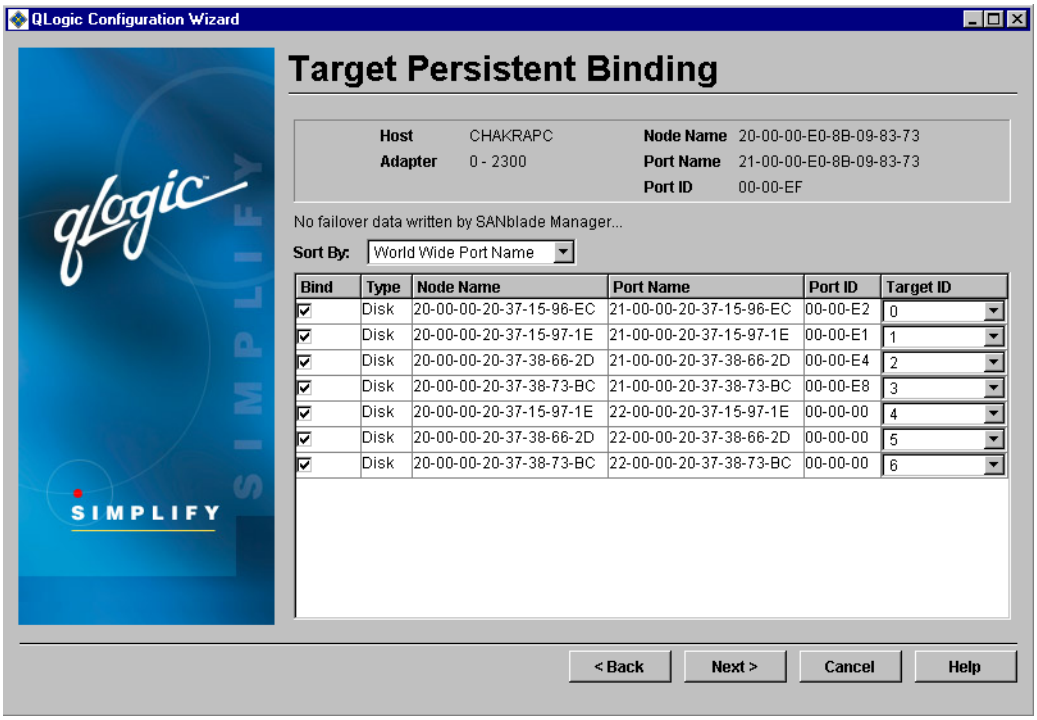



***Figure 15-5. Target Persistent Binding Screen (Windows 2000/Server 2003)***

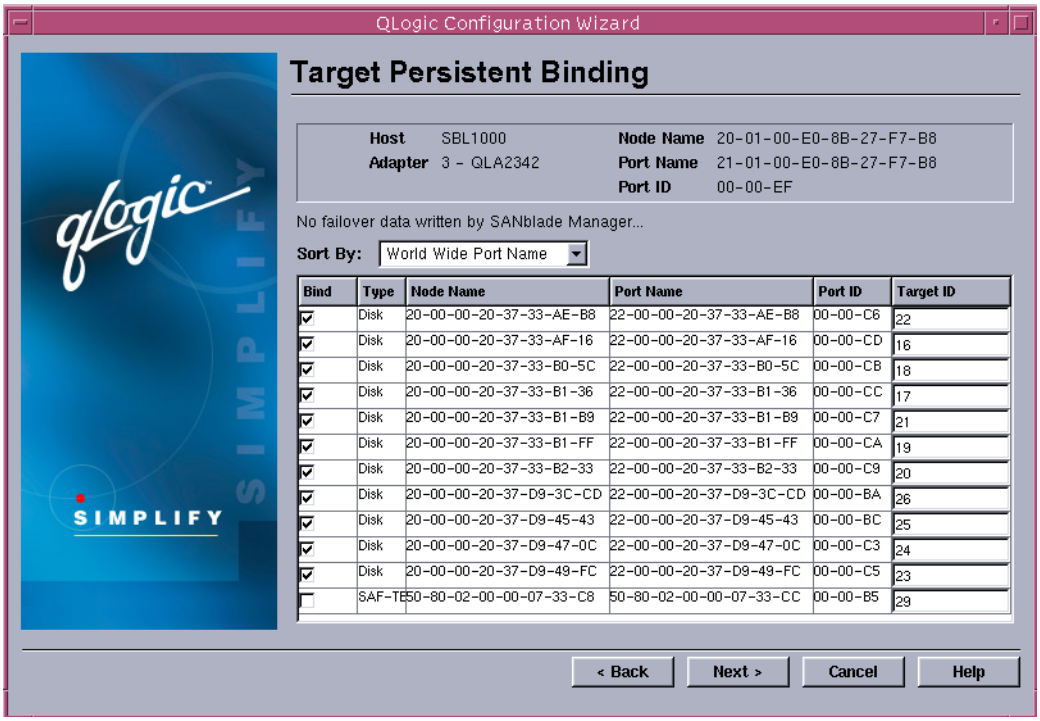



***Figure 15-6. Target Persistent Binding Screen (Solaris)***

This screen displays the host name, HBA model, node name, and port name of the selected HBA. The screen allows you to configure the targets connected to the current HBA.

The targets connected to the HBA are displayed in a table. Each row in the table corresponds to one port of a target. The table sort order can be changed by selecting an option from the **Sort By** drop-down menu:

- Word wide node name
- Word wide port name
- Port ID
- Target ID

The following information about each target is displayed in the table:

- **Bind.** Select this check box if you want to configure the port and bind it to the target ID that you have selected in the **Target ID** column. If you do not want to configure the port, clear the check box. If you clear the check box, the corresponding port will be unconfigured.
- **Type.** This column indicates whether the target device is a **Disk** or a **Tape**. If the type of the device cannot be determined, then **N/A** (not available) is displayed.
- **Node Name.** This column lists the world wide node name of the target device.

- **Port Name.** This column lists the world wide port name of the target device.
- **Port ID.** This column lists the port's ID.
- **Target ID.** This column specifies the port's target ID.

  SANblade Control FX first tries to retrieve target binding information (including target IDs) from persistent storage. In Solaris SPARC, if no persistent binding information was found in persistent storage, SANblade Control FX utility reports the target as unbound and its target ID as assigned by the driver. In Windows 2000/Server 2003, no IDs are assigned to targets that are not persistently bound.

  In Solaris SPARC, valid target ID values are in the range 0–255. The IDs are validated before they are saved. Duplicate target IDs are not allowed.

  In Windows 2000/Server 2003, target IDs can be assigned only to ports that will be configured. Valid targets ID values are in the range 0–(*n*–-1), where *n* is the number of targets attached to the HBA.

  Once persistent binding information for the targets is saved, the ports retain the assigned target IDs across reboots.

For a detailed description of how targets are persistently bound, see section 14.5.2.

After binding the targets, click **Next**.

## 15.7 Confirm Configuration Changes

After binding the targets, the **Confirm Changes** screen displays (see figure 15-7).

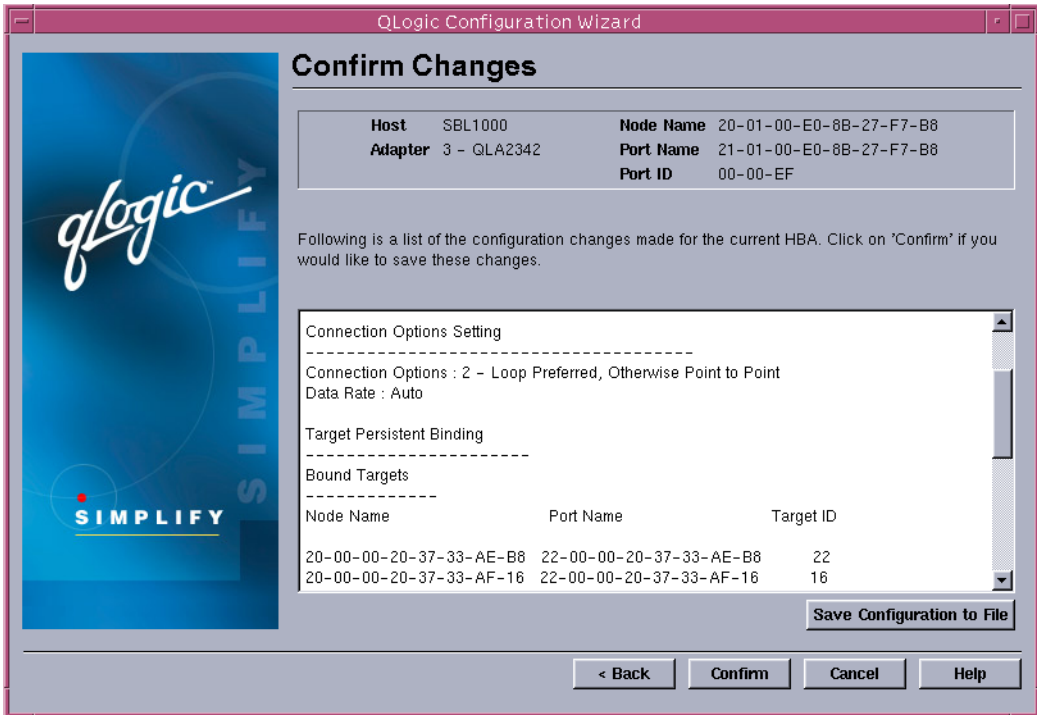



***Figure 15-7. Confirm Changes Screen***

The **Confirm Changes** screen shows all the settings for the HBA specified in the middle portion (white) of the screen.

If you want to save this configuration, click **Confirm**. To make any changes, use the **Back** button to retrace your steps to the appropriate screen.

If you want to save a copy of the configuration information, click **Save Configuration to File**. You are prompted to select a file name and save the information.

## 15.8 HBA Configuration Status

When you click **Save** from the **Confirm Changes** screen, the **HBA Configuration Status** screen displays (see figure 15-8).

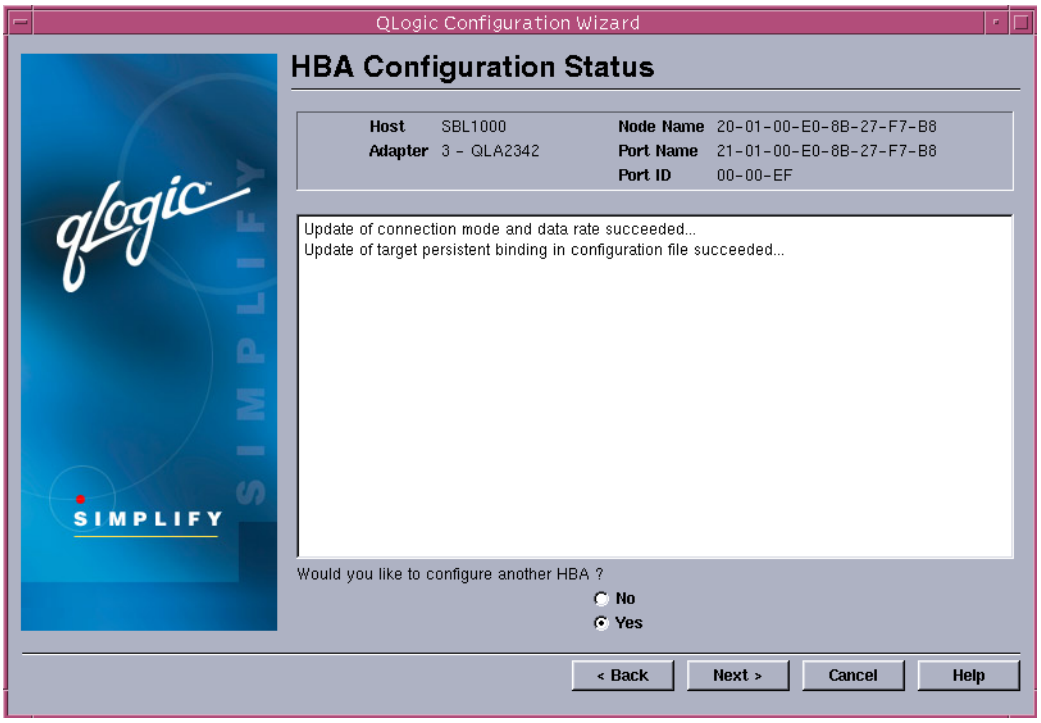



***Figure 15-8. HBA Configuration Status Screen***

If you want to configure another HBA, click the **Yes** radio button, then click **Next**. The **HBA Selection Screen** displays, and you can select the next HBA (see section 15.3). If you have only one HBA in your system, the option to configure another HBA is not displayed.

If you do not want to configure another HBA, click the **No** radio button, then click **Next** (see section 15.9). If you have not configured all the HBAs, a warning message displays (see figure 15-9).

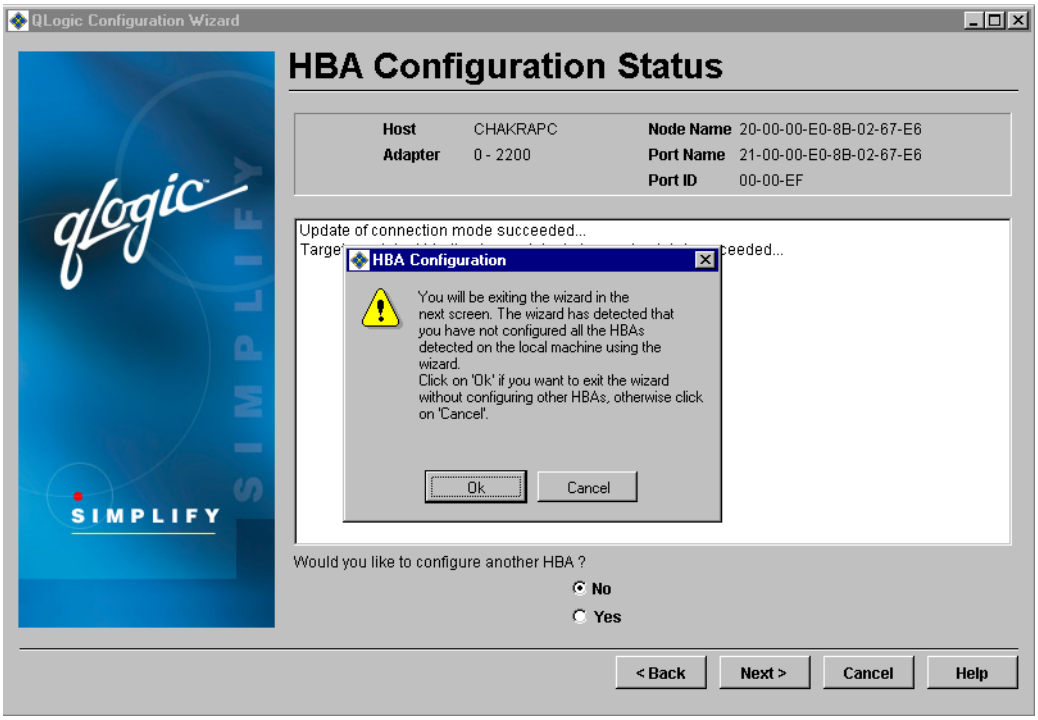



***Figure 15-9. HBA Configuration Warning Screen***

If you do not want to configure the remaining HBAs, click **OK.** The **Finish** screen displays (see section 15.9). If you click **Cancel**, the **HBA Configuration Status** screen displays.

## *15.9* Finish

If you selected the **No** radio button from the **HBA Configuration Status** screen and clicked **Next**, the **Finish** screen displays (see figures 15-10 and 15-11).

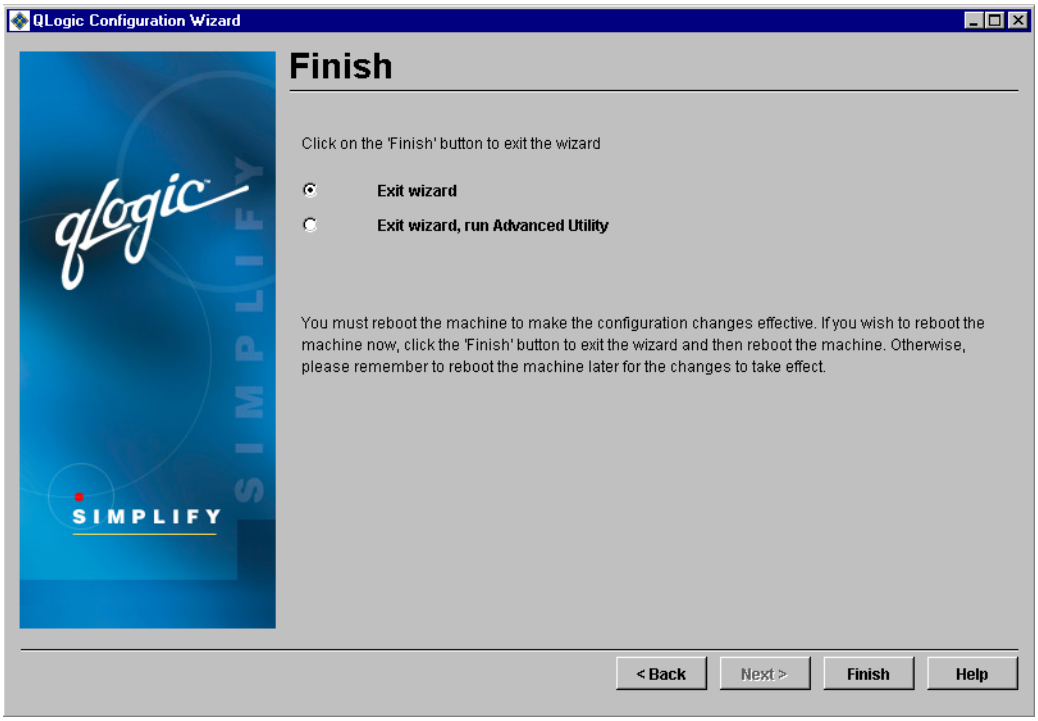



***Figure 15-10. Exit Wizard Screen (Windows 2000/Server 2003)***

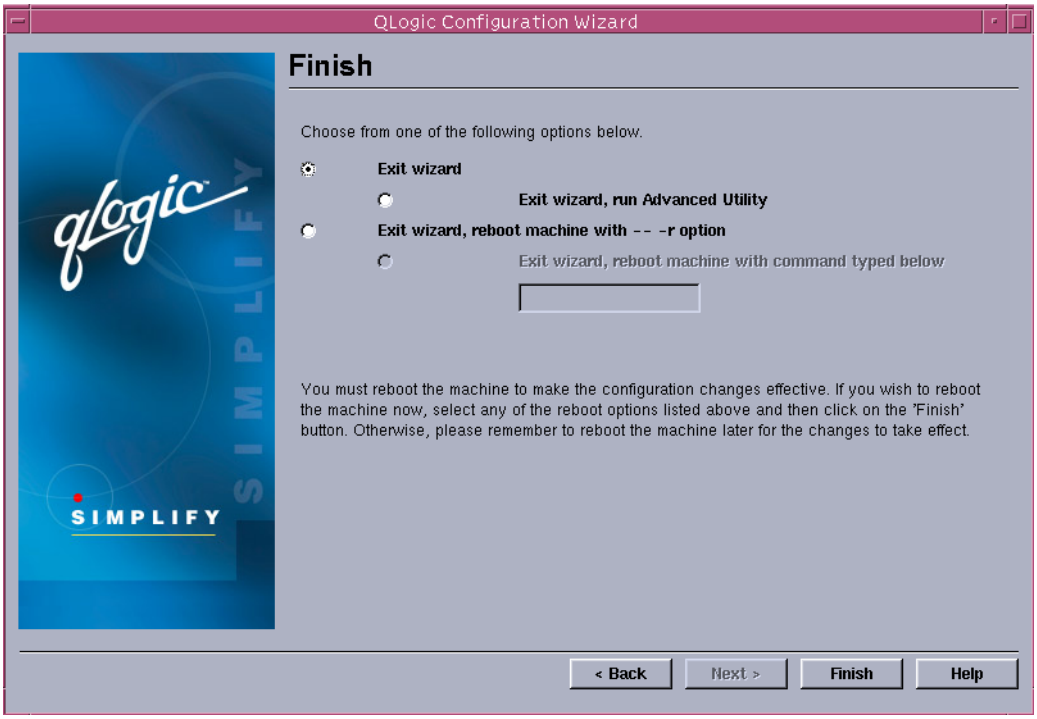



***Figure 15-11. Exit Wizard Screen (Solaris SPARC)***

Select one of the following options by clicking the radio button, then click **Finish**:

- **Exit Wizard.** This option exits SANblade Control FX. You need to restart your computer for the configuration changes to take effect.
- **Exit Wizard, run Advanced Utility.** This option exits the SANblade Control FX wizard and runs (or returns to) the SANblade Control FX utility. Select this option if you want to configure advanced HBA features. Changes made with the SANblade Control FX wizard and SANblade Control FX utility will not take effect until you restart the computer.
- **Exit Wizard, reboot machine with --r option** (Solaris SPARC)**.** This option exits the SANblade Control FX wizard. The system is restarted with the --r option for the configuration changes to take effect.
- **Exit Wizard, reboot machine with command typed below** (Solaris SPARC)**.** This option exits the SANblade Control FX wizard. The system is restarted with option you type in the selection box.

## Notes

# *Part III*
# SANblade CLI

This part of the *SANsurfer Application User's Guide* describes the SANblade command line interface (CLI). SANblade CLI is a simplified, condensed version of the SANblade Manager and SANblade Control GUIs.

SANblade Control CLI is available for QLA23*xx* HBAs on the following operating systems:

- Windows 2000
- Windows Server 2003
- Red Hat Linux 7.2, 7.3, Advanced Server 2.1
- SuSE Linux Enterprise Server 8 (SLES) (IA32) (kernel 2.4.19-64GB)
- Solaris SPARC v2.6, 7, 8, and 9

## Notes

*Section 16*

# SANblade CLI

## *16.1* Introduction

The SANblade command line interface (CLI) application is a simplified, condensed version of the SANblade Manager and SANblade Control GUIs. SANblade CLI does not provide any features that require a GUI.

SANblade CLI is supported for QLA22*xx* and QLA23*xx* HBAs on the following operating systems:

- Windows 2000
- Windows Server 2003
- Red Hat Linux 8, 9, and Advanced Server 2.1
- SuSE Linux Enterprise Server 8 (SLES)
- Solaris SPARC v2.6, 7, 8, and 9

***NOTE:*** Throughout this section, *HBA* and *adapter* are used interchangeably. *Target* and *device* are also used interchangeably.

## *16.2* Installing SANblade CLI

The following requirements must be met before you install SANblade CLI:

- The HBAs must be installed.
- The HBA drivers must be installed.
- You need approximately 3 MB on the PC to install the SANblade CLI application.

Note that the SANblade CLI application configures HBAs on the local machine; it cannot configure HBAs on remote machines.

### *16.2.1*
## Windows 2000/Server 2003

Perform the following steps to install SANblade CLI on a Windows 2000/Server 2003 operating system:

1. Download the scli_*x_x_xx*.zip file (from the QLogic web site or from the SANsurfer Management Suite™ CD-ROM) to a directory on your local machine. In the file name, *x_x_xx* stands for the current version of SANblade CLI.
2. Create a directory where the files will reside, for example: QLogic Corporation/SANblade CLI.
3. Use a utility such as WinZip® to extract the files to the directory created in step 2.

### *16.2.2*
## Red Hat/SuSE Linux

Perform the following steps to install SANblade CLI on a Red Hat/SuSE Linux operating system:

1. Download the scli-*x.xx.xx*-rel.i386.rpm file (from the QLogic web site or from the SANsurfer Management Suite CD-ROM) to your local machine. In the file name, *x.xx.xx* stands for the current version of SANblade CLI.
2. Enter the following text from the command line:

   ```
   rpm -iv scli-x.xx.xx-rel.i386.rpm
   ```

   The new package is installed in the /opt/QLogic_Corporation/SANblade_CLI directory.

   To query for the installed SANblade CLI package name, enter the following text from the command line:

   ```
   rpm -q scli
   ```

### *16.2.3*
## Solaris SPARC

Perform the following steps to install SANblade CLI on a Solaris SPARC operating system:

1. Download the scli.*x.xx.xx*.SPARC.Solaris.pkg.Z file (from the QLogic web site or the SANsurfer Management Suite CD-ROM) to a temporary directory on your machine. For example:

   ```
   /tmp
   ```

   ***NOTE:*** In the file name, *x.xx.xx* stands for the current version of SANblade CLI.

2. Type the following to uncompress the file:

   ```
   # uncompress scli.x.xx.xx.SPARC.Solaris.pkg.Z
   ```

3. Type the following to see the available package file:

   ```
   # ls
   ```

   The available packages display. For example:

   ```
   #scli.x.xx.xx.SPARC.Solaris.pkg
   ```

4. Type the following to install SANblade CLI:

   ```
   # pkgadd -d scli.x.xx.xx.SPARC.Solaris.pkg
   ```

5. You are prompted to select a package. For example:

   ```
   1  scli2-6        SANblade CLI
                     (sparc) 1.06.12 (Solaris 2.6 - 7)
   2  scli2-8        SANblade CLI
                     (sparc) 1.06.12 (Solaris 8-9)

   Select the package(s) you wish to process (or "all" to process
   all packages). (default:all) [?,??,q]:
   ```

   If your operating system is Solaris 2.6 or 7, type `1`. If your operating system is Solaris 8 or 9, type `2`.

6. The pkgadd program performs a series of checks, then posts a script warning and asks whether to continue the installation. For example:

   ```
   Processing package instance <scli2-8> from
   </temp/scli.x.xx.xx.SPARC.Solaris.pkg>

   SANblade CLI
   (sparc) 1.06.12 (Solaris 8-9)
   QLogic Corporation
   ## Executing checkinstall script.
   ## Processing package information.
   ## Processing system information.
      3 package pathnames are already properly installed.
   ## Verifying disk space requirements.
   ## Checking for conflicts with packages already installed.
   ## Checking for setuid/setgid programs.

   This package contains scripts which will be executed with
   super-user permission during the process of installing this
   package.

   Do you want to continue with the installation of <scli2-8>
   [y,n,?]
   ```

7. Type `y` and press ENTER to continue the installation.The pkgadd program then installs SANblade CLI. You are notified when the installation is complete. For example:

```
Installing SANblade CLI as <scli2-8>

## Installing part 1 of 1.
/opt/QLogic_Corporation/SANblade_CLI/adapters.properties
/opt/QLogic_Corporation/SANblade_CLI/menu.properties
/opt/QLogic_Corporation/SANblade_CLI/readme.txt
/opt/QLogic_Corporation/SANblade_CLI/scli
[ verifying class <none> ]
## Executing postinstall script.

Installation of <scli2-8> was successful.
```

## *16.3* Uninstalling SANblade CLI

### *16.3.1* Windows 2000/Windows XP

To uninstall SANblade CLI, manually remove the files from the directory created in section 16.2.1, step 2.

### *16.3.2* Red Hat/SuSE Linux

To uninstall SANblade CLI, type one the following at the command line, where *x.xx.xx* is the current version of CLI:

```
rpm -e scli-x.xx.xx-rel

rpm -e scli
```

To query for the installed SANblade CLI package name, enter the following text from the command line:

```
rpm -q scli
```

### *16.3.3*
## Solaris SPARC

Perform the following steps to uninstall SANblade CLI:

1. Type the following to remove SANblade CLI:

```
# pkgrm scli2-8
```

2. The program displays the package name and a script warning asking whether to continue the uninstall process. For example:

```
The following package is currently installed:
scli2-8    SANblade CLI
           (sparc) 1.06.12 (Solaris 8-9)
Do you want to remove this package?
```

3. Type `y` and press ENTER. The program displays another script warning asking whether to continue the uninstall process. For example:

```
## Removing installed package instance <scli2-8>
This package contains scripts which will be executed with
super-user permission during the process of removing this
package
Do you want to continue with the removal of this package
[y,n,?,q]
```

4. Type `y` and press ENTER. The pkgrm program notifies you when the uninstall process is complete. For example:

```
## Verifying package dependencies.
## Processing package information.
## Removing pathnames in class <none>
/opt/QLogic_Corporation/SANblade_CLI/scli
/opt/QLogic_Corporation/SANblade_CLI/readme.txt
/opt/QLogic_Corporation/SANblade_CLI/menu.properties
/opt/QLogic_Corporation/SANblade_CLI/adapters.properties
/opt/QLogic_Corporation/SANblade_CLI <non-empty directory not
removed>
/opt/QLogic_Corporation <non-empty directory not removed>
/opt <shared pathname not removed>
## Executing postremove script.
scli removed.
Menu property file removed.
Adapter property file removed.
## Updating system information.

Removal of <scli2-8> was successful.
#
```

## *16.4* Getting Started

SANblade CLI operates in one of the following modes:

- **Interactive mode.** SANblade CLI starts, then waits for and executes input commands until terminated by the user. This mode is used when you want to perform multiple operations.
- **Non-interactive mode.** SANblade CLI starts, performs functions defined by the list of parameters provided, then terminates. In this mode, the application is executed from a script file or when you want to perform a single operation.

In both modes, SANblade CLI is *not* case sensitive. However, file names in some operating systems are case sensitive; in this case, SANblade CLI *is* case sensitive for that particular file.

### *16.4.1* Interactive Mode

Type the following in a command window to start SANblade CLI in interactive mode:

```
scli INT or
scli
```

The Main Menu (see figure 16-1) displays. For example:

QLogic SANblade CLI

Version *x.xx.xx*

Main Menu:

1: Display System Information
2: Display Adapter Settings
3: Display Adapter Information
4: Display Device List
5: Display LUN List
6: Configure Adapter Settings
7: Configure Target Persistent Binding
8: Configure Selective LUNs
9: Configure Boot Device
10: Update BIOS
11: Update NVRAM
12: Update Driver
13: Flash Adapter Beacon
14: Perform Diagnostics
15: Display Usage
16: Quit

Enter Selection:

***Figure 16-1. SANblade CLI Main Menu (Windows 2000/Server 2003)—Interactive Mode***

Depending on the menu selection, SANblade CLI prompts for more input as needed. For example, if you select **Configure Adapter Settings**, SANblade CLI prompts you for the number that corresponds to the adapter you want to configure.

***NOTE:***

- Update Driver (option 12) is only available on Windows 2000/Server 2003 (IA32). In Solaris SPARC, option 10 is Update FCode.
- If the system has a STORport driver, target persistent binding (option 7) and selective LUN configuration (option 8) are not supported.

### *16.4.2* Non-interactive Mode

Type the following in a command window to start SANblade CLI in non-interactive mode:

```
scli <parameters>
```

SANblade CLI executes the command options, then terminates.

To list all of the available command line parameters and the SANblade CLI version, type the following:

```
scli -h or
scli -?
```

In Solaris SPARC, include double quotes around the question mark (?) if the system is running with a csh or tsch shell. For example:

```
# scli "?"
```

For world wide node name (WWNN), world wide port name (WWPN), and port ID parameter inputs, SANblade CLI accepts the notation with and without the dash (-). Hexadecimal values can be in uppercase or lowercase.

- The following inputs are valid for the WWN and WWPN:

```
20-00-00-E0-8B-01-83-C4
200000E08B0183C4
```

- The following inputs are valid for the port ID:

```
68-5C-AB
685CAB
```

All command line options must be preceded by the dash (-) notation. Most options have a corresponding menu selection in interactive mode. The valid command line options are listed in table 16-1.

***Table 16-1. Non-Interactive Mode Options***

| Non-interactive Option | Interactive Menu Selection (Windows) | Interactive Menu Selection (Red Hat/SuSE Linux, Solaris SPARC) | Description | Section |
|---|---|---|---|---|
| -G | 1 | 1 | Display system information | 16.5 |
| -C | 2 | 2 | Display adapter settings | 16.6 |
| -I | 3 | 3 | Display adapter information | 16.7 |
| -T | 4 | 4 | Display device list | 16.8 |
| -L | 5 | 5 | Display LUN list | 16.9 |
| -N | 6 | 6 | Configure adapter settings | 16.10 |
| -P | 7 | 7 | Configure target persistent binding | 16.11 |
| -M | 8 | 8 | Configure selective LUNs | 16.12 |
| -E | 9 | 9 | Configure boot device | 16.13 |
| -B | 10 | 10 | Update BIOS[a]/FCode[b] | 16.14 |
| -R | 11 | 11 | Update NVRAM | 16.15 |
| -D | 12 | — | Update driver | 16.16 |

*Table 16-1. Non-Interactive Mode Options (Continued)*

| Non-interactive Option | Interactive Menu Selection (Windows) | Interactive Menu Selection (Red Hat/SuSE Linux, Solaris SPARC) | Description | Section |
|---|---|---|---|---|
| -A | 13 | 12 | Flash adapter beacon | 16.17 |
| -K | 14 | 13 | Perform diagnostics | 16.18 |
| -H<br>-? | 15 | 14 | Display usage | — |
| — | 16 | 15 | Quit | — |
| -F | — | | Input from a file | 16.19 |
| -O | — | | Output to a file | 16.20 |
| -S | — | | Silent mode | 16.21 |
| -X | — | | Output in XML format | 16.22 |
| -Z | — | | Display all information for one or all adapters | 16.23 |

Table Notes

[a]Windows 2000/Server 2003, Red Hat/SuSE Linux

[b]Solaris SPARC

Options that have a corresponding menu selection cannot be combined: only one option is allowed in a single command. If multiple options are specified in a command, only the first one is processed. These options, however, can be combined with one or more options that do not have a corresponding menu selection, with the exception of -F and -Z.

For all command line options, SANblade CLI displays the following when there are errors in the command line input:

```
Error <error message>
QLogic SANblade CLI
Version x.xx.xx
Copyright 2003 QLogic Corporation

description of command entered
Usage: <current command use usage>
```

## *16.5* Display System Information (Command Line Option -G)

When this option is selected, the application displays the following information about the local machine:

- Host name
- OS type
- OS version (patches where applicable)
- QLogic failover API version
- QLogic SAN device management API version
- QLogic direct driver version (if installed)
- List of adapters: adapter number, WWPN, serial number, and firmware version
- Total number of QLogic Fibre Channel adapters detected

***NOTE:*** The failover and SAN device management APIs are QLogic-specific libraries required for SANblade CLI. The versions of these libraries are useful for debugging purposes.

## *16.6* Display Adapter Settings (Command Line Option -C)

When this option is selected, the application displays the following adapter settings:

- Connection options
- Data rate (QLA23*xx* HBAs)
- Hard loop ID
- Enable hard loop ID
- Loop reset delay (in seconds)
- Frame size
- Enable Fibre Channel tape support
- Operation mode (QLA23*xx* HBAs)
- Interrupt delay timer (100 ms) (QLA23*xx* HBAs)
- Execution throttle
- Enable extended logging
- Login retry count
- Enable LIP reset
- Port down retry count
- Enable LIP full login
- Link down timeout (in seconds)
- Enable target reset
- Maximum LUNs per target
- Link down error (Solaris SPARC)
- Fast error reporting (Solaris SPARC)

### *16.6.1* Interactive Mode

SANblade CLI prompts you to select a display option: view these parameters for all adapters or for a specific adapter. If you select a specific adapter, a list of adapters is displayed. Type the number that corresponds to the adapter, then press ENTER.

### *16.6.2* Non-interactive Mode

To display the parameter settings for all the adapters in the system, type one of the following commands:

```
# scli -C ALL
# scli -C
```

To display the parameter settings for a specific adapter, type one of the following commands:

```
# scli -C <HBA>
# scli -C <WWPN>
```

Where:

*HBA* = HBA number from adapter general information

*WWPN* = World wide port name of the HBA

## *16.7* Display Adapter Information (Command Line Option -l)

When this option is selected, SANblade CLI displays the following information about the selected adapters:

- Host
- Adapter number
- Adapter model
- Adapter node name (WWNN)
- Adapter port name (WWPN)
- Adapter port ID
- Serial number
- Driver version
- BIOS version (Windows 2000/Server 2003 and Red Hat/SuSE Linux)
- FCode version (Solaris SPARC)
- Firmware version
- QLdirect driver version (Windows 2000/Server 2003, if failover driver is installed)
- Device target count
- PCI bus number (Windows 2000/Server 2003 and Red Hat/SuSE Linux)
- PCI slot number (Windows 2000/Server 2003 and Red Hat/SuSE Linux)

- Port type (topology)
- Adapter status (online, offline)

### *16.7.1* Interactive Mode

SANblade CLI prompts you to select a display option: view the general information for all adapters or for a specific adapter. If you select a specific adapter, a list of adapters is displayed. Type the number that corresponds to that adapter, then press ENTER.

### *16.7.2* Non-interactive Mode

To display the general information for all the adapters in the system, type one of the following commands:

```
# scli -I ALL
# scli -I
```

To display the general information for a specific adapter, type the following command:

```
# scli -I <HBA WWPN>
```

Where:

*HBA WWPN* = World wide port name of the HBA

## *16.8* Display Device List (Command Line Option -T)

When this option is selected, the application displays the following information about the targets:

- Target path
- Target ID
- Target device ID
- Product vendor
- Product ID
- Product revision
- Target node name
- Target port name
- Target port ID
- Total LUNs
- Peripheral type

### 16.8.1 Interactive Mode

To display the device list, perform the following steps:

1. Select a display option: display the adapter's target information for all adapters or for a specific adapter. If you select a specific adapter, continue with step 2.
2. A list of adapters is displayed. Type the number that corresponds to the adapter, then press ENTER.
3. Select a display option: display the information for all devices or for a specific device. If you selected a specific device, continue with step 4.
4. A list of devices is displayed. Type the number that corresponds to the device, then press ENTER.

### 16.8.2 Non-interactive Mode

To display the device list for all the adapters in the system, type one of the following commands:

```
# scli -T ALL
# scli -T
```

To display the device information for a specific adapter, type one of the following commands:

```
# scli -T <HBA>
# scli -T <HBA WWPN>
```

Where:

*HBA* = HBA number from adapter general information

*HBA WWPN* = World wide port name of the HBA

To display the device information for a specific device on an adapter, type one of the following commands:

```
# scli -T <HBA> <Target WWPN>
# scli -T <HBA> <Target Port ID>
# scli -T <HBA WWPN> <Target WWPN>
# scli -T <HBA WWPN> <Target Port ID>
```

Where:

*HBA* = HBA number from adapter general information

*HBA WWPN* = World wide port name of the HBA

*Target WWPN* = World wide port name of the target

*Target Port ID* = Port ID of the target

## 16.9 Display LUN List (Command Line Option -L)

When this option is selected, SANblade CLI displays the following information about the LUNs for a specified target:

- Target port name
- LUN ID
- WWULN (world-wide unique LUN name)
- Vendor
- Product ID
- Product revision
- LUN size (in GB or MB)

### 16.9.1 Interactive Mode

To display the adapter's LUN list, perform the following steps:

1. Select either **Select Adapter** or **Select ALL Adapters**. If you chose **Select ALL Adapters**, skip to step 3.
2. A list of adapters is displayed. Type the number that corresponds to the adapter whose LUN list you want to view, then press ENTER.
3. Select a display option: display the adapter's LUN list for all devices or for a specific device. If you select a specific device, continue with step 5.
4. A list of devices is displayed. Type the number that corresponds to the device you want to view, then press ENTER.
5. Select another display option: display the information for all LUNs or for a specific LUN.

### 16.9.2 Non-interactive Mode

To display the LUN information for all the devices in a specific adapter, type one of the following commands:

```
# scli -L <HBA>
# scli -L <HBA WWPN>
```

Where:

*HBA* = HBA number from adapter general information

*HBA WWPN* = World wide port name of the HBA

To display the LUN information for a specific device in a specific adapter, type of the following commands:

```
# scli -L <HBA> <Target Port ID>
# scli -L <HBA> <Target WWPN>
# scli -L <HBA WWPN> <Target Port ID>
# scli -L <HBA WWPN> <Target WWPN>
```

Where:

*HBA* = HBA number from adapter general information

*HBA WWPN* = World wide port name of the HBA

*Target WWPN* = World wide port name of the target

*Target Port ID* = Port ID of the target

To display the LUN information for a specific LUN on a specific device in a specific adapter, type one of the following commands:

```
# scli -L <HBA> <Target Port ID> <LUN ID>
# scli -L <HBA> <Target WWPN> <LUN ID>
# scli -L <HBA WWPN> <Target Port ID> <LUN ID>
# scli -L <HBA WWPN> <Target WWPN> <LUN ID>
```

Where:

*HBA* = HBA number from adapter general information

*HBA WWPN* = World wide port name of the HBA

*Target WWPN* = World wide port name of the target

*Target Port ID* = Port ID of the target

*LUN ID* = ID of the LUN

## *16.10* Configure Adapter Settings (Command Line Option -N)

The following adapter parameters can be set by SANblade CLI:

- Connection options
- Data rate (QLA23*xx* HBAs)
- Frame size
- Hard loop ID
- Loop reset delay (in seconds)
- Enable adapter hard loop ID
- Enable Fibre Channel tape support
- Operation mode (QLA23*xx* HBAs)
- Interrupt Delay Timer (100 ms) (QLA23*xx* HBAs)
- Execution throttle

- Enable extended logging
- Login retry count
- Port down retry count
- Enable LIP full login
- Enable LIP reset
- Link down timeout (in seconds)
- Enable target reset
- LUNs per device
- Commit change for this HBA
- Link down error (Solaris SPARC)
- Fast error reporting (Solaris SPARC)
- Abandon changes and return to Main Menu

### *16.10.1* Interactive Mode

Type the number corresponding to the adapter, then press ENTER. A list of adapter parameters is displayed. When you make a selection from the list, SANblade CLI prompts you for additional input.

### *16.10.2* Non-interactive Mode

To set a specific parameter on a specific adapter, type one of the following commands:

```
# scli -N <HBA> <Parameter Name> <Parameter Value>
[<Parameter Name> <Parameter Value>]..
# scli -N <HBA WWPN> <Parameter Name> <Parameter Value>
[<Parameter Name> <Parameter Value>]..
# scli -N <HBA> <Parameter Alias> <Parameter Value>
[<Parameter Alias> <Parameter Value>]..
# scli -N <HBA WWPN> <Parameter Alias> <Parameter Value>
[<Parameter Alias> <Parameter Value>]..
```

Where:

*HBA* = HBA number from adapter general information

*HBA WWPN* = World wide port name of the HBA

*Parameter Name* = Name of the parameters

*Parameter Alias* = Alias of the parameters

*Parameter Value* = New value of the parameters

The pairs <*Parameter Name*> <*Parameter Value*> and <*Parameter Alias*> <*Parameter Value*> can be repeated to set multiple parameters in a single command.

The parameter names and aliases are defined in table 16-2.

***Table 16-2. Adapter Parameters***

| Parameter Description | Parameter Name | Parameter Alias | Parameter Value |
|---|---|---|---|
| Data rate | DataRate | DR | 0–2[a] |
| Connection options | ConnectionOption | CO | 0–2 for QLA23*xx*; 0–3 for QLA22*xx*[b] |
| Enable Fibre Channel tape support | EnableFCTape | EF | 1, 0[c] |
| Maximum LUNs per target | MaximumLUNsPerTarget | ML | 0, 8, 16, 32, 64, 128, 256 |
| Enable HBA hard loop ID | EnableHardLoopID | HL | 1, 0[c] |
| Hard loop ID | HardLoopID | HD | 0–125 |
| Frame size | FrameSize | FR | 512, 1024, 2048 |
| Enable LIP reset | EnableLIPReset | LP | 1, 0[c] |
| Enable LIP full login | EnableLIPFullLogin | FL | 1, 0[c] |
| Enable target reset | EnableTargetReset | TR | 1, 0[c] |
| Enable extended logging | EnableExtendedLogging | EL | 1, 0[c] |
| Reset delay | ResetDelay | RD | 0–60 seconds |
| Login retry count | LoginRetryCount | LR | 0–255 |
| Link down timeout | LinkDownTimeout | LT | 0–255 |
| Link down error | LinkDownError | LD | 1, 0[c, d] |
| Port down retry count | PortDownRetryCount | PD | 0–255 |
| Execution throttle | ExecutionThrottle | ET | 1–256 |
| Fast error reporting | FastErrorReporting | FE | 1, 0[c, d] |
| Operation mode | OperationMode | OM | 0, 5, 6[e] |
| Interrupt delay timer | InterruptDelayTimer | ID | 0–255[f] |

Table Notes

[a]Data rate (QLA23*xx* HBAs): 0=1 Gbps, 1=2 Gbps, 2=Auto

[b]Connection options: 0=loop only, 1=point-to-point only, 2=loop preferred, otherwise point-to-point, 3=point-to-point, otherwise loop (QLA22*xx* HBAs)

[c]1=Enabled, 0=Disabled

[d]This parameter is valid only in Solaris SPARC.

[e]Operation mode (QLA23*xx* HBAs): 0=interrupt for every I/O connection, 5=interrupt when interrupt delay timer expires, 6=interrupt when interrupt delay timer expires or no active I/O

[f]QLA23xx HBAs

## *16.11* Configure Target Persistent Binding (Command Line Option -P)

The following sections describe how to view, set, and delete the adapter's target persistent binding in interactive and non-interactive modes.

### *16.11.1* View Target Persistent Binding

In interactive mode, select the **View Target Persistent Binding** option from the submenu. A list of adapters is displayed. Type the number that corresponds to the adapter, then press ENTER.

In non-interactive mode, type one of the following commands:

```
# scli -P <HBA> ?
# scli -P <HBA WWPN> ?
```

Where:

*HBA* = HBA number from adapter general information

*HBA WWPN* = World wide port name of the HBA

In Solaris SPARC, include double quotes around the question mark (?) if the system is running with a csh or tsch shell. For example:

```
# scli -P <HBA> "?"
```

SANblade CLI displays all targets that are currently bound to the HBA in the following format:

```
<Target WWNN> <Target WWPN> <Target ID>
```

### *16.11.2* Set Target Persistent Binding

In interactive mode, select the **Set Target Persistent Binding** option from the submenu. A list of adapters is displayed. Type the number that corresponds to the adapter, then press ENTER.

If target persistent binding information was saved in persistent storage and the machine is restarted, the driver reads the information saved in persistent storage during start up. SANblade CLI then reads this information from the driver and sets the target IDs accordingly.

If no persistent binding information was saved in persistent storage, the driver assigns target IDs at start up; then SANblade CLI reports the target IDs assigned by the driver.

In Solaris SPARC, target IDs can be assigned to both configured and unconfigured ports. Valid target ID values are in the range 0–255. The IDs are validated before they are saved. Duplicate target IDs are not allowed.

In Windows 2000/Server 2003, target IDs can be assigned only to ports that will be configured. Valid targets ID values are in the range 0–(*n*–-1), where *n* is the number of targets attached to the adapter.

Once persistent binding information for the targets is saved, the ports retain the assigned target IDs across reboots.

***NOTE:*** Be sure to set persistent binding for every target that the adapter sees; otherwise, only the persistently bound target is visible, and all other targets are invisible to the adapter when the system reboots.

In non-interactive mode, type the following command to bind a target with a specific target ID:

```
# scli -P <HBA> <Target WWNN> <Target WWPN> <Target Port ID>
<Target ID> [<Target WWNN> <Target WWPN> <Target Port ID>
<Target ID>]
# scli -P <HBA WWPN> <Target WWNN> <Target WWPN> <Target Port ID>
<Target ID> [<Target WWNN> <Target WWPN> <Target Port ID> <Target
ID>]
```

Where:

*HBA* = HBA number from adapter general information

*HBA WWNN* = Word wide node name of the HBA

*HBA WWPN* = World wide port name of the HBA

*Target WWNN* = World wide node name of the target

*Target WWPN* = World wide port name of the target

*Target Port ID* = Port ID of the target

*Target ID* = ID to which the target is bound

The group <*Target WWNN*> <*Target WWPN*> <*Target Port ID*> <*Target ID*> can be repeated to bind multiple targets in a single command.

In Solaris SPARC, if a target has been designated as a boot device in section 16.13 and that target is persistently bound with this menu (8) or command line (-P) option, the target ID must match the one used in section 16.13.

### *16.11.3* Remove All Target Persistent Binding

In interactive mode, select the **Remove Target Persistent Binding** option from the submenu.

In non-interactive mode, type one of the following commands:

```
# scli -P <HBA> REMOVE ALL
# scli -P <HBA WWPN> REMOVE ALL
```

Where:

*HBA* = HBA number from adapter general information

*HBA WWPN* = World wide port name of the HBA

### *16.11.4* Remove Target Persistent Binding for a Specific Target

In interactive mode, perform the following steps:

1. Select the **Remove Target Persistent Binding** option from the submenu.
2. Select the **Remove Persistent Binding for Specific Target** option from the submenu.
3. A list of adapters is displayed. Type the number that corresponds to the adapter, then press ENTER.

In non-interactive mode, type one of the following commands:

```
# scli -P <HBA> REMOVE <Target WWNN>
# scli -P <HBA WWPN> REMOVE <Target WWNN>
```

Where:

*HBA* = HBA number from adapter general information

*HBA WWPN* = World wide port name of the HBA

*Target WWNN* = World wide node name of the target

## *16.12* Configure Selective LUNs (Command Line Option -M)

The following sections describe how to perform the following tasks for the adapter's target LUN mask in interactive and non-interactive modes:

- View the selective LUN
- Enable/disable a LUN
- Enable/disable all LUNs

***NOTE:*** Before configuring selective LUNs, you must persistently bind the targets (see section 16.11).

### *16.12.1* View the Selective LUN

In interactive mode, perform the following steps:

1. Select the **View Selective LUNs** option from the submenu.
2. Select the **View Specific LUN** or **View All LUNs** option.
3. If you selected **View Specific LUN**, all the adapters are displayed. Type the number that corresponds to the adapter, then press ENTER.

In non-interactive mode, type one of the following commands to view the adapter's currently enabled LUN list:

```
# scli -M <HBA> ?
# scli -M <HBA WWPN> ?
```

Where:

*HBA* = HBA number from adapter general information

*HBA WWPN* = World wide port name of the HBA

In Solaris SPARC, include double quotes around the question mark (?) if the system is running with a csh or tsch shell. For example:

```
# scli -M <HBA> "?"
```

The application displays the HBA's enabled LUN list in the following format:

```
<Target WWNN> <Target WWPN> <LUN ID>
```

In non-interactive mode, type one of the following commands to view a LUN's current select state:

```
# scli -M <HBA> <Target WWNN> <Target WWPN> <LUN ID> ?
# scli -M <HBA WWPN> <Target WWNN> <Target WWPN> <LUN ID> ?
```

Where:

*HBA* = HBA number from adapter general information

*HBA WWPN* = World wide port name of the HBA

*Target WWNN* = World wide node name of the target

*Target WWPN* = World wide port name of the target

*LUN ID* = ID of the LUN

If the input represents a valid LUN, SANblade CLI displays its current state as selected or unselected for that adapter.

### *16.12.2*
## Enable/Disable a LUN

In interactive mode, perform the following steps:

1. Select the **Enable/Disable a LUN** option from the submenu.
2. To continue, select **Select Adapter**.
3. A list of adapters is displayed. Type the number that corresponds to the adapter of the device/LUN number you want to enable or disable, then press ENTER.
4. A list of devices is displayed. Type the number that corresponds to the device/LUN, then press ENTER.
5. Enable or disable the selected LUN.

In non-interactive mode, type one of the following commands to enable (select) a LUN on a specific adapter:

```
# scli -M <HBA> <Target WWNN> <Target WWPN> <LUN ID> 1
[<Target WWNN> <Target WWPN> <LUN ID> 1]
# scli -M <HBA WWPN> <Target WWNN> <Target WWPN> <LUN ID> 1
[<Target WWNN> <Target WWPN> <LUN ID> 1]
```

In non-interactive mode, type one of the following commands to disable (unselect) a LUN on a specific adapter:

```
# scli -M <HBA> <Target WWNN> <Target WWPN> <LUN ID> 0
[<Target WWNN> <Target WWPN> <LUN ID> 0]
# scli -M <HBA WWPN> <Target WWNN> <Target WWPN> <LUN ID> 0
[<Target WWNN> <Target WWPN> <LUN ID> 0]
```

Where:

*HBA* = HBA number from adapter general information

*HBA WWPN* = World wide port name of the HBA

*Target WWNN* = World wide node name of the target

*Target WWPN* = World wide port name of the target

*LUN ID* = ID of the LUN

The sequence `<Target WWNN> <Target WWPN> <LUN ID> 0` or `1` can be repeated to select multiple LUNs in the same command.

### *16.12.3*
## Enable/Disable All LUNs

In interactive mode, perform the following steps:

1. Select the **Enable/Disable ALL LUNs** option from the submenu.
2. Type the number that corresponds to the adapter, then press ENTER.
3. Make a selection: enable/disable all LUNs on a device or enable/disable all LUNS on the current adapter.
4. If you select a specific device, a list of devices is displayed. Type the number that corresponds to the device/LUN, then press ENTER.
5. Enable or disable the LUNs.

In non-interactive mode, type one of the following commands to select all LUNs for all targets on the adapter:

```
# scli -M <HBA> SELECT ALL
# scli -M <HBA WWPN> SELECT ALL
```

In non-interactive mode, type one of the following commands to select all LUNs for a specific target:

```
# scli -M <HBA> SELECT <Target WWNN> <Target WWPN>
# scli -M <HBA WWPN> SELECT <Target WWNN> <Target WWPN>
```

In non-interactive mode, type one of the following commands to unselect all LUNs for all targets on the adapter:

```
# scli -M <HBA> UNSELECT ALL
# scli -M <HBA WWPN> UNSELECT ALL
```

In non-interactive mode, type one of the following commands to unselect all LUNs for a specific target:

```
# scli -M <HBA> UNSELECT <Target WWNN> <Target WWPN>
# scli -M <HBA WWPN> UNSELECT <Target WWNN> <Target WWPN>
```

Where:

*HBA* = HBA number from adapter general information

*HBA WWPN* = World wide port name of the HBA

*Target WWNN* = World wide node name of the target

*Target WWPN* = World wide port name of the target

## *16.13* Configure Boot Device (Command Line Option -E)

The following sections describe how to perform the following tasks in interactive and non-interactive modes:

- View the boot device selection
- Set the boot device

### *16.13.1* Viewing the Boot Device Selection

#### *16.13.1.1* Interactive Mode

Perform the following steps to view a since boot device or all boot devices:

1. Select **View Boot Device Selection** from the submenu.
2. If there is more than one adapter in the system, the menu displays the list of adapters. To view all the boot devices, select **ALL**. To view a specific boot device, type the number corresponding to the adapter whose boot device you want to view, then press ENTER.

#### *16.13.1.2* Non-interactive Mode

Type one of the following commands to view the boot devices for all adapters in the system:

```
# scli -E ?
# scli -E ?
```

Type one of the following commands to view the boot device for a single adapter:

```
# scli -E <HBA> ?
# scli -E <HBA WWPN> ?
```

Where:

*HBA* = HBA number from adapter general information

*HBA WWPN* = World wide port name of the HBA

In Solaris SPARC, include double quotes around the question mark (?) if the system is running with a csh or tsch shell. For example:

```
# scli -E <HBA> "?"
```

In Windows 2000/Server 2003 and Red Hat/SuSE Linux, each adapter's currently selected boot device is displayed in the following format:

*<HBA Number> <HBA WWPN> <Target WWNN> <Target WWPN> <LUN ID>*

In Solaris SPARC, each adapter's currently selected boot device is displayed in the following format:

*<HBA Number> <HBA WWPN> <Target WWNN> <Target WWPN> <Target ID> <LUN ID>*

If the system does not have an adapter with a boot device selected, the following message displays:

```
There is no boot device selected for any HBA in the system.
```

### *16.13.2* Set the Boot Device

The following sections describe how to enable and disable the adapter's boot device in interactive and non-interactive modes.

#### *16.13.2.1* Enable the Adapter's Boot Device

In interactive mode, select the **Set Boot Device** option from the submenu. If there is more than one adapter in the system, a list of adapters is displayed. Select the adapter for which you want to enable a boot device.

In Windows 2000/Server 2003 and Solaris SPARC, if the adapter does not have a boot device selected, a list of attached targets is displayed. The target list also includes a NULL (zero) target (default mode). In default mode, the adapter BIOS selects the first device with a LUN 0 as the boot device. If you select a non-NULL target, the menu displays the list of LUNs. After you select a LUN as the boot device, you are prompted to confirm the selection.

In Solaris SPARC, a list of targets using the WWNN and WWPN is displayed. When you select a target, SANblade CLI searches the persistent binding list to see if a target ID has been bound to this target. If none is found, you are prompted for a target ID. After you enter a target ID, the list of LUNs is displayed. Select one LUN as the boot device.

In non-interactive mode (Windows 2000/Server 2003 and Red Hat/SuSE Linux), type one of the following commands to select a boot device for the adapter:

```
# scli -E <HBA> <Target WWNN> <Target WWPN> <LUN ID>
# scli -E <HBA WWPN> <Target WWNN> <Target WWPN> <LUN ID>
```

Where:

*HBA* = HBA number from adapter general information
*HBA WWPN* = World wide port name of the HBA
*Target WWNN* = World wide node name of the target
*Target WWPN* = World wide port name of the target
*LUN ID* = ID of the LUN

SANblade CLI checks all parameters to verify that the adapter, targets, and LUNs are valid. The <*Target WWPN*>, <*Target WWNN*> and <*LUN ID*> inputs can be all zeroes. For example:

```
# scli -E <HBA> 0 0 0
```

In non-interactive mode (Solaris SPARC), type one of the following commands to select a boot device for the adapter:

```
# scli -E <HBA> <Target WWNN> <Target WWPN> <Target ID>
<LUN ID>
# scli -E <HBA WWPN> <Target WWNN> <Target WWPN> <Target ID>
<LUN ID>
```

Where:

*HBA* = HBA number from adapter general information
*HBA WWPN* = World wide port name of the HBA
*Target WWNN* = World wide node name of the target
*Target WWPN* = World wide port name of the target
*Target ID* = ID of the target
*LUN ID* = ID of the LUN

If you select an adapter with no target or a target with no LUN, SANblade CLI displays an error message and aborts.

In Solaris SPARC, assigning the target ID to the target of the boot-selected LUN is equivalent to the target persistent binding described in section 16.11. Therefore, if the target is persistently bound, its boot device entry must have the same target ID.

For all operating systems, if the adapter already has boot devices defined and they are different from the ones in the command parameter or menu selection, you are prompted to confirm the boot device selection:

```
The HBA already has a boot device(s) selected. Do you want to
replace it with the new one?
```

For all operating systems, if the adapter already has boot devices selected and they are the same as the ones in the command parameter or menu selection, the following message displays:

```
The HBA already has that device selected as boot device.
```

### *16.13.2.2*
### Disable the Adapter's Boot Device

In interactive mode, select the **Set Boot Device Setting** option from the submenu. If there is more than one adapter in the system, the list of adapters is displayed. Select an adapter. You are then prompted to confirm disabling the boot device.

In non-interactive mode, type the following command to disable the boot device for a specific adapter:

```
# scli -E <HBA> disable
```

Where:

*HBA* = HBA number from adapter general information

## *16.14*
## Update BIOS/FCode (Command Line Option -B)

This option allows you to update the system's BIOS (Windows 2000/Server 2003 and Red Hat/SuSE Linux) or FCode (Solaris SPARC).

### *16.14.1*
### Interactive Mode

Perform the following steps to update the BIOS/FCode:

1. From the submenu, select either **Select an Adapter** or **Select ALL Adapters**. If you chose **Select ALL Adapters**, skip to step 3.
2. A list of adapters is displayed. Type the number that corresponds to the adapter, then press ENTER.

3. The following warning displays:

   ***WARNING!!*** The option ROM update operation (BIOS/FCode) requires that the adapter has no outstanding input and output operations. Please make sure there is no active I/O before starting the operation. Also after the update operation, the adapter will be reset. This may adversely affect your SAN.

   Do you want to proceed with the operation?

   1. Yes
   2. No

   Type `1` to proceed or `2` to cancel the operation.

4. Enter a file name or a path to a file. SANblade CLI updates the BIOS/FCode.

### *16.14.2* Non-interactive Mode

Type one of the following commands to update the adapter's BIOS/FCode:

```
# scli -B <HBA> <BIOS/FCode File Name>
# scli -B <HBA WWPN> <BIOS/FCode File Name>
# scli -B <ALL> <BIOS/FCode File Name>
```

Where:

*HBA* = HBA number from adapter general information

*HBA WWPN* = World wide port name of the HBA

ALL = All adapters in the system will be updated with the new BIOS/FCode

*BIOS/FCode File Name* = File name or a path to a file that contains the updated BIOS/FCode image.

## *16.15* Update NVRAM (Command Line Option -R)

This option allows you to update the system's NVRAM.

### *16.15.1*
## Interactive Mode

Perform the following steps to update the NVRAM:

1. From the submenu, select either **Select an Adapter** or **Select ALL Adapters**. If you chose **Select ALL Adapters**, skip to step 3.
2. A list of adapters is displayed. Type the number that corresponds to the adapter, then press ENTER.
3. The following warning displays:

   ***WARNING!!*** Please update the NVRAM with extreme care. Incorrectly updating of the NVRAM may render the adapter inoperable. If you currently have boot device information set up in the NVRAM, updating the NVRAM from a file may result in changing that information.

   If you wish to preserve the boot device information, please either update the file with the correct boot device settings before the NVRAM update or re-configure the boot settings after the update.

   Do you want to proceed with the operation?

   1. Yes
   2. No

   Type `1` to proceed or `2` to cancel the operation.

4. Enter a file name or a path to a file. SANblade CLI updates the NVRAM.

### *16.15.2*
## Non-interactive Mode

Type one of the following commands to update the adapter's NVRAM:

```
# scli -R <HBA> <NVRAM File Name>
# scli -R <HBA WWPN> <NVRAM File Name>
# scli -R <ALL> <NVRAM File Name>
```

Where:

*HBA* = HBA number from adapter general information

*HBA WWPN* = World wide port name of the HBA

ALL = All adapters in the system will be updated with the new NVRAM

*NVRAM File Name* = File name or a path to a file that contains the updated NVRAM

## *16.16* Update Driver (Windows 2000/Server 2003) (Command Line Option -D)

This option allows you to update the adapter's device driver.

***NOTE:*** This option is not available in IA64 systems.

### *16.16.1* Interactive Mode

Perform the following steps to update the driver:

1. Enter a file name or a path name to the file.
2. The **Hardware Installation** dialog box displays with a warning message. Click **Continue Anyway** if you want to update the driver.
3. The **Confirm File Replace** dialog box displays with the name of the new driver file. Click **Yes** to continue.
4. The following message displays:

```
Driver update successful! Please reboot the system for the
changes to take effect.
```

### *16.16.2* Non-interactive Mode

Type the following command to update the adapter's device driver:

`scli -D <Device Driver INF File Name>`

Where:

*Device Driver INF File Name* = Absolute, full path name of the setup INF file that contains the information needed to update the adapter's driver. The binary image of the device driver must reside in the same absolute path location. For example:

```
scli -d c:\temp\ql2300\oemsetup.inf
```

## *16.17* Flash Adapter Beacon (Command Line Option -A)

This option allows you to stop and start flashing an adapter's LED.

### *16.17.1* Interactive Mode

If there is more than one adapter in the system, the list of adapters is displayed. Type the number that corresponds to the adapter, then press ENTER. An ON/OFF

message is displayed indicating the current flashing state of the adapter and, depending on the state, the option to start or stop the flashing.

### *16.17.2* Non-interactive Mode

To view the adapter's flashing state, type one of the following commands:

```
# scli -A <HBA> ?
# scli -A <HBA WWPN> ?
```

Where:

*HBA* = HBA number from adapter general information

*HBA WWPN* = World wide port name of the HBA

In Solaris SPARC, include double quotes around the question mark (?) if the system is running with a csh or tsch shell. For example:

```
# scli -A <HBA> "?"
```

When the adapter's LED is in flashing state, the following message is displayed:

```
LED Flashing is ON.
```

When the adapter's LED is not in flashing state, the following message is displayed:

```
LED Flashing is OFF.
```

To start or stop flashing the adapter's LED, type one of the following commands:

```
# scli -A <HBA>
# scli -A <HBA WWPN>
```

SANblade CLI toggles the adapter's LED flashing state. If the LED is flashing, the flashing stops. If the LED is not flashing, the flashing starts.

If SANblade CLI is not in silent mode (see section 16.21), one of the following messages is displayed to indicate the adapter's current flashing state:

```
The LED Flashing for <HBA> <HBA WWPN> has been turned ON
The LED Flashing for <HBA> <HBA WWPN> has been turned OFF
```

The <*HBA*> or <*HBA WWPN*> must match with the command input parameter.

## *16.18* Perform Diagnostics (Command Line Options -KL and -KR)

This option allows you to run a loopback test or a read/write buffer test.

### *16.18.1*
## Interactive Mode

Perform the following steps to run a loopback test or a read/write buffer test:

1. Select the adapter you want to test. The **Diagnostic Test Selection** submenu displays.
2. Type the number that corresponds to the test you want to run, then press ENTER:
   - `1` = loopback test
   - `2` = read/write buffer test

   If you want to test a different adapter, type `3`, then press ENTER.
3. The **Configure Diagnostic Loopback Test Parameters** or **Configure Diagnostic Read/Write Buffer Test Parameters** submenu displays. Select one of the following options:

   **1: Display Test Configuration.** Type `1` to display the current parameter values. See figure 16-2 for an example; the top of the figure displays the test configuration.

   **2: Restore Test Configuration to Default.** Type `2` to return all parameters to their default values.

   **3: Customize Test Configuration.** Type `3` to customize any or all of the parameter values. Continue with step 4.

   **4: Run Diagnostic Test with Current Configuration.** Type 4 to run the loopback or read/write buffer test with the current parameter values. To see these values, type `1` (**Display Test Configuration)**.

   See figure 16-2 for an example of loopback test results. See figure 16-3 for an example of read/write buffer test results.

   **5: Return to Adapter Selection Menu.** Type `5` to select another adapter.
4. If you selected **Customize Test Configuration** in step 3, the **Diagnostic Test Configuration Menu** displays. See sections 16.18.2.1 through 16.18.2.5 for a description of the parameters and their values. Perform the following steps for each parameter you want to change:

   a. Type the number associated with the parameter you want to change.

   b. Enter the parameter value.

   c. Type `8` to return to the **Diagnostic Test Configuration Menu**.
5. After customizing the test parameters, save the changes by typing `7` (**Commit Changes for Current Configuration**). The **Configure Diagnostic Loopback**

**Test Parameters** or **Configure Diagnostic Read/Write Buffer Test Parameters** submenu displays.

6. Type `4` to run the loopback or read/write buffer test.

### *16.18.2* Non-interactive Mode

The -kl command performs the loopback test; the -kr command performs the read-write buffer test.

To perform a loopback test using the default parameters, type one of the following:

```
# scli -kl <HBA#>
# scli -kl <HBA WWPN>
```

To perform a read/write test using the default parameters, type one of the following:

```
# scli -kr <HBA#>
# scli -kr <HBA WWPN>
```

Sections 16.18.2.1 through 16.18.2.5 describe how to change the default parameters for both of these tests. Section 16.18.2.6 contains command line examples and test results for a loopback test. Section 16.18.2.7 contains command line examples and test results for a read/write buffer test.

#### *16.18.2.1* Data Pattern: DP <*value*> or DataPattern <*value*>

The data pattern must be in a two-character hexadecimal pattern in the ranges 0–9 and A–F. The hex letters can be upper or lower case. The default data pattern is *random*. For example:

```
# scli -kl <HBA#> DP Random
# scli -kl <HBA WWPN> DP Random
```

To enter a customized value, type one of the following:

```
# scli -kl <HBA#> DP <value>
# scli -kl <HBA WWPN> DP <value>
```

#### *16.18.2.2* Data Size: DS <*value*> or DataSize <*value*>

The data size can be 8, 16, 32, or 64 bytes. The default value is 8 bytes.

#### *16.18.2.3* Number of Tests: TC <*value*> or TestCount <*value*>

The number of tests run must be in the range 0–10000. A value of 0 indicates that the test will be continuous (it will stop when you press ENTER). The default number of tests run is 500.

#### *16.18.2.4*
## Test Increment: TI <*value*> or TestIncrement <*value*>

The test increment must be in the range 1–10000. If the number of tests is continuous (see section 16.18.2.3), the test increment is automatically set to 125. The default test increment is 1.

#### *16.18.2.5*
## On Error: OE <*value*> or OnError <*value*>

This parameter determines how errors are handled. The valid values are listed in table 16-3.

***Table 16-3. On Error Parameter***

| Value | Meaning |
|---|---|
| 0 | The error is ignored. This is the default value. |
| 1 | If an error occurs, the test is stopped. |
| 2 | If an error occurs, the same data pattern and test is used until the error is cleared. |

#### *16.18.2.6*
## Run a Loopback Test

This test sends and receives messages through a loopback or through an echo command to the switch.

***NOTE:*** An echo test is run instead of a loopback test under the following conditions:

- You have a QLA23*xx* HBA that is connected to the fabric through a point-to-point connection (F-port).
- Your operating system has one of the driver versions listed in table 14-1.

To perform a loopback test using the current parameters, type one of the following:

```
# scli -kl <HBA#>
# scli -kl <HBA WWPN>
```

Sections 16.18.2.1 through 16.18.2.5 describe the parameters and their default values.

The following examples perform 500 loopback tests with a test increment of 10, a data pattern of FFh, and a data size of 8 bytes. The test will stop if an error occurs.

```
# scli -kl <HBA WWPN> dp FF ds 8 tc 500 ti 10 oe 1
# scli -kl <HBA#> dp FF ds 8 tc 500 ti 10 oe 1
```

You do not have to set each parameter for the loopback test. If you do not specify a parameter in the command line, the current parameter value is used. For example, the following command sets the data pattern to FFh and uses the current values for the other parameters:

```
# scli -kl <HBA#> dp FF
```

The following example sets the data size to 16 bytes and has the test loop if an error occurs. The other parameters use the current values.

```
# scli -kl <HBA WWPN> ds 16 oe 2
```

Figure 16-2 shows the results for a successful loopback test.

```
Test Configuration
Data Pattern                    =  Random
Data Size (Bytes)               =  8
Number of test(s) (1-10,000)    =  N/A
Test Increment (1-10,000)       =  125
On Error                        =  Ignore
Test Continuous                 =  ON
Diagnostics - Loopback Test Result
Note: Press <Enter> to stop the test any time

 HBA      Data Test Pattern       Status      CRC     Disparity  FrameLength  Active
 0     B1-3B-6A-A5-11-28-C1-8C    Success      0          0           0          /
```

***Figure 16-2. Sample Loopback Test Results***

*16.18.2.7*

## Run a Read/Write Buffer Test

This test runs on all devices on the selected adapter. This test sends the SCSI Write Buffer command to the devices and uses the Read Buffer command to read the data back and perform a data comparison.

***NOTE:*** All devices attached to the adapter must support SCSI Read/Write Buffer commands.

To perform a read/write test using the current parameters, type one of the following:

```
# scli -kr <HBA#>
# scli -kr <HBA WWPN>
```

Sections 16.18.2.1 through 16.18.2.5 describe the parameters and their default values.

The following examples perform 500 read/write buffer tests with a test increment of 10, a data pattern of FFh, and a data size of 8 bytes. The test will stop if an error occurs.

```
# scli -kr <HBA#> dp FF ds 8 tc 500 ti 10 oe 1
# scli -kr <HBA WWPN> dp FF ds 8 tc 500 ti 10 oe 1
```

You do not have to set each parameter for the read/write buffer test. If you do not specify a parameter in the command line, the current parameter value is used. For example, the following command sets the data pattern to FFh and uses the current values for the other parameters:

```
# scli -kr <HBA#> dp FF
```

The following example sets the data size to 16 bytes and has the test loop if an error occurs. The other parameters use the current values.

```
# scli -kr <HBA WWPN> ds 16 oe 2
```

Figure 16-3 shows the results for a successful read/write buffer test.

```
Test Configuration
Data Pattern                        =  Random
Data Size (Bytes)                   =  8
Number of test(s) (1-10,000)        =  N/A
Test Increment (1-10,000)           =  125
On Error                            =  Ignore
Test Continuous                     =  ON

Diagnostics - Read/Write Buffer Test Result

Note: Press <Enter> to stop the test any time


 Pass        Data Pattern          Status
 32    79-FE-52-DB-25-43-E5-3C    Success
```

***Figure 16-3. Sample Read/Write Buffer Test Results***

If the read/write buffer test fails, the following information is displayed:

- Loop/port ID
- Status
- Data miscompare

- Link failure
- Loss of sync
- Loss of signal
- Invalid CRC

## *16.19* Input From a File (Command Line Option -F)

***NOTE:*** This option is valid only in non-interactive mode.

To input parameter options to SANblade CLI through a text file, type `-F`, followed by the file name. For example:

```
# scli -F command.txt
```

The text file must be formatted as follows:

- The file must contain a single line.
- The file must contain only parameters.
- The file cannot contain another -F option.

## *16.20* Output to a File (Command Line Option -O)

***NOTE:***

- This option is valid only in non-interactive mode.
- This option can be used with all non-interactive mode options that have a corresponding interactive mode option (see table 16-1). The option must be the first or last command in the command line.

To output result and status messages into a file, type -O, followed by the file name. For example:

```
# scli -L 2 -S -O output.txt
```

If the file name is `SYSTEM.txt`, the messages are logged in the following locations:

- Windows 2000/Server 2003: syslog.log in the current directory
- Red Hat/SuSE Linux: /var/log/messages
- Solaris SPARC: /var/adm/messages

If the file already exists, the new messages are appended to the current file.

## *16.21* Silent Mode (Command Line Option -S)

***NOTE:***

- This option is valid only in non-interactive mode.
- This option can be used with all non-interactive mode options that have a corresponding interactive mode option (see table 16-1). The option must be the first or last command in the command line.

In non-interactive mode, result and status messages generated by the application are displayed by default unless suppressed by silent mode. This option is usually combined with the -O option (see section 16.20) so that the output is saved in a file and not displayed on screen. For example:

```
# scli -I ALL -S -O output.txt
```

## *16.22* Output in XML Format (Command Line Option -X)

***NOTE:***

- This option is valid only in non-interactive mode.
- This option can be used with all non-interactive mode options that have a corresponding interactive mode option (see table 16-1). The option must be the first or last command in the command line.

When this option is used, all result and status messages are displayed in XML formats. These formats are described in section 16.24. This option is usually combined with the -O option (see section 16.20) to create a text file with XML output so that it can be parsed by an XML-compliant utility. For example:

```
# scli -I ALL -X -O output.txt
```

## *16.23* Display All Information for One or All Adapters (Command Line Option -Z)

***NOTE:*** This option is valid only in non-interactive mode.

Use this option to display all the information for one or all of the adapters in the system. This option displays all of the adapter's information in a single command.

The information displayed by the -Z option is the combination of the commands listed in table 16-4:

***Table 16-4. Options Displayed by -Z***

| Non-interactive Option | Description | Section |
|---|---|---|
| -G | Display system information | 16.5 |
| -C | Display adapter settings | 16.6 |
| -I | Display adapter information | 16.7 |
| -T | Display device list | 16.8 |
| -L | Display LUN list | 16.9 |
| -P | Configure target persistent binding | 16.11 |
| -M | Configure selective LUNs | 16.12 |
| -E | Configure boot device | 16.13 |

To display the information in table 16-4 for a single adapter, type one of the following commands:

```
# scli -Z <HBA>
# scli -Z <HBA WWPN>
```

Where:

*HBA* = HBA number from adapter general information

*HBA WWPN* = World wide port name of the HBA

To display the information in table 16-4 for all adapters, type one of the following commands:

```
# scli -Z ALL
# scli -Z
```

## *16.24* XML Format

The -X command line option (see section 16.22) displays all output in XML format. This section defines the XML output format, which consists of the following parts:

- Main tag
- Utility header
- Status message
- XML message (one for each option)

### *16.24.1*
## Main Tag

When SANblade CLI is in XML mode, all outputs are contained within the following main tag:

```
<QLogic>
...
</QLogic>
```

### *16.24.2*
## Utility Header

The following header information is displayed after the main tag:

```
<AppName> SANblade Command Line Utility </AppName>
<AppVersion> X.YY.ZZ </AppVersion>
```

### *16.24.3*
## Status Message

Before the closing main tag `</QLogic>`, SANblade CLI displays any returning status from the execution of the command line parameters and the error messages.

When the execution of the command line parameters is successful, the following status is displayed:

```
<Status> 0 </Status>
```

When the execution of the command line parameters fails, the following status is displayed, followed by an error message that provides additional details:

```
<Status> 1 </Status>
<ErrorMsg> Details of the failure </ErrorMsg>
```

When the execution of the command line parameters is successful and the system must be restarted for the change to take effect, the following message is displayed:

```
<Reboot> 1 </Reboot>
```

When the execution of the command line parameters is successful and the system does not need to be restarted, the following message is displayed:

```
<Reboot> 0 </Reboot>
```

### *16.24.4*
## XML Message for Each Option

The following sections describe the XML format for each command line option. In these sections, the term *number* refers to the adapter number displayed with the adapter general information (command line option -I).

### *16.24.4.1*
## Display System Information (Command Line Option -G)

The XML format for system information output is as follows:

```
<Host>
   <Name> Host Name </Name>
   <OSType> OS Type </OSType>
   <OSVersion> OS Version (and patches where applicable)
   </OSVersion>
   <HBA Number="value" WWNN="value" WWPN="value"/>
   <NumOfHBA> Number of QLogic Fibre Channel HBA(s) detected
   </NumOfHBA>
</Host>
```

The parameter `<HBA…/>` is repeated for each HBA in the system.

### *16.24.4.2*
## Display Adapter Settings (Command Line Option -C)

The XML format for adapter settings information is as follows:

```
<HBA>
   <ID Number="value" WWNN="value" WWPN="value" />
   <Param DataRate="value"
         ConnectionOption="value"
         FibreChannelTapeSupport="value"
         MaxLUNPerTarget="value"
         EnableHardLoopID="value"
       HardLoopID="value"
       FrameSize="value"
       LIPReset="value"
       LIPFulllogin="value"
       TargetReset="value"
       ExtendedLogging="value"
       ResetDelay="value"
       LoginRetryCount="value"
       LinkDownTimeout="value"
       PortDownRetryCount="value"
       ExecutionThrottle="value"
       LinkDownError="value"
       FastErrorReporting="value"
       OperationMode="value"
       IntDelayTimer="value" />
</HBA>
```

Each parameter is listed on a separate line for clarity; however, multiple parameters can be on the same line.

For multiple adapters, repeat the above sequence with the ID number `(ID Number="value")` of the next adapter.

#### *16.24.4.3*
## Display Adapter Information (Command Line Option -I)

The XML format for adapter general information is as follows:

```
<HBA>
   <GeneralInfo Number ="value"
       Model="value"
       WWNN="value"
       WWPN="value"
       PortID="value"
       SerialNumber="value"
       DriverVersion="value"
       BIOSVersion="value"
       FcodeVersion="value"
       FirmwareVersion="value"
       TargetCount="value"
       PCIBus="value"
       PCIDevice="value"
       PortType="value"
       Configuration="value"
       Status="value"
</HBA>
```

#### *16.24.4.4*
## Display Device List (Command Line Option -T)

The XML format for adapter device information is as follows:

```
<HBA>
   <ID Number="value" WWNN="value" WWPN="value" />
     <Target>
       <WWNN> Target WWNN </WWNN>
       <WWPN> Target WWPN </WWPN>
       <Info Path="value" ID="value" Vendor= "value"
           ProductID= "value" Revision= "value"    PortID= "value"
           LunCount= "value"
           Type= "value" />
     </Target>
</HBA>
```

The `<Target>...</Target>` sequence is repeated for each HBA target.

#### *16.24.4.5*
## Display LUN List (Command Line Option -L)

The XML format for the adapter LUN list information is as follows:

```
<HBA>
   <ID Number="value" WWNN="value" WWPN="value" />
   <Target>
     <WWNN> Target WWNN </WWNN>
     <WWPN> Target WWPN </WWPN>
     <LUN ID="value" WWULN="value" Vendor ="value"
          Product ="value" Revision ="value" Size="value"/>
   </Target>
</HBA>
```

The `<LUN … />` sequence is repeated for each LUN attached to the target. The LUN list is listed under the target, not the adapter.

#### *16.24.4.6*
## Configure Target Persistent Binding (Command Line Option -P)

The XML format for the adapter target persistent binding list is as follows:

```
<HBA>
   <ID Number="value" WWNN="value" WWPN="value" />
   <TargetBinding TargetWWNN="value" TargetWWPN="value"
     TargetID="value" />
</HBA>
```

The `<TargetBinding … />` sequence is repeated for each target bound to the adapter.

#### *16.24.4.7*
## Configure Selective LUNs (Command Line Option -M)

The XML format to configure selective LUNs is as follows:

```
<HBA>
   <ID Number="value" WWNN="value" WWPN="value" />
   <Target>
     <WWNN> Target WWNN </WWNN>
     <WWPN> Target WWPN </WWPN>
     <EnabledLUN ID="value" LUNWWN="value"/>
   </Target>
</HBA>
```

The `<EnabledLUN … />` sequence is repeated for each enabled LUN under the target.

#### *16.24.4.8*
## Configure Boot Device (Command Line Option -E)

The XML format to configure the boot device is as follows:

```
<HBA>
  <ID Number="Value" WWNN="value" WWPN="Value" />
  <BootDevice TargetWWNN="value" TargetWWPN="value"
    TargetID="value" LUNID="value"/>
</HBA>
```

The `<BootDevice…/>` sequence is repeated for each boot device of the adapter. In Windows 2000/Server 2003 and Red Hat/SuSE Linux, the `TargetID="value"` field is not present.

#### *16.24.4.9*
## Diagnostics Results—Loopback Test (Command Line Option -KL)

The XML format for the loopback test results is as follows:

```
<HBA>
   <ID Number="Value" WWNN="value" WWPN="Value"/>
      <Loop ID="value"
      CRCError="value"
      DisparityError="value"
      FrameLengthError="value"
      Result="Success"/>
</HBA>
```

#### *16.24.4.10*
## Diagnostics Results—Read/Write Buffer Test (Command Line Option -KR)

The XML format for the read/write buffer test results is as follows:

```
<HBA>
  <ID Number="Value" WWNN="value" WWPN="Value"/>
      <Target>
          <WWNN> Target WWNN </WWNN>
          <WWPN> Target WWPN </WWPN>
          <Port ID ="value"
              DataMiscompare="value"
              LinkFailure= "value"
              LossOfSync="value"
              LossOfSignal="value"
              InvalidCRC="value"
              Result="value"/>
      </Target>
</HBA>
```

The <Target> sequence is repeated for each device attached to the adapter.

*16.24.4.11*

## Display All Information for One or All Adapters (Command Line Option -Z)

The XML format for all adapter information is more complicated than its non-XML counterpart because the tags cannot be repeated. In non-XML mode, SANblade CLI sequentially calls all the options in table 16-5, and each option is displayed in its standard output format. If each option displays its own XML output, the resulting display would have multiple duplicate tags.

***Table 16-5. Options Displayed by -Z***

| Non-interactive Option | Description | Section |
|---|---|---|
| -G | Display system information | 16.5 |
| -C | Display adapter settings | 16.6 |
| -I | Display adapter information | 16.7 |
| -T | Display device list | 16.8 |
| -L | Display LUN list | 16.9 |
| -P | Configure target persistent binding | 16.11 |
| -M | Configure selective LUNs | 16.12 |
| -E | Configure boot device | 16.13 |

The XML format for all adapter information is as follows:

```
<Host>
   <Name> Host Name </Name>
   <OSType> OS Type </OSType>
   <OSVersion> OS Version (and patches where applicable)
     </OSVersion>
   <NumOfHBA> Number of QLogic Fibre Channel HBA(s) detected
     </NumOfHBA>
</Host>
<HBA>
   <ID Number="Value" WWNN="value" WWPN="Value" />
   <GeneralInfo Number ="value"
          Model="value"
          WWNN="value"
          WWPN="value"
          PortID="value"
          SerialNumber="value"
          DriverVersion="value"
          BIOSVersion="value"
          FcodeVersion="value"
          FirmwareVersion="value"
```

```
            TargetCount="value"
            PCIBus="value"
            PCIDevice="value"
            PortType="value"
            Configuration="value"
            Status="value" />
    <Param DataRate="value"
        ConnectionOption="value"
        FibreChannelTapeSupport="value"
        MaxLUNPerTarget="value"
        EnableHardLoopID="value"
        HardLoopID="value"
        FrameSize="value"
        EnableLIPReset="value"
        EnableLIPFulllogin="value"
        EnableTargetReset="value"
        EnableExtendedLogging="value"
        ResetDelay="value"
        LoginRetryCount="value"
        LinkDownTimeout="value"
        PortDownRetryCount="value"
        ExecutionThrottle="value"
        LinkDownError="value"
        FastErrorReporting="value"
        OperationMode="value"
        IntDelayTimer="value" />
    <Target>
      <WWNN> Target WWNN </WWNN>
      <WWPN> Target WWPN </WWPN>
      <Info Vendor= "value" ProductID= "value" Revision= "value"
        PortID= "value" LunCount= "value" Type= "value" />
      <LUN ID="value" LUNWWN="value" Vendor ="value"
        Product ="value" Revision ="value" Size="value"/>
      <EnabledLUN ID="value" LUNWWN="value"/>
    </Target>
    <TargetBinding TargetWWNN="value" TargetWWPN="value"
      TargetID="value" />
    <BootDevice TargetWWNN="value" TargetWWPN="value"
      LUNID="value"/>
</HBA>
```

***NOTE:***

- The `<HBA>...</HBA>` sequence is repeated for each HBA.
- The `<Target>...</Target>` sequence is repeated for each target.
- The `<LUN... />` parameter is repeated for each LUN.
- The `<EnabledLUN ID.... />` parameter is repeated for each enabled LUN.

- The `<TargetBinding.../>` parameter is repeated for each target persistent binding entry.
- The `<BootDevice.../>` parameter is repeated for each boot device selection entry.

## Notes

# *Part IV*
# Appendices

This part of the *SANsurfer Applications User's Guide* contains the following useful information:

- **Appendix A—Glossary.** This appendix describes common hardware, software, and Fibre Channel terms used in SANsurfer documentation.
- **Appendix B—Contacting QLogic.** This section presents information about contacting QLogic.

## Notes

# *Appendix A*
# Glossary

This section describes common hardware, software, and Fibre Channel terms that are used in the SANsurfer applications.

| | |
|---|---|
| *Adapter* | An adapter is the board that interfaces between the host system and disk. Adapter is synonymous with host adapter, adapter board, and HBA. In SANblade Manager documentation, the term *QLA2xxx* adapter is used. |
| *Adapter beacon* | An adapter beacon is a feature of SANblade Manager that allows you to flash the QLA23*xx* HBA's LED to locate the HBA in your computer. |
| *AL_PA* | AL_PA stands for arbitrated loop_physical address. This is a low-level address on the Fibre Channel loop. |
| *Arbitrated loop* | An arbitrated loop is a non-point-to-point circular topology where two or more ports can be interconnected, but only two ports can communicate at one time. All communication is passed through all ports connected onto the loop. |
| *Boot device* | The boot device is the hard disk that contains the operating system the BIOS uses to boot from when the computer is started. |

*Driver*

Driver refers to software that interfaces between the file system and a physical data storage device or network media.

The level structure for Windows 2000/Server 2003 drivers is as follows:

- *Class Driver*. This is the highest driver level. There is a separate class for disk, Ethernet, etc. This level handles all generic aspects of operations for that class.
- *Port Driver*. This is the middle driver level, which handles aspects of the operation specific to the port type; for example, there is a port driver for SCSI.
- *Miniport Driver*. This is the lowest driver level and device specific. This level is usually supplied by the manufacturer as a companion to a physical device.
- *Monolithic Driver*. This level combines the functions of different driver levels in the same driver to increase performance.
- A*djunct Driver*. This level works along side a driver at the same level to increase performance.

*Driver* (continued)

In NetWare, the required drivers include:

- *Host Adapter Module (HAM)*. HAM is the driver component associated with the host adapter hardware. It provides the functionality to route requests to the bus where a specified device is attached.
- *Custom Device Module (CDM)*. CDM is the drive component associated with storage devices. It provides the functionality to build device-specific commands from I/O messages received from NetWare's Media Manager.

In Red Hat/SuSE Linux, the driver layers include:

- *SCSI Upper Layer.* This is the device management layer. It handles device-dependent tasks for devices, such as disks and tapes.
- *SCSI Middle Layer.* This is the SCSI traffic handling layer. It directs requests between the kernel and the SCSI.
- *SCSI Lower Layer.* This is the SCSI host bus adapter driver. It communications directly to the SCSI HBA.

The structure for Solaris SPARC drivers includes:

- *Nexus Drivers.* Nexus drivers provide bus mapping and translation services to subordinate nexus and leaf devices. These include drivers for PCI-to-PCI bridges, PCMCIA adapters, and SCSI HBAs.
- *Leaf Drivers.* Leaf drivers provide the traditional character and block driver interfaces for reading and writing data to storage and communication devices. These include drivers for peripheral devices, including QLA2*xxx* adapters, disks, tapes, network adapters, and frame buffers.

*Echo diagnostic test*

This test transmits a received signal back to the sender to verify the integrity of the device.

*Fabric*

A fabric consists of cross-connected Fibre Channel devices and switches.

*Fabric switch*

A fabric switch connects multiple devices from independent Fibre Channel-arbitrated loops (FC-ALs) and point-to-point topologies into a fabric.

| | |
|---|---|
| *Failover path* | The failover path software feature ensures data availability and system reliability by assigning alternate path and automatic adapter failover for device resources. This feature is available only in Windows 2000/Server 2003, Novell NetWare, and Red Hat/SuSE Linux. |
| *Flash BIOS* | A QLA2*xxx* adapter's flash PROM contains the code that allows booting from the adapter at startup. |
| *HBA* | Host bus adapter. See *Adapter*. |
| *HBA alias* | A user-defined name for an HBA. |
| *IOCB* | IOCB stands for I/O control block. An IOCB is a command structure in QLogic ISP architecture. |
| *JBOD* | JBOD stands for just a bunch of disks. |
| *LIP* | LIP stands for loop initialization process. LIP is the initialization process in an arbitrated loop that occurs when the loop is powered up or a new device is added. One function of a LIP is to assign addresses. All data transmission on the loop is suspended during a LIP. |
| *Load balancing* | Load balancing is a software feature that improves system performance by balancing device access between multiple QLA2*xxx* adapters for maximum resource efficiency. This feature is available in Windows 2000/Server 2003, Novell NetWare, and Red Hat/SuSE Linux. |
| *Loopback* | Loopback is a diagnostic tool where data is transmitted and received by the QLA2*xxx* adapter. |
| *LUN* | LUN stands for logical unit number, the small integer handle that identifies a portion of disk storage. A LUN can consist of a single physical disk or many physical disks. A physical disk can be broken into multiple LUNs. |
| *LUN masking* | LUN masking is a software feature that assigns LUNs to specific servers or hides LUNs from specific servers for maximum access and availability control. |

*Media*
Media are carriers of information. Fibre Channel supports several different physical media: copper, multimode optical, and single-mode optical, which differ mainly in the maximum cable length. All Fibre Channel protocols are supported on all media.

*NIC*
NIC stands for network interface controller.

*NVRAM*
NVRAM stands for nonvolatile random access memory. NVRAM configuration settings are stored in NVRAM. You can configure NVRAM settings or restore them from a file. These settings are saved in NVRAM and are retained when power is removed.

*ONC*
ONC stands for open network computing, a remote procedure call developed by Sun Microsystems.

*Path*
A path to a device is a combination of a QLA2*xxx* adapter and a target port. Note that this is distinct from any internal paths within the fabric network. A fabric network appears to the operating system as an opaque network between the adapter (initiator) and the target port.

Since a path is a combination of an adapter and a target port, a path is distinct from another path if it is accessed through a different adapter and/or it is accessing a different target port. Consequently, when switching from one path to another, the driver might be selecting a different adapter (initiator), a different target port, or both. This makes a difference to the driver when selecting the proper method of failover notification. It can make a difference to the target device, which might have to take different actions when receiving retries of the request from another initiator or on a different port.

*Point-to-point*
Two Fibre Channel nodes directly connected (nonloop).

| | |
|---|---|
| *Port* | Ports are access points in a device where a link attaches. There are four types of ports, as follows:<br>*N_Port* is a Fibre Channel device port that supports point-to-point topology.<br>*NL_Port* is a Fibre Channel device port that supports loop topology.<br>*F_Port* is a port in a fabric where an N_Port can attach.<br>*FL_Port* is a port in a fabric where an NL_Port can attach. |
| *SAN* | SAN stands for storage area network, which consists of multiple storage units and servers connected by networking topology. |
| *SCSI* | SCSI stands for small computer system interface. The original SCSI specification was a hardware bus specification and a packet-oriented protocol specification for communicating on that bus. SCSI over Fibre Channel uses the packet-oriented protocol to communicate with storage devices on the Fibre Channel. |
| *SPIFFI* | SPIFFI stands for specification for platform-independent failover and failback integration. It is a cooperative effort that defines a nonvendor-specific failover mechanism. |

# *Appendix B*
# Contacting QLogic

For product information, our latest drivers, and links for technical assistance, please visit QLogic's Web site at: www.qlogic.com. If you are using the SANblade Manager GUI and have Internet access, you can connect to QLogic's Web site by clicking the QLogic logo on the right side of the SANblade Manager main window toolbar.

## Notes